

Oracle® Applications

System Administrator's Guide - Configuration

Release 11*i*

Part No. B13925-01

October 2004

Primary Author: Steve Carter, Charles Colt, Leslie Studdard, Mildred Wang

Contributing Author: Ahmed Alomari, Ram Bhoopalam, George Buzsaki, Anne Carlson, Steven Chan, Siu Chang, Michelle Cheng, Suchithra Dorbala, Krishna Dupuguntla, Mark Fisher, Clara Jaeckel, Michael Mast, Tom Morrow, Emily Nordhagen, Muhannad Obeidat, Gursat Olgun, Richard Ou, Jan Smith, Seth Stafford, Susan Stratton, Venkat Vengala, Mark Warren, Sara Woodhull

The Programs (which include both the software and documentation) contain proprietary information; they are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are also protected by copyright, patent, and other intellectual and industrial property laws. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of the Programs, except to the extent required to obtain interoperability with other independently created software or as specified by law, is prohibited.

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. If you find any problems in the documentation, please report them to us in writing. This document is not warranted to be error-free. Except as may be expressly permitted in your license agreement for these Programs, no part of these Programs may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose.

If the Programs are delivered to the United States Government or anyone licensing or using the Programs on behalf of the United States Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are "commercial computer software" or "commercial technical data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the Programs, including documentation and technical data, shall be subject to the licensing restrictions set forth in the applicable Oracle license agreement, and, to the extent applicable, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software--Restricted Rights (June 1987). Oracle Corporation, 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

The Programs are not intended for use in any nuclear, aviation, mass transit, medical, or other inherently dangerous applications. It shall be the licensee's responsibility to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy and other measures to ensure the safe use of such applications if the Programs are used for such purposes, and we disclaim liability for any damages caused by such use of the Programs.

The Programs may provide links to Web sites and access to content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle is not responsible for the availability of, or any content provided on, third-party Web sites. You bear all risks associated with the use of such content. If you choose to purchase any products or services from a third party, the relationship is directly between you and the third party. Oracle is not responsible for: (a) the quality of third-party products or services; or (b) fulfilling any of the terms of the agreement with the third party, including delivery of products or services and warranty obligations related to purchased products or services. Oracle is not responsible for any loss or damage of any sort that you may incur from dealing with any third party.

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Contents

Send Us Your Comments

Preface

1 Introduction

Introduction to This Manual	1-1
Oracle Applications System Administration - Maintenance	1-3
Oracle Applications System Administration - Security	1-4

2 Configuring Oracle Applications

Configuring Oracle Applications	2-1
Run Rapid Install	2-1
Test the Web Listener Virtual Directories	2-2
Test the HTTP Server Configuration	2-3
Test DBC files	2-5
Test Java Servlet Setup	2-8
Set the Web Server Profile Options	2-8
Set Other Profile Options	2-9
Configure the TCF SocketServer	2-10
Launching Oracle Applications Forms Directly	2-10
Configuring the Login Page for Oracle Applications	2-11
Personalizing the Oracle E-Business Suite Home page	2-14
Administering Oracle HTTP Server Powered by Apache	2-14
Oracle HTTP Server	2-15
Apache Configuration Files	2-15
Secure Sockets Layer Configuration	2-20
Temporary SSL Environment Setup	2-20
Configure Apache for SSL connections	2-23
Test Startup of Apache and Oracle Applications Sign-On	2-24
SSL Setup for Forms 6i Server	2-24
Use Wallet Manager to create certificate	2-24
Set up Forms Server Environment	2-28
Test Startup of Oracle Forms 6i Server and Oracle Applications	2-29
Updating Profile options within Oracle Applications	2-30
Administering the TCF SocketServer	2-30

Check the Apache Jserv engine configuration	2-30
Start the TCF SocketServer automatically	2-31
Checking the status of the TCF SocketServer	2-31
Troubleshooting	2-31
AdminAppServer Utility	2-32
Using the AdminAppServer utility	2-32
Troubleshooting	2-35
Support for Encrypted Thin JDBC Connections	2-36
Administering Server Security	2-37
Server Security Status	2-37
Adding, Updating, or Deleting Server IDs	2-38
Activating Server Security	2-39
Restricting Access to Responsibilities Based on User's Web Server	2-39
Application Object Library AOL/J Setup Test Suite	2-41
Using Oracle Applications Framework	2-42

3 Oracle Applications Tablespace Model

Introduction	3-1
Advantages of Migrating to OATM	3-1
OATM Tablespaces	3-3
Customizations and Extensions	3-5
Oracle Applications Tablespace Migration Utility	3-6

4 Oracle Applications Tablespace Migration Utility

Introduction	4-1
Planning for Migration	4-1
Setting Up the Tablespace Migration Utility	4-2
Phase 1: Preparatory Steps	4-3
Phase 2: Migration Steps	4-7
Phase 3: Post Migration Steps	4-9

5 System Administration Setup Tasks

Setting Up Oracle Applications System Administrator	5-1
Setup Checklist	5-1
Setup Steps	5-1

6 Introduction to Oracle Applications Manager

Introduction to Oracle Applications Manager	6-1
Oracle Applications Manager Setup	6-1
The Site Map	6-5

7 Defining Concurrent Programs and Reports

Overview of Concurrent Programs and Requests	7-1
--------------------------------------------------------	-----

Organizing Programs into Request Sets	7-2
Defining Request Sets	7-2
Request Sets and Owners	7-11
System Administrator Request Set Privileges	7-11
Request Set Incompatibilities	7-12
Sharing Parameters in a Request Set	7-13
Request Sets Report	7-14
Report Parameters	7-14
Report Headings	7-14
Organizing Programs into Request Groups	7-15
Request Security Groups	7-15
Using Codes with Request Groups	7-16
Customizing the Submit Requests Window	7-16
Customizing the Submit Requests Window using Codes	7-18
Report Group Responsibilities Report	7-19
Report Parameters	7-19
Defining Program Incompatibility Rules	7-19
Incompatible and Run Alone Programs	7-19
Concurrent Conflict Domains	7-21
Enforcing Incompatibility Rules	7-22
Defining Data Groups	7-23
Introduction to Data Groups	7-23
Using Data Groups	7-24
Modifying Data Groups	7-25
Custom Concurrent Programs	7-26
Log and Output Filenames	7-26
Oracle Tool Concurrent Programs	7-27
Pro*C Concurrent Programs	7-28
Host Language Concurrent Programs	7-30
Submitting Concurrent Requests (CONCSUB)	7-31
Copying and Modifying Program Definitions	7-35
Copying and Renaming a concurrent program	7-36
Alter Program Priority	7-37
Modifying an Incompatible Programs list	7-38
Concurrent Program Parameters	7-38
Control the Behavior of Request Parameters	7-39
Example of modifying a program's parameters	7-43
Concurrent Program Details Report	7-45
Report Parameters	7-45
Report Headings	7-45
Concurrent Programs Report	7-45
Report Parameters	7-46
Report Headings	7-46
Concurrent Programs HTML UI	7-63
Search for Concurrent Programs	7-63

Create Concurrent Program	7-63
Concurrent Program - Add Parameter	7-68

8 Defining Concurrent Managers

Defining Managers and their Work Shifts in the Oracle Forms UI	8-1
Work Shift Definitions	8-3
Using Work Shifts to Balance Processing Workload	8-5
Using Time-Based Queues	8-6
Creating Services within Oracle Applications Manager	8-7
Completed Concurrent Requests Report	8-12
Report Parameters	8-12
Report Headings	8-13
Work Shift by Manager Report	8-13
Report Parameters	8-13
Report Headings	8-13
Work Shifts Report	8-13
Report Parameters	8-13
Report Headings	8-14
Specializing Managers to Run Only Certain Programs	8-14
Introduction to Specialization Rules	8-14
Defining Specialization Rules	8-14
Examples - Using Specialization Rules	8-19
Defining Combined Specialization Rules	8-22
Using Combined Rules	8-24
Differences Between Specialization and Combined Rules	8-27
Grouping Programs by Request Type	8-28
Controlling Concurrent Managers	8-29
Manager States	8-29
Controlling Managers from the Administer Managers form	8-30
Controlling the Internal Concurrent Manager from the Operating System	8-31
Overview of Parallel Concurrent Processing	8-35
What is Parallel Concurrent Processing?	8-35
Parallel Concurrent Processing Environments	8-35
How Parallel Concurrent Processing Works	8-36
Managing Parallel Concurrent Processing	8-37
Defining Concurrent Managers	8-37
Administering Concurrent Managers	8-38

9 Setting Up and Starting Concurrent Managers

Concurrent Managers	9-1
Setting Up Concurrent Managers	9-1
Starting the Concurrent Managers	9-3
Restarting the Concurrent Managers	9-5
Shutting Down the Concurrent Manager Service (Windows)	9-6
Removing the Concurrent Manager Service (Windows)	9-6

File Conventions	9-6
Directory Privileges	9-7
Printing (UNIX)	9-9

10 Printers

Printers and Printing	10-1
Overview	10-1
Printer Types, Print Styles, and Printer Drivers	10-2
Sequence of Printing Events	10-4
Setting Character-Mode vs. Bitmap Printing	10-4
Setting Up Your Printers	10-7
Printing Setup Interrelationships	10-7
Printer Setup Information Is Cached On Demand	10-8
Printer Setup with Pasta	10-8
Overview	10-8
Setup for Basic Printing with Pasta	10-8
Defining Configuration Files for Specific Printers	10-9
Using a Different Configuration File as the Default	10-10
Modify an Existing Printer Type to Use Pasta	10-10
Add a New Printer Type to Use Pasta	10-11
Setting Margins	10-11
Printing a Report Generated Using the noprint Option	10-12
Generating Other Formats Using the Preprocessing Option	10-12
Font Source	10-14
Language-Specific Font Support	10-14
Configuration File Options	10-15
Command Line Parameters	10-20
Using PrintForms	10-21
Create the PrintForm	10-21
Common UNIX Printing System (CUPS) Integration	10-23
Customizing Printing Support in Oracle Applications	10-26
Creating Custom Printer Drivers	10-27
Using Initialization and Reset Strings	10-30
Using a Spool File	10-30
Creating Custom SRW Drivers	10-31
Hierarchy of Printer and Print Style Assignments	10-32
Hierarchy of Printer Assignments	10-33
Hierarchy of Print Style Assignments	10-34
System Administrator Printer and Print Style Settings	10-35
End User Printer and Print Style Settings	10-35
Postscript Printing in UNIX	10-36
Example - Using Enscript to Print Postscript	10-37

11 Oracle Applications Help

Customizing Oracle Applications Help	11-1
------------------------------------------------	------

Downloading and Uploading Help Files	11-1
Linking Help Files	11-5
Updating the Search Index	11-7
Customizing Help Navigation Trees	11-8
The Help Builder User Interface	11-9
Customizing Help in a Global Environment	11-15

12 Applications DBA Duties

Overview of Applications DBA Duties	12-1
ORACLE Usernames	12-1
Registering an ORACLE username	12-1
Conflict Domains	12-3
Defining Logical Databases	12-3
Initialization Code	12-3
Resource Consumer Groups in Oracle Applications	12-4
Assigning Resource Consumer Groups	12-5
Hierarchy of Resource Consumer Group Assignments	12-5
Oracle Applications Schema Password Change Utility (FNDCPASS)	12-5
FNDCPASS Command and Arguments	12-6
Using the FNDCPASS Utility	12-7
Administering Folders	12-15

13 Cost-Based Optimization in Oracle Applications

Oracle Applications and Cost-Based Optimization	13-1
Gathering Statistics for the CBO	13-2
Gather Table Statistics	13-2
Backup Table Statistics	13-3
Restore Table Statistics	13-3
Gather Schema Statistics	13-4
Gather Column Statistics	13-5
Gather All Column Statistics	13-6
Purge FND_STATS History Records	13-6
FND_STATS Package	13-6
CREATE_STAT_TABLE Procedure	13-7
BACKUP_TABLE_STATS	13-7
BACKUP_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure	13-8
RESTORE_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure	13-8
RESTORE_TABLE_STATS Procedure	13-8
RESTORE_COLUMN_STATS Procedure	13-9
ENABLE_SCHEMA_MONITORING Procedure	13-10
DISABLE_SCHEMA_MONITORING Procedure	13-10
GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure	13-10
GATHER_INDEX_STATS Procedure	13-13
GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure	13-14
GATHER_COLUMN_STATS Procedure	13-16

GATHER_ALL_COLUMN_STATS Procedure	13-18
ANALYZE_ALL_COLUMNS Procedure	13-20
LOAD_XCLUD_STATS Procedure	13-20
PURGE_STAT_HISTORY Procedure	13-20
CHECK_HISTOGRAM_COLS Procedure	13-20
VERIFY_STATS Procedure	13-21
14 Oracle Applications and Real Application Clusters	
Migrating an Oracle Applications Single Instance to Real Application Clusters (RAC) . .	14-1
Introduction	14-1
Prerequisites	14-1
RAC Migration Steps	14-3
Implementing Load Balancing in Oracle E-Business Suite and Real Application Clusters .	14-5
15 Document Sequences	
What is a Document Sequence?	15-1
Defining a Document Sequence	15-1
Defining Document Categories	15-3
Assigning a Document Sequence	15-4
Document Numbering vs. Document Entry	15-6
16 Developer Tools	
Developer Tools	16-1
Forms Personalization	16-1
Work Directory	16-2
17 Administering Process Navigation	
Overview of Process Navigation	17-1
What is Oracle Workflow?	17-1
What are Seeded Processes?	17-1
Modifying Your Menu	17-1
Creating Process Navigator Processes	17-1
Creating Process Navigator Processes	17-2
18 Administering Internationalization	
Overview	18-1
Language Values for User Sessions	18-1
Language Values for User Sessions using AppsLocalLogin.jsp	18-1
Language Value for Logging in to Oracle Applications from a Login Server or Central Portal	18-2
Language Values for Oracle Workflow Notifications	18-2
Behavior of Date Formats in NLS Implementations	18-3
Multilingual External Documents	18-3

A Oracle9i Applications Server with Oracle E-Business Suite

Oracle9i Application Server and Oracle Applications	A-1
Oracle Applications with Oracle9iAS Portal	A-1
Implementing Single Sign-On for Oracle Applications 11i with Login Server Authentication Using Oracle Internet Directory	A-2
Oracle Application Server with Oracle E-Business Suite Documentation Roadmap	A-2
Integrating Oracle Application Server 10g with Oracle E-Business Suite	A-2
Installing and Upgrading 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2 with Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i	A-2
Debugging 9iAS Installations and Upgrades	A-4
Enabling Portal and Single Sign-On functionality	A-4
Enabling Oracle Discoverer functionality	A-5
Related Technology Stack Areas	A-6
Other Documentation	A-7

B Using Oracle Discoverer 4i with Oracle Applications 11i

Overview	B-1
Supported Architectures	B-3
Release Versions	B-3
Preinstallation Tasks	B-4
Reading the Discoverer 4i Configuration Guide	B-4
Checking the Configuration of the Microsoft Windows PC	B-4
Obtaining the Oracle Internet Developer Suite 1.0.2.4 for Microsoft Windows	B-4
Obtaining and Installing the MKS Toolkit for Developers for Microsoft Windows	B-4
Preserving Discoverer 3i Customizations (Optional)	B-5
Installation Tasks	B-6
Installing Oracle9i Application Server 1.0.2.2.2	B-6
Applying the Latest Discoverer Plus and Viewer Patches	B-7
Reapplying Configuration Settings	B-9
Installing Internet Developer Suite 1.0.2.4.1	B-11
Applying Discoverer Administration Edition Patches	B-11
Setting Windows Registry Settings	B-12
Specifying the Connect Dialog for Oracle Applications Users	B-12
Creating a New Discoverer 4i End User Layer	B-13
Postinstallation Tasks	B-14
Verifying ICX Profiles for Discoverer	B-14
Verifying the Location of Database Connection File	B-16
Setting Applications Users to be Locally Managed in Oracle E-Business Suite 11i (Conditional)	B-16
Applying Necessary Oracle Applications Interoperability Patches Using AutoPatch	B-17
Regenerating Your Business Views	B-17
Setting Up Applications User/Responsibility for EUL Administration: SYSADMIN/System Administrator	B-18
Mapping the Windows PC to \$AU_TOP/discover	B-19
Importing Discoverer 4i Content for Release 11i Using adupdeul.sh mode=complete	B-20
Refreshing the Discoverer 4i End User Layer	B-22

Granting EUL User Privileges for Oracle Applications Responsibilities	B-23
Granting Access to Responsibilities, Users, and Workbooks	B-24
Importing Saved Discoverer 3i Customizations (Optional)	B-28
Installing Additional Discoverer End User Layer Patches	B-29

C Loaders

Generic Loader	C-1
Overview	C-1
FNDLOAD Executable	C-2
Configuration File	C-4
Data File	C-7
Oracle Application Object Library Configuration Files	C-8
Concurrent Program Configuration File	C-9
Request Groups Configuration File	C-11
Lookups Configuration File	C-11
Profile Options and Profile Values Configuration File	C-12
Flexfields Setup Data Configuration File	C-13
Flexfield Value Sets	C-13
Descriptive Flexfields	C-14
Key Flexfields	C-14
Attachments Setup Data Configuration File	C-14
Messages Configuration File	C-17
Security Information Configuration File	C-17
Message Dictionary Generator	C-18
Message Repositories	C-19
Usage	C-19
Generic File Manager Access Utility (FNDGFU)	C-20
Usage	C-20
Example of FNDGFU Upload	C-21
Purging Generic File Manager Data	C-22
Purge Obsolete Generic File Manager Data	C-22
Program Parameters	C-23

Index

Send Us Your Comments

Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Configuration, Release 11i

Part No. B13925-01

Oracle welcomes your comments and suggestions on the quality and usefulness of this publication. Your input is an important part of the information used for revision.

- Did you find any errors?
- Is the information clearly presented?
- Do you need more information? If so, where?
- Are the examples correct? Do you need more examples?
- What features did you like most about this manual?

If you find any errors or have any other suggestions for improvement, please indicate the title and part number of the documentation and the chapter, section, and page number (if available). You can send comments to us in the following ways:

- Electronic mail: appsdoc_us@oracle.com
- FAX: 650-506-7200 Attn: Oracle Applications Technology Group Documentation Manager
- Postal service:
Oracle Applications Technology Group Documentation Manager
Oracle Corporation
500 Oracle Parkway
Redwood Shores, CA 94065
USA

If you would like a reply, please give your name, address, telephone number, and electronic mail address (optional).

If you have problems with the software, please contact your local Oracle Support Services.

Preface

Intended Audience

Welcome to Release 11i of the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Configuration*.

This guide assumes you have a working knowledge of the principles and customary practices of your business area. If you have never used Oracle Applications we suggest you attend one or more of the Oracle Applications System Administration training classes available through Oracle University. (See Other Information Sources for more information about Oracle training.)

This guide also assumes you are familiar with the Oracle Applications graphical user interface. To learn more about the Oracle Applications graphical user interface, read the *Oracle Applications User's Guide*.

See Other Information Sources for more information about Oracle Applications product information.

See Related Documents on page xvi for more Oracle Applications product information.

Documentation Accessibility

Our goal is to make Oracle products, services, and supporting documentation accessible, with good usability, to the disabled community. To that end, our documentation includes features that make information available to users of assistive technology. This documentation is available in HTML format, and contains markup to facilitate access by the disabled community. Standards will continue to evolve over time, and Oracle is actively engaged with other market-leading technology vendors to address technical obstacles so that our documentation can be accessible to all of our customers. For additional information, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program Web site at <http://www.oracle.com/accessibility/>

Accessibility of Code Examples in Documentation

JAWS, a Windows screen reader, may not always correctly read the code examples in this document. The conventions for writing code require that closing braces should appear on an otherwise empty line; however, JAWS may not always read a line of text that consists solely of a bracket or brace.

Accessibility of Links to External Web Sites in Documentation

This documentation may contain links to Web sites of other companies or organizations that Oracle does not own or control. Oracle neither evaluates nor makes any representations regarding the accessibility of these Web sites.

Structure

- 1 Introduction
- 2 Configuring Oracle Applications
- 3 Oracle Applications Tablespace Model
- 4 Oracle Applications Tablespace Migration Utility
- 5 System Administration Setup Tasks
- 6 Introduction to Oracle Applications Manager
- 7 Defining Concurrent Programs and Reports
- 8 Defining Concurrent Managers
- 9 Setting Up and Starting Concurrent Managers
- 10 Printers
- 11 Oracle Applications Help
- 12 Applications DBA Duties
- 13 Cost-Based Optimization in Oracle Applications
- 14 Oracle Applications and Real Application Clusters
- 15 Document Sequences
- 16 Developer Tools
- 17 Administering Process Navigation
- 18 Administering Internationalization
- A Oracle9i Applications Server with Oracle E-Business Suite
- B Using Oracle Discoverer 4i with Oracle Applications 11i
- C Loaders

Related Documents

You can choose from many sources of information, including online documentation, training, and support services to increase your knowledge and understanding of Oracle Applications system administration.

If this guide refers you to other Oracle Applications documentation, use only the Release 11i versions of those guides.

Online Documentation

All Oracle Applications documentation is available online (HTML or PDF).

- **PDF Documentation** - See the Oracle Applications Documentation Library CD for current PDF documentation for your product with each release. The Oracle Applications Documentation Library is also available on *OracleMetaLink* and is updated frequently.
- **Online Help** - Online help patches (HTML) are available on *OracleMetaLink*.
- **About Documents** - Refer to the About document for the mini-pack or family pack that you have installed to learn about feature updates, installation information, and new documentation or documentation patches that you can download. About documents are available on *OracleMetaLink*.

Related Guides

You can read the guides online by choosing Library from the expandable menu on your HTML help window, by reading from the Oracle Applications Documentation Library

CD included in your media pack, or by using a Web browser with a URL that your system administrator provides.

If you require printed guides, you can purchase them from the Oracle Store at <http://oraclestore.oracle.com>.

Guides Related to All Products

Oracle Applications User's Guide

This guide explains how to enter data, query, run reports, and navigate using the graphical user interface (GUI) available with this release of Oracle Advanced Product Catalog (and any other Oracle Applications products). This guide also includes information on setting user profiles, as well as running and reviewing reports and concurrent processes.

You can access this user's guide online by choosing "Getting Started with Oracle Applications" from any Oracle Applications help file.

Installation and System Administration

Oracle Applications Concepts

This guide provides an introduction to the concepts, features, technology stack, architecture, and terminology for Oracle Applications Release 11*i*. It provides a useful first book to read before an installation of Oracle Applications. This guide also introduces the concepts behind Applications-wide features such as Business Intelligence (BIS), languages and character sets, and Self-Service Web Applications.

Installing Oracle Applications

This guide provides instructions for managing the installation of Oracle Applications products. In Release 11*i*, much of the installation process is handled using Oracle Rapid Install, which minimizes the time to install Oracle Applications, the Oracle8 technology stack, and the Oracle8*i* Server technology stack by automating many of the required steps. This guide contains instructions for using Oracle Rapid Install and lists the tasks you need to perform to finish your installation. You should use this guide in conjunction with individual product user guides and implementation guides.

Upgrading Oracle Applications

Refer to this guide if you are upgrading your Oracle Applications Release 10.7 or Release 11.0 products to Release 11*i*. This guide describes the upgrade process and lists database and product-specific upgrade tasks. You must be either at Release 10.7 (NCA, SmartClient, or character mode) or Release 11.0, to upgrade to Release 11*i*. You cannot upgrade to Release 11*i* directly from releases prior to 10.7.

Maintaining Oracle Applications

Use this guide to help you run the various AD utilities, such as AutoUpgrade, AutoPatch, AD Administration, AD Controller, AD Relink, License Manager, and others. It contains how-to steps, screenshots, and other information that you need to run the AD utilities. This guide also provides information on maintaining the Oracle Applications file system and database.

Oracle Alert User's Guide

This guide explains how to define periodic and event alerts to monitor the status of your Oracle Applications data.

Oracle Applications Developer's Guide

This guide contains the coding standards followed by the Oracle Applications development staff. It describes the Oracle Application Object Library components needed to implement the Oracle Applications user interface described in the *Oracle Applications User Interface Standards for Forms-Based Products*. It also provides information to help you build your custom Oracle Forms Developer forms so that they integrate with Oracle Applications.

Oracle Applications User Interface Standards for Forms-Based Products

This guide contains the user interface (UI) standards followed by the Oracle Applications development staff. It describes the UI for the Oracle Applications products and how to apply this UI to the design of an application built by using Oracle Forms.

Other Implementation Documentation

Oracle Applications Product Update Notes

Use this guide as a reference for upgrading an installation of Oracle Applications. It provides a history of the changes to individual Oracle Applications products between Release 11.0 and Release 11*i*. It includes new features, enhancements, and changes made to database objects, profile options, and seed data for this interval.

Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications

If you use the Multiple Reporting Currencies feature to record transactions in more than one currency, use this manual before implementing Oracle Applications. This manual details additional steps and setup considerations for implementing Oracle Applications with this feature.

Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications

This guide describes how to set up and use Oracle Applications' Multiple Organization support feature, so you can define and support different organization structures when running a single installation of Oracle Applications.

Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide

This guide explains how to complete the setup steps necessary for any Oracle Applications product that includes workflow-enabled processes, as well as how to monitor the progress of runtime workflow processes.

Oracle Workflow Developer's Guide

This guide explains how to define new workflow business processes and customize existing Oracle Applications-embedded workflow processes. It also describes how to define and customize business events and event subscriptions.

Oracle Workflow User's Guide

This guide describes how Oracle Applications users can view and respond to workflow notifications and monitor the progress of their workflow processes.

Oracle Workflow API Reference

This guide describes the APIs provided for developers and administrators to access Oracle Workflow.

Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide

This guide provides flexfields planning, setup, and reference information for the Oracle Applications implementation team, as well as for users responsible for the ongoing maintenance of Oracle Applications product data. This guide also provides information on creating custom reports on flexfields data.

Oracle eTechnical Reference Manuals

Each eTechnical Reference Manual (eTRM) contains database diagrams and a detailed description of database tables, forms, reports, and programs for a specific Oracle Applications product. This information helps you convert data from your existing applications, integrate Oracle Applications data with non-Oracle applications, and write custom reports for Oracle Applications products. Oracle eTRM is available on [OracleMetaLink](#).

Oracle Applications Message Reference Manual

This manual describes Oracle Applications messages. This manual is available in HTML format on the documentation CD-ROM for Release 11i.

Training and Support

Training

Oracle offers a complete set of training courses to help you and your staff master Oracle Applications and reach full productivity quickly. These courses are organized into functional learning paths, so you take only those courses appropriate to your job or area of responsibility.

You have a choice of educational environments. You can attend courses offered by Oracle University at any one of our many Education Centers, you can arrange for our trainers to teach at your facility, or you can use Oracle Learning Network (OLN), Oracle University's online education utility. In addition, Oracle training professionals can tailor standard courses or develop custom courses to meet your needs. For example, you may want to use your organization's structure, terminology, and data as examples in a customized training session delivered at your own facility.

Support

From on-site support to central support, our team of experienced professionals provides the help and information you need to keep Oracle Applications working for you. This team includes your Technical Representative, Account Manager, and Oracle's large staff of consultants and support specialists with expertise in your business area, managing an Oracle Database, and your hardware and software environment.

Do Not Use Database Tools to Modify Oracle Applications Data

Oracle **STRONGLY RECOMMENDS** that you never use SQL*Plus, Oracle Data Browser, database triggers, or any other tool to modify Oracle Applications data unless otherwise instructed.

Oracle provides powerful tools you can use to create, store, change, retrieve, and maintain information in an Oracle database. But if you use Oracle tools such as SQL*Plus to modify Oracle Applications data, you risk destroying the integrity of your data and you lose the ability to audit changes to your data.

Because Oracle Applications tables are interrelated, any change you make using an Oracle Applications form can update many tables at once. But when you modify Oracle Applications data using anything other than Oracle Applications, you may change a row

in one table without making corresponding changes in related tables. If your tables get out of synchronization with each other, you risk retrieving erroneous information and you risk unpredictable results throughout Oracle Applications.

When you use Oracle Applications to modify your data, Oracle Applications automatically checks that your changes are valid. Oracle Applications also keeps track of who changes information. If you enter information into database tables using database tools, you may store invalid information. You also lose the ability to track who has changed your information because SQL*Plus and other database tools do not keep a record of changes.

Introduction

Introduction to This Manual

A system administrator is involved in setting up an Oracle Applications installation, controlling access, and ensuring smooth ongoing operation. The tasks involved in these functions are described in the Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, in these three volumes

- Configuration
- Maintenance
- Security

This Configuration volume describes the tasks involved in setting up and configuring Oracle Applications. These tasks may be done once upon installation, or may also be done as needed, such as setting up a printer or customizing online help files.

Configuring Oracle Applications after Running Rapid Install

This chapter describes some of the recommended manual setup steps for Oracle Application Object Library in Release 11*i*. This chapter can also be used as reference for maintaining an Oracle Applications installation. For complete instructions on setting up a new installation, see *Installing Oracle Applications*.

Oracle Applications Tablespace Model and the Tablespace Migration Utility

The new Oracle Applications Tablespace Model (OATM) has fewer, consolidated tablespaces (twelve, including three system tablespaces: temporary, system and undo segments). Locally managed tablespaces are also supported.

The Tablespace Migration Utility is a menu-based Perl program that enables you to estimate future space requirements for the tablespaces and to migrate the Applications database to OATM.

System Administrator Setup Tasks

This chapter describes some common system administrator setup tasks, typically done through the Oracle Applications user interface.

Introduction to Oracle Applications Manager

This chapter introduces the Oracle Applications Manager framework. Oracle Applications Manager provides a powerful set of features for managing all aspects of an Oracle Applications system. It provides a comprehensive summary of the system including configuration changes, infrastructure usage, performance, required maintenance activities, potential security issues, and diagnostic test results. It also includes utilities to help you manage Oracle Workflow, patching, configuration utilities, and concurrent processing.

Setting Up Concurrent Processing and Concurrent Managers

Concurrent managers run processes in the background (concurrent processes) on a server machine. You must set up and start concurrent managers for each product group before you can use the Oracle Applications products.

Defining Concurrent Programs and Reports

This chapter explains how to define concurrent programs and organize those programs into groups and sets. This chapter also explains how to modify concurrent program definitions, modify the behavior of parameters the programs refer to, and define incompatibility rules among different programs.

Setting Up Printers

This chapter describes how to set up printers and printing in Oracle Applications.

Oracle Applications Online Help

The Oracle Applications online help files can be customized, as explained in this chapter.

Oracle Applications DBA Duties

This chapter explains Oracle Applications tasks that require a database administrator to perform explicitly, or assist in by performing prerequisite tasks.

Cost-Based Optimization in Oracle Applications

Oracle Applications uses the cost-based optimizer (CBO) in order to choose the most efficient execution plan for SQL statements. Using this approach, the optimizer determines the most optimal execution plan by costing available access paths and factoring information based on statistics for the schema objects accessed by the SQL statement.

Oracle Applications and Real Application Clusters

This chapter describes the steps required to install Oracle Applications in an environment that uses Real Application Clusters (RAC).

Document Sequences

This chapter explains how to assign unique numbers to documents created in Oracle Applications.

Administering Process Navigation

The Process Navigator provides users with diagrams of business processes as a whole as well as the individual steps in each process. The Process Navigator also provides direct access to the form associated with each step in a process.

Administering Internationalization

This chapter describes some of the features of internationalization support in Oracle Applications, including language values for user sessions and multilingual external documents.

Developer Tools

This chapter provides information on the Forms Personalization and Work Directory features, which can help system administrators and developers create and debug custom forms.

Loaders

Oracle Applications provides loader programs to help you move Oracle Applications data between database and text file representations.

Oracle9i Applications Server with Oracle Applications

Oracle9i Application Server offers the industry's fastest, most complete, and integrated J2EE-certified application server. Refer to this section to learn about configuring Oracle Applications with Oracle9i Application Server.

Oracle Discoverer 4i with Oracle Applications

Oracle Discoverer 4i, a component of Oracle9i Application Server's integrated business intelligence solution, is an intuitive ad hoc query, reporting, analysis, and web publishing tool that allows business users at all levels of the organization to gain immediate access to information from data marts, data warehouses, and online transaction processing systems. This section describes how to install Discoverer 4i into an existing Oracle E-Business Suite environment.

Oracle Applications System Administration - Maintenance

Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance describes tasks you might perform on frequent basis, such as monitoring your system, reviewing concurrent requests, and setting profile options. The following areas are covered in this manual:

- Managing Concurrent Processing and Concurrent Programs
- Oracle Workflow Manager

- Monitoring Oracle Applications
- Diagnostics and Repair
- Patching and Maintenance
- User Profiles and Profile Options in Oracle Applications Object Library
- Using Predefined Alerts

Oracle Applications System Administration - Security

Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security describes security concepts, setup tasks, and maintenance tasks done in the following areas:

- Oracle User Management
- Function Security in Oracle Application Object Library
- Data Security in Oracle Application Object Library
- User and Data Auditing

Configuring Oracle Applications

Configuring Oracle Applications

This appendix describes some of the recommended manual setup steps for Application Object Library in Release 11*i*. You can use this appendix as a reference for maintaining your Oracle Applications installation. For complete instructions on setting up a new installation, see *Installing Oracle Applications*.

Proper setup is required before a number of Application Object Library features will operate correctly. Please follow the steps in this guide in their entirety when troubleshooting a Release 11*i* installation.

The following steps are recommended in configuring Oracle Application Object Library in Release 11*i*:

1. Run Rapid Install
2. Test Web Listener Virtual Directories
3. Test the Oracle HTTP Server Configuration
4. Create DBC files
5. Test Java Servlet Setup
6. Set the Web Server Profile Options
7. Configure the TCF SocketServer

The steps should be performed in the listed order, since later steps use functionality enabled by previous steps.

Note: If you are using Oracle8*i* Parallel Server refer to *OracleMetaLink* for additional configuration steps.

Run Rapid Install

Rapid Install is the Release 11*i* installation process. Refer to *Installing Oracle Applications* for information on Rapid Install.

The remainder of this section describes specific configuration and testing that should be done to ensure that all Applications Object Library features are operational.

Oracle Applications Rapid Install delivers the standard Apache Single Listener configuration. Follow the instructions that come with the Rapid Install for basic Apache configuration.

Rapid Install configures the HTTP Server automatically. For more information on configuring the HTTP Server, see Administering Oracle HTTP Server Powered by Apache, page 2-14.

For the remaining steps, you should be in the correct environment on the web server machine. To go to the correct environment, do the following:

1. Log into the host machine with your iAS installation.
2. Set the correct environment.

Example for the Bourne shell:

```
$ cd <your_appl_top_directory> $ . APPSORA.env
```

Example for Windows platforms:

```
cd <your APPL_TOP directory> APPSORA.cmd
```

Test the Web Listener Virtual Directories

Oracle Applications rely on a number of virtual directories to be configured in the Apache Listener for correct operation. The settings are stored in an Apache configuration file. Check the settings as follows:

1. Locate Apache configuration file directory.

```
cd $ORACLE_HOME/../../iAS/Apache/Apache/conf
```

2. View the apps.conf file.

This will contain all Oracle Applications specific configurations for the standard Apache Listener.

3. Set or verify virtual directory mappings. The following table lists the virtual directories and examples for the physical directories.

Virtual Directory	Example Physical Directory
/OA_HTML	/dl/common/java/oracle/ apps/media
/OA_MEDIA	/dl/common/java/oracle/ apps/media
/OA_JAVA	/dl/common/java
/OA_TEMP	/tmp
/OA_CGI	/dl/common/java/oracle/ apps/media/ bin
/images	/d1/oracle/iAS/ portal30/images

You can use the Application Object Library AOL/J Setup Test Suite to verify that virtual directories are set properly. See: Application Object Library AOL/J Setup Test Suite, page 2-41

You can also use your browser to fetch the following URLs to test the setup of the virtual directories:

`http://<hostname>:<port>/OA_MEDIA/FNDLOGOL.gif`

should return the large Oracle Applications logo

`http://<hostname>:<port>/OA_JAVA/oracle/forms/registry/Registry.dat`

should return a text file with forms registry settings

`http://<hostname>:<port>/OA_CGI/FNDWRR.exe`

should return "Query String Parse Error."

For more information on the Apache configuration file, see *Administering Oracle HTTP Server Powered by Apache*, page 2-14.

Test the HTTP Server Configuration

Follow this procedure to test the HTTP Server configuration:

1. Use your web browser to load the Oracle WebDB PL/SQL Gateway Settings page.

By default, this page is disabled for security reasons. You will be prompted for the system username/password.

The default URL for this page is the following:

`http://<hostname>:<port>/pls/admin_/`

Example:

`http://ap557sun.us.oracle.com:2002/pls/admin_/`

2. Navigate to "Gateway Database Access Descriptor Settings" and create or edit a Database Access Descriptor

The settings for the Database Access Descriptor for your Oracle Applications database are:

Database Access Descriptor Name <two_task>

Oracle User Name <apps_schema_name>

Oracle Password <apps_schema_password>

Oracle Connect String <two_task>

Maximum Number of Worker Thread <tune this>

Keep Database Connection Open... Yes

Default (Home) Page fnd_web.ping

Document Table apps.fnd_lobs_document

Document Access Path docs

Document Access Procedure <null>

Extensions to be Uploaded as BLOB *

Extensions to be Uploaded as LONG RAW <null>

Path Alias fndgfm
Path Alias Procedure fnd_gfm.dispatch
Enable Single Signon Authentication No
Custom Authentication CUSTOM

Example:

Database Access Descriptor Name R115
Oracle User Name apps
Oracle Password apps
Oracle Connect String R115
Maximum Number of Worker Thread 10
Keep Database Connection Open... Yes
Default (Home) Page fnd_web.ping
Document Table apps.fnd_lobs_document
Document Access Path docs
Document Access Procedure
Extensions to be Uploaded as BLOB *
Extensions to be Uploaded as LONG RAW
Path Alias fndgfm
Path Alias Procedure fnd_gfm.dispatch
Enable Single Signon Authentication No
Custom Authentication CUSTOM

3. Bounce the web server.
4. Test the Database Access Descriptor.

You should now be able to use the PL/SQL Gateway to run authorized PL/SQL procedures on your Release 11i database server. To test this, use a web browser to fetch the following URL:

http://<hostname>:<port>/pls/<dad_name>/FND_WEB.PING

Example:

http://ap523sun.us.oracle.com/pls/R115/FND_WEB.PING

The FND_WEB.PING procedure is delivered with Release 11i and generates a response table with the following information:

FND_WEB.PING

```
SYSDATE:      <server system date>
DATABASE_VERSION: <database version banner>
DATABASE_ID:   <database identifier>
SCHEMA_NAME:   <oracle schema name>
AOL_VERSION:   <AOL version number>
APPS_WEB_AGENT: <profile option site level value>
```

This information should allow you to confirm that your PL/SQL Gateway is indeed pointing at the correct APPS schema.

5. Test that CUSTOM authentication is working.

Warning: Failure to verify CUSTOM authentication will leave serious security holes open in your installation. This step is **MANDATORY**.

The CUSTOM authentication flag directs WebDB to check access privileges using the OWA_CUSTOM.AUTHORIZE function. Oracle Application Object Library supplies an implementation of this function (AFOAUTHB.pls) which verifies requests are enabled for web execution via the FND_ENABLED_PLSQL table. You should verify that this access control is in place by running a function which is not authorized for web execution. For example:

`http://<hostname>:<port>/pls/<dad_name>/HTP.HR`

Example:

`http://ap523sun.us.oracle.com/pls/R115/HTP.HR`

You should see an access control error. If you get a page with a horizontal rule across it, then the web request actually executed the HTP.HR procedure even though this package is not listed in FND_ENABLED_PLSQL. To correct this problem, set the "Custom Authentication" field to "CUSTOM" as described in the beginning of this section.

6. Test the Generic File Manager service.

Oracle WebDB is used by the Application Object Library Generic File Manager for file upload and download services. The Generic File Manager service is used to implement online help, attachments, and other file-based features. To test the Generic File Manager, try fetching an online help document with your browser:

`http://<hostname>:<port>/pls/<dad_name>/fndgfm/fnd_help.get/US/fnd/@search`

Example:

`http://ap523sun.us.oracle.com/pls/R115/fndgfm/fnd_help.get/US/fnd/@search`

This should return an HTML page describe help search features of the online help system.

Test DBC files

A DBC (.dbc) file holds information used by application servers to identify and authenticate with an application database. DBC files must be created on all tiers if you run a multi-tier system. The files are located in \$FND_TOP/secure of your Oracle Applications installation and are named as follows:

Note: The guest user for Oracle Applications instances must have a user name of 'GUEST'. You must specify the same user name, GUEST, and the same password for this user in the Guest User Password profile option and in any .dbc files used to access the Oracle Applications database. Additionally, the password you specify for the GUEST user in the Guest User Password profile option and the .dbc files must match the password defined for the GUEST user in the Users form under the System Administrator responsibility. Any deviation from this setup may cause issues such as e-mail users being unable to access the Notification Details page from links included in Oracle Workflow e-mail notifications.

```
$FND_TOP/secure/<db_host>_<db_sid>.dbc
```

Example:

```
/d1/appltop/fnd/11.5.8/secure/ap100sun_dev115.dbc
```

To test DBC files

Follow this procedure to test DBC files:

1. Locate the DBC file for your database (Rapid Install should have created one for you). Verify the settings are correct.
2. Test the DBC file by running the AdminAppServer STATUS check:

Prior to running AdminAppServer you must ensure that the CLASSPATH environment variable contains

- \$JAVA_TOP (Oracle Applications java code)
- \$ORACLE_HOME/jdbc/lib/classes111.zip (jdbc drivers for UNIX) or %JAVA_TOP%\jdbc111.zip (jdbc drivers for Windows)

Example for running the status check in UNIX:

Run the utility using the following syntax:

```
jre oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer STATUS \  
DBC=<full_path_to_dbc_file>
```

Example:

```
jre oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer STATUS \  
DBC=/d1/appltop/fnd/11.5/secure/ap100sun_dev115.dbc
```

Example for running the status check in Windows:

Run the utility using the following syntax:

```
jre -classpath %CLASSPATH% \  
oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer \  
<APPS username/password> STATUS \ DBC=<full_path_to _dbc_file>
```

Example:

```
jre -classpath %CLASSPATH% \  
oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps STATUS \  
DBC=/d1/appltop/fnd/11.5/secure/ap100sun_dev115.dbc
```

If the utility returns with the APPL_SERVER_ID and other status information, the DBC file is good and you may proceed to the next section. If the utility fails to connect, then you must correct the DBC file or create a new one.

DBC files can be created by copying the template, or by using the AdminAppServer utility. In addition to creating the DBC file, the utility registers the application server with the database for the Applications Server Security feature. To access additional databases from the same application server installation, you must run the AdminAppServer script once for each additional database.

The command for UNIX is as follows:

```
jre oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer ADD \
  SECURE_PATH=<$FND_TOP/secure> \
  GWYUID=<gateway_schema_name>/<gateway_schema_pwd> \
  FNDNAM=<apps_schema_name> \
  APPS_JDBC_DRIVER_TYPE=THIN \
  GUEST_USER_PWD=<guest_user>/<guest_pwd> \
  DB_HOST=<database_hostname> \
  DB_PORT=<database_port> \
  DB_NAME=<database_sid> \
  [SERVER_ADDRESS=<tcp.ip address>] \
  [SERVER_DESCRIPTION="Public web access server"] \
  [env_name=env_value]
```

Example for UNIX:

```
jre oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer ADD \
  SECURE_PATH="$FND_TOP/secure" \
  GWYUID=applsypub/pub \
  FNDNAM=APPS \
  APPS_JDBC_DRIVER_TYPE=THIN \
  GUEST_USER_PWD=guest/guest \
  DB_HOST=ap100sun \
  DB_PORT=1521 \
  DB_NAME=r115
```

The command for Windows is as follows:

```
jre -classpath %CLASSPATH% \
  oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer \
  <APPS username/password> ADD \
  SECURE_PATH=<$FND_TOP/secure> \
  GWYUID=<gateway_schema_name>/<gateway_schema_pwd> \
  FNDNAM=<apps_schema_name> \
  APPS_JDBC_DRIVER_TYPE=THIN \
  GUEST_USER_PWD=<guest_user>/<guest_pwd> \
  DB_HOST=<database_hostname> \
  DB_PORT=<database_port> \
  DB_NAME=<database_sid> \
  [SERVER_ADDRESS=<tcp.ip address>] \
  [SERVER_DESCRIPTION="Public web access server"] \
  [env_name=env_value]
```

Example for Windows:

```
jre -classpath %CLASSPATH% \
  oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer \
  <APPS username/password> ADD \
  SECURE_PATH="$FND_TOP/secure" \
  GWYUID=applsypub/pub \
  FNDNAM=APPS \
  APPS_JDBC_DRIVER_TYPE=THIN \
  GUEST_USER_PWD=guest/guest \
  DB_HOST=ap100sun \
  DB_PORT=1521 \
  DB_NAME=r115
```

Test Java Servlet Setup

The Apache listener should already be configured to run Java Servlets and Java Server Pages (JSPs).

Test the JSP setup by executing the "JSP Ping" page

Use your web browser to load the following URL:

```
http://<hostname>:<port>/OA_HTML/jsp/fnd/fndping.jsp?  
dbc=<dbc_file_name>
```

Example:

```
http://ap523sun.oracle.com:2002/OA_HTML/jsp/fnd/fndping.jsp?  
dbc=ap100sun_test115
```

Set the Web Server Profile Options

A number of profile options must be set to identify the base URL used to process various types of web requests.

APPS_WEB_AGENT

This profile option must be set to the URL which identifies the PL/SQL Gateway Database Access Descriptor base URL for your Applications instance. Oracle Applications use the value of this profile option to construct URLs for 'WWW' type functions, Attachments, Export, and other features.

Syntax:

```
http://<hostname>:<port>/pls/<dad_name>
```

Example:

```
http://ap557sun:us.oracle.com/pls/R115
```

APPS_SERVLET_AGENT

This profile option must be set to the URL base for the servlet execution engine on Apache. Oracle Applications uses the value of this profile option to construct URLs for JSP and SERVLET type functions.

Syntax:

```
http://<hostname>:<port>/<servlet_zone>
```

Example:

```
http://ap523sun.us.oracle.com:8888/oa_servlets
```

HELP_WEB_AGENT

Online help is launched by invoking the fndhelp.jsp Java Server Page. By default, online help will launch on the Web server specified by the APPS_SERVLET_AGENT profile option. To use the default option leave the HELP_WEB_AGENT profile option blank.

Note: In the previous release of Oracle Applications Release 11i, online help was launched by invoking the fnd_help.launch PL/SQL procedure.

If you wish to launch online help on a different Web server, you must specify the entire online help URL in the HELP_WEB_AGENT profile option. For example,

```
http://ap523sun.us.oracle.com:7777/OA_HTML/jsp/fnd/  
fndhelp.jsp?dbc=ap118sun_testdb
```

Testing the web agent profile options

Test the APPS_WEB_AGENT and web server configuration using the following procedure:

After setting these profile options, sign on again, to refresh the profile option cache.

1. Log onto Oracle Applications forms. From the Help menu, choose "Diagnostics > Test Web Agent...". This should launch a browser with the URL

```
<APPS_WEB_AGENT>/FND_WEB.PING
```

This should open a web page with the Ping response. Confirm that the response information is as expected.

2. To test the Export feature, open a simple form with a multi row block. Query up a set of records, then select "File / Export..." from the menu. A browser window should open and display the form data in tab-separated format.
3. Test the HELP_WEB_AGENT configuration in these two ways:
 - System Help - From the Help menu, select "Oracle Applications Library." A browser window should open up, displaying the online help system. The documentation portion should contain the top level Oracle Applications Help page.
 - Window Help - From the Help menu, select "Window Help." A browser window should open up, displaying the online help system. The documentation portion should contain the online help for the current form.

Set Other Profile Options

You may need to set these profile options also.

GUEST_USER_PWD

Use the System Profiles form to verify or set the value of the Guest User Password (GUEST_USER_PWD) profile option.

The guest user for Oracle Applications instances must have a user name of 'GUEST'. You must specify the same user name, GUEST, and the same password for this user in the Guest User Password profile option and in any .dbc files used to access the Oracle Applications database. Additionally, the password you specify for the GUEST user in the Guest User Password profile option and the .dbc files must match the password defined for the GUEST user in the Users form under the System Administrator responsibility. Any deviation from this setup may cause issues such as e-mail users being unable to access the Notification Details page from links included in Oracle Workflow e-mail notifications.

Example:

```
GUEST_USER_PWD = GUEST/GUEST
```

Verify that the user/password works by signing on to Oracle Applications through forms.

ICX: Client IANA Encoding

This profile option is used to determine the character set of the text displayed by Java Server pages.

This profile option must be set to the correct character set (that is, the character set of the Apache server on the Web tier) for the online help system to support character sets other than American English.

The default setting is the US character set (ISO-8859-1).

Users can see this profile option, but they cannot update it.

ICX: Forms Launcher, ICX: Reports Launcher, ICX: Discoverer Launcher

The Personal Homepage allows Forms, Reports and Discoverer sessions to be launched from a single web page. You must set these site-level profile options to identify the base URL to use when launching each of these applications.

Set the Site level value of each option to the base URL to launch the appropriate application.

The base URLs provided in these profiles should be sufficient to launch the application, but should not include additional parameters which may be supplied by the Personal Homepage.

Examples are listed in the following table:

Profile	Value
ICX: Forms Launcher	http://myFormsServer/dev60cgi/f60cgi
ICX: Report Launcher	http://myReportsServer/dev60cgi/rwcgi60
ICX: Discoverer Launcher	http://myWebDiscovererServer/discwb33/html/english/welcome.htm? Connect=[APS_SECURE]apptest

Configure the TCF SocketServer

The TCF SocketServer is implemented as a servlet, running from within the Apache JServ engine framework. For information on recommended setup steps, see: Administering the TCF SocketServer, page 2-30.

Launching Oracle Applications Forms Directly

Typically, you should not start Oracle Applications forms directly, but rather from the Personal Homepage. However, if you need to launch the forms directly, you can do so by using the following URL in your browser:

http://<Web Server Machine>:<Web Port>/dev60cgi/f60cgi

Please note that if you made customizations in the appsweb.cfg file, the URL may be different from the above.

Warning: If Forms are launched directly, then certain features and settings will not be honored, including:

- all NLS settings including language, territory, date language, etc.
- date format
- timeout security
- time zones

Warning: This mechanism is supported for use by system administrators only, and only for "bootstrapping" purposes.

Configuring the Login Page for Oracle Applications

Oracle Applications uses a configurable login page.

Oracle Applications Login page

Users log in to Oracle Applications using a client web browser. From the Oracle Applications Login page, users access the E-Business Suite Home Page, which provides a single point of access to HTML-based applications, forms-based applications, and Business Intelligence applications. Users access the Oracle Applications Login page from the following URL:

`http://<server:port>/oa_servlets/AppsLogin`

For example,

`http://oraapps1.oracle.com:8000/oa_servlets/AppsLogin`

From this URL, you will be redirected to the central login page, "AppsLocalLogin.jsp".

Central Login Page



The following features are displayed in the default login page: Username field, Password field, Login button, and the Language Picker (if more than one language is installed).

The following user interface features can be turned on or off through the Local Login Mask profile option:

- Hints for username/password
- Register URL - this link allows the user to perform self-service registration in User Management

- Forgot Password URL - allows the user to have a password reset
- Language Picker
- Corporate Policy message

Note: Oracle User Management must be installed for "Register URL" and "Forgot Password URL" to be enabled.

Note: If the Oracle Applications instance is Single Sign-On enabled, the servlet directs the user to the Single Sign-On login page.

Note: The following login URLs continue to be supported, but no new features are being added to them:

```
http://server:port/OA_HTML/US/ICXINDEX.jsp
http://server:port/OA_HTML/jtfllogin.jsp
```

Language

The current browser language, if it exists in the applications database also, is used for the login page. The user can choose a different language on the login page (if the Language Picker is enabled) and refresh the page to have it appear in that language.

If the current browser language does not exist in the Oracle Applications installation, the language set in the site-level setting of the ICX_LANGUAGE profile option is used to render the login page.

A user can override the value of the ICX_LANGUAGE profile option for a given session only.

Oracle Applications Manager

Oracle Applications Manager uses this central login page as well to authenticate users.

CRM Applications

CRM applications use the following URL for logging in:

```
http://<server:port>/oa_servlets/CRMLogin
```

This URL directs the user to the central login page above; after logging in, the user is directed to the product home page.

Customizing the Oracle Applications Login page

Customized Login Page

User interface features can be turned on or off using the profile option Local Login Mask (FND_SSO_LOCAL_LOGIN_MASK):

For the Login page to show one or more of these optional attributes, just add the numeric values of all desired attributes and set the value of the profile option to that value.

- Username Hint = 01
- Password Hint = 02
- Cancel Button = 04
- Forgot Password URL = 08
- Register URL = 16
- Language Picker = 32
- Corporate Policy Message = 64

For example to show the Password Hint and the Forgot Password URL only, set the Local Login Mask profile option to 10 (02+08). To show just the Language Picker, set the value to 32, which is also the default value for the profile option.

The values for the Username Hint, Password Hint, Forgot Password URL text, Register URL text, and the Corporate Policy Message, as well as the Copyright text, are stored in Message Dictionary. You can update these messages using the Messages form or HTML page.

The table below lists the message names and their default values.

Login Page Message Names and Default Values

Message Name	Default value
FND_SSO_HINT_USERNAME	(example: michael.james.smith)
FND_SSO_HINT_PASSWORD	(example: 4u99v23)
FND_SSO_FORGOT_PASSWORD	Forgot your password?
FND_SSO_REGISTER_HERE	Register here
FND_SSO_SARBANES_OXLEY_TEXT	Corporate Policy Message
FND_SSO_COPYRIGHT_TEXT	Copyright 2004 Oracle Corporation. All rights reserved.

Personalizing the Oracle E-Business Suite Home page

The Oracle E-Business Home Page can be personalized to display the Worklist and to display the Applications Navigator in "Tree" or "Flat" mode. By default, the Applications Navigator is shown in Flat mode.

Follow these steps to make the above personalizations:

1. Log in as a system administrator.
2. From the Oracle E-Business Suite Home page, click the "Personalize Region" link/global icon. If the "Personalize Region" link is not present, enable the following profile "Personalize Self-Service Definition" (FND_CUSTOM_OA_DEFINITION) by setting it to "Yes".
3. Select any responsibility, if a responsibility picker is shown.
4. From the System Administrator level page, choose "Site" as the value for the level of personalization.
5. In the Updates Page, expand the "Oracle Applications Home Page" tree which appears on the side navigation. Expand the branches until you see the node "leftLayoutRN" branch which has "worklistRow", "appsHeaderRow", "responsibilityRow" and "appsNavTreeRow" as children. Click on "leftLayoutRN" node.
6. In the shuttle, you should see "workListRow" and "appsNavTreeRow" under the "Available Attributes" panel. Move the appropriate attribute (workListRow or appsNavTreeRow) to the "Attributes Displayed" page.
7. In the "Attributes Displayed" panel, select the "workListRow" and move it so that it is the first item. Click Apply and return to the home page.

Administering Oracle HTTP Server Powered by Apache

Oracle HTTP Server Powered by Apache provides the communication services offered within the Oracle Internet Application Server. This arrangement allows users to deploy HTTP and HTML based applications within a multi tiered computing environment.

Note: For updates and details on setting up your Oracle HTTP Server, please refer to *OracleMetaLink*.

Oracle HTTP Server

All incoming client requests to Oracle Internet Application Server (iAS) are handled by the Communication Services component of iAS. The Oracle HTTP Server, powered by Apache Web Server technology will accept and administer these requests. The Apache technology adopted by Oracle HTTP Server provides for an extremely stable, scalable, and extensible platform on which to deploy web based applications. The modular design of the Apache server allows for extension of the capabilities of the Oracle HTTP Server. In addition to the standard Apache modules (often referred to as modules), a number of Oracle specific modules are provided along with an extension to the functionality of several standard modules. These modules include:

- `mod_ssl` - This module provides secure listener communications using an Oracle provided encryption mechanism using 128 bit Secure Sockets Layer.
- `mod_plsql` - This module routes PL/SQL requests to the Oracle8i PL/SQL service, which in turn delegates to PL/SQL programs.
- `mod_jserv` - This module routes all servlet requests to the Apache Jserv servlet engine embedded within Oracle HTTP Server. Servlets can be shared across multiple zones.
- `mod_perl` - This module forwards Perl requests to the Perl Interpreter. The Perl Interpreter is embedded within the Oracle HTTP Server, removing the necessity to spawn an external interpreter as well as providing a caching mechanism such that modules and scripts need only be loaded or compiled once. Oracle Applications do not presently utilize `mod_perl`.

Note: Please refer to the Oracle HTTP Server documentation for a more detailed description of the operation and configuration of the Oracle HTTP Server. The information in this section is supplementary to that provided in the Oracle HTTP Server manual.

The manual *Installing Oracle Applications* should be consulted for additional information on directory structures and file locations referred to in this guide.

Note: The Oracle HTTP Server is powered by a standard version of Apache. A number of books have been published describing the operation of the Apache server. To further add to your knowledge of the Apache server, consult one of these.

Apache Configuration Files

Apache is configured through directives contained in one or more configuration files. The directives necessary for operating Apache within the Oracle environment will be entered into the configuration files during the install process. It should not be necessary to modify these files unless the system is being re-configured.

Warning: An invalid directive entered into a configuration file will prevent Apache from starting. An incorrect definition provided to a directive may cause Apache to behave in a fashion that was not intended.

Location

The Apache configuration files are installed as part of the Oracle Applications Rapid Install process. The files will be placed in a sub-directory of `iAS_HOME` (specified during the install process), `Apache/Apache/conf`. For example, if `iAS_HOME` is equal to

UNIX

/d5/part/visora/iAS then the Apache configuration files will be in the directory /d5/part/visora/iAS/Apache/Apache/conf .

Windows

C:\d5\part\visora\iAS then the Apache configuration files will be in the directory C:\d5\part\visora\iAS\Apache\Apache\conf .

Configuration Files

To determine which configuration file Apache is using, open the file \$APACHE_TOP/Apache/bin/apachectl and check the parameter HTTPD. If HTTPD is pointing to the httpds executable, then httpds.conf is being used, if HTTPD is pointing to the httpd executable, then httpd.conf is being used.

This file contains those directives necessary to allow Apache to run. The syntax of the configuration file allows for one directive per line. Lines may be continued on to the next line by placing a backslash, "\" as the last character in the line. Directives specified in any of the configuration files are case-insensitive, however arguments to directives may be case-sensitive. Lines beginning with a hash, "#", are considered comments and are ignored.

Other files may be linked to the httpds.conf file through the addition of *include* directives. Rapid Install will have created two other configuration files in the conf directory, *oracle_apache.conf*, and *apps.conf*. The file *oracle_apache.conf* should also contain an include statement pointing to the file <iAS_HOME>/Apache/modplsql/cfg/plsql.conf.

UNIX

The configuration file to be used at startup can be specified using the -f option on the command line. To view all of the options that the httpds executable accepts, at the command line enter:

```
$<iAS_HOME>/Apache/Apache/bin/httpds -h
```

Windows

Open a console window (DOS prompt), change directory to where the Apache executable is stored, and execute the command "Apache.exe -h". For example, at the DOS prompt enter:

```
C:\> cd C:\<iAS_HOME>\Apache\Apache
C:\> Apache.exe -h
```

Note: Refer to the Apache documentation at <http://www.apache.org/docs/windows.html> for more information on the operation of Apache in the Windows environment.

The default Apache configuration file

Important directives specified in the file httpd.conf or httpds.conf:

ServerName	A fully qualified domain name. For example, myserver.acme.com. This is the name with which Apache responds to HTTP requests.
Port	The port number on which Apache listens for HTTP requests. Set during Rapid Install. The default port number is 80.

ServerRoot	A fully qualified path, under which the Apache Server's configuration, error and log files reside. Directives defined with relative paths will append to this path. Set to <iAS_HOME>/Apache/Apache by Rapid Install.
DocumentRoot	The directory out of which document requests are served. Defaults to <COMMON_TOP>/portal.
ErrorLog	A fully qualified path to the error log file. The default entry is equal to <iAS_HOME>/Apache/Apache/logs/error_log on UNIX and <iAS_HOME>Apache/Apache/logs/error.log on Windows.
CustomLog	The location and format of the access log. The default entry is equal to logs/access_log common. This sets the file to be in the Common Logfile Format.
PidFile	The file in which the parent process is recorded on startup. Defaults to logs/httpds.pid
Include	Two include files should be specified in the default Apache configuration file. <iAS_HOME>/Apache/Jserv/etc/jserv.conf, and <iAS_HOME>/Apache/Apache/conf/oracle_apache.conf.

Warning: The order in which the include files are specified is important. *jserv.conf* should be placed before *oracle_apache.conf*.

oracle_apache.conf

The file *oracle_apache.conf* is "included" in *httpds.conf*. This file is created by Rapid Install, and has include entries pointing to *apps.conf*, and *plsql.conf* at a minimum. There may also be entries pointing to other files including *xml.conf*, and *ojsp.conf*. As an example *oracle_apache.conf* should contain the lines:

```
include /d5/ora/iAS/Apache/modplsql/cfg/plsql.conf

include /d5/ora/iAS/Apache/Apache/conf/apps.conf
```

plsql.conf

The file *plsql.conf* has entries related to the handling of PL/SQL procedures. The directive *LoadModule plsql_module* has an argument that is a pointer to the shared library *modplsql.so*. An example specifying the default location would be:

UNIX

```
#Directives for mod_plsql LoadModule plsql_module \ /d5/ora/iAS/Apache/
modplsql/bin/modplsql.so
```

Windows

```
#Directives for mod_plsql LoadModule plsql_module \ D:\<iAS_
HOME>\bin\modplsql.dll
```

apps.conf

This file contains Oracle Applications specific information for the Apache HTTP listener. A number of Alias directives for physical directories will be present in this file. Entries

will exist for OA_HTML, OA_MEDIA, OA_JAVA, OA_TEMP, OA_SECURE, and OA_CGI amongst others. An example of the entries that may be present include:

```
Alias /OA_JAVA/ "/d5/part/common/java/"
<Location /OA_JAVA/>
    Order allow,deny
    Allow from all
</Location>
Alias /OA_HTML/ "/d5/part/common/html/"
<Location /OA_HTML/>
    Order allow, deny
    Allow from all
</Location>
Alias /OA_MEDIA/ \
"/d5/part/common/java/oracle apps/media/"
<Location /OA_MEDIA/>
    Order allow, deny
    Allow from all
</Location>
```

Note: Ensure that trailing slashes, "/", are present in the physical directory definition. Omission of the trailing slash can result in errors such as broken images or files not being found.

Controlling Apache

Rapid Install will create a sub-directory under the common area with the path admin/scripts/<context_name>. Within this directory a number of control scripts are created. The control script adapctl can be used to stop and start the Apache Web Listener.

Note: If you are using Service Management and Oracle Applications Manager, see also: Service Management and Control Scripts, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*.

UNIX

Apache control file: admin/scripts/adapctl.sh

Windows

Apache control file: admin\scripts\adapctl

The Apache control file is a shell script that can accept the arguments either "stop" or "start". At the command line enter the following:

UNIX

To start Apache:

```
$ adapctl.sh start
```

To stop Apache:

```
$ adapctl.sh stop
```

Windows

To start Apache on Windows platforms, the command is:

```
adapctl.cmd start
```

To stop Apache on Windows platforms, the command is:

```
adapctl.cmd stop
```

Alternatively, you can use the Services tool from the Control Panel to start and stop the Apache service.

Testing Apache Server Status

In order to test the correct operation of the Oracle HTTP as a part of the overall application, it is necessary to ensure that the Oracle database, the Oracle database listener, and the concurrent manager are running, if required. Refer to earlier sections in this guide to determine applicable steps necessary to ensure these processes are available. To test the status of Apache, enter the following at the operating system prompt (from the <iAS_HOME>/Apache/Apache/bin directory):

UNIX

To test the status of the Apache Server-

```
$apachectl status
```

The return from this command is dependent on what the directive "STATUSURL" is set to in the apachectl file as well as on the availability of the lynx command. For example, if the following line is entered in apachectl:

```
STATUSURL="http://myserver.acme.com:8002/pls/VIS/FND_WEB.PING"
```

then the status command will return:

```
$ apachectl status
FND_WEB.PING
SYSDATE 08-DEC-2001 06:37:24
DATABASE VERSION Oracle8i Enterprise Edition - Production
DATABASE ID:vision
SCHEMA NAME APPS
AOL VERSION 11.5
APPS WEB AGENT http://myserver.acme.com:8002/pls/VIS
```

To fully test the configuration of the Oracle HTTP Server, you can bring up the Rapid Installation Index Page , by requesting the following URL:

```
http://<server>.<domain>:<port>
```

for example, `http://myserver.acme.com:8002`, and then selecting "Apps Logon Links" from this page. This launches the Oracle Application Login page from which you can login as an Oracle Applications User, such as SYSADMIN.

Note: More information on the operation of apachectl can be found in the manual *Oracle HTTP Server*. Refer to the section titled "Secure Sockets Layer Configuration" in this guide for more information on the operation of the "startssl" argument.

Windows

To test the status of the Apache Server on Windows, point your browser at the server URL, for example:

```
http://myserver.acme.com:8002/pls/VIS/FND_WEB.PING
```

should result in the output

```
FND_WEB.PING
SYSDATE 08-DEC-2001 06:37:24
DATABASE VERSION Oracle8i Enterprise Edition -
Production
DATABASE ID:vision
SCHEMA NAME APPS
AOL VERSION 11.5
APPS WEB AGENT http://myserver.acme.com:8002/pls/VIS
```

Secure Sockets Layer Configuration

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) allows the Apache listener to encrypt HTML pages and transmit them on the network using the HTTPS protocol for secure transmissions.

SSL uses an encrypting method called public key cryptography, where the server provides the client with a public key for encrypting information. The server's private key is required to decrypt this information. The client uses the public key to encrypt and send information to the server, including its own key which identifies it to the server.

In order for the Oracle HTTP Server, powered by Apache, to function in secure mode it is also necessary to utilize certificates which validate the server's identity. These certificates are used to ensure that the owner of a public key is who they say they are. Typically you will want to use a private key with an officially signed certificate, validated by a Certificate Authority (CA). The CA validates the company details, sets expiration dates on the certificates and may place policies on what information is contained within the certificate. A number of CAs exist, and include such authorities as Verisign, RSA, and GTE CyberTrust. To obtain a CA approved certificate it is necessary to generate a certificate request, which includes details of the organization applying as well as the public key to be distributed, this is then sent to the CA, validated and returned. Authorities may also require proof of ownership of the company applying for the certificate, as well as proof of ownership of the domain name specified in the certificate request.

Note: The task of obtaining a signed certificate is beyond the scope of this guide. Refer to the *Oracle Advanced Security Administrator's Guide* for more information on the use of certificates in an Oracle environment. Refer to <http://www.modssl.org> for more information on the SSL module for Apache.

It is possible to generate a self-signed certificate that can be used to test SSL operation. Most browsers are configured to accept certificates from a number of recognized authorities. Receiving a certificate from an organization other than one of these will generate a warning, and the user will be prompted to accept or reject this certificate. A self-signed certificate will generate this warning.

Creating a self-signed certificate

The SSL module provides a utility called *openssl* which can be used to create a self-signed certificate. In order to generate a self-signed certificate perform the following steps:

Temporary SSL Environment Setup

Follow these steps for the temporary SSL environment setup.

Step 1: Create Random number file.

Create a file containing a string of random numbers. The default path for this file is:

UNIX

`$HOME/.rnd`

Windows

RANDFILE can be set with the Control Panel System Properties utility.

The environment variable, RANDFILE, set in *openssl.cnf* can be used to specify the path to the file containing the random numbers.

Step 2: Create a working directory to hold Apache's private key, certificate request and test certificate.

For example:

```
$COMMON_TOP/admin/certs/apache
```

Step 3: Create the private key (apache_1024.key).

Set up a temporary environment variable OPENSSL_TOP, and set it to <iAS_Home>/Apache/open_ssl in UNIX and <iAS_Home>\Apache\open_ssl in Windows.

From the working directory, type the following command to generate your RSA private key (apache_1024.key):

```
$OPENSSL_TOP/bin/openssl genrsa -des3 -out apache_1024.key 1024
```

You will be prompted to enter the PEM pass phrase, which must be at least 4 characters in length. Remember this pass phrase; unless you decide to unencrypt your server key using step 4 below, you will be prompted to enter in the next step and each time you start up Apache in SSL mode.

Step 4: Optionally, unencrypt the value of the server key.

If this is done, you will not be prompted for the PEM pass phrase every time you start up the Apache web server (Note that if anyone gets this key they will be able to impersonate you on the net, so consider leaving it encrypted and entering the PEM pass phrase each time you start Apache).

Copy the private key (apache_1024.key) that you created in step 3 above to a backup file (apache_1024.key.bak) then type the following command to invoke the RSA key processing tool:

```
$ $OPENSSL_TOP/bin/openssl rsa -in apache_1024.key.bak -out \
apache_1024.key
```

Note: On Windows, you must perform this step. This limitation will be fixed in Apache 2.0.

Step 5: Edit the default openssl configuration file (\$OPENSSL_CONF) so that it can be used to generate the certificate signing request.

Locate the line that reads `dir = ./demoCA` and modify this line to point to the full directory path where the directory of your key and request file are located (the directory created in step 2 above).

On Windows, comment out the lines that set the RANDFILE, oid_file and oid_section variables:

```
#RANDFILE = $ENV::HOME/.rnd
#oid_file=$ENV::HOME/.oid
#oid_section=new_oids
```

Step 6: Set environment variable to point to openssl.cnf.

In order for openssl to find the correct configuration file, an environment variable needs to be set. This variable is called OPENSSL_CONF and it should equal the path to the file openssl.cnf. For example:

UNIX

In a csh environment, the command could be

```
% setenv OPENSSL_CONF /d5/part/ora/iAS/Apache/open_ssl/bin/openssl.cnf
```

Windows

OPENSSL_CONF can be set with the Control Panel Properties utility.

If this variable is not set openssl will look for the file /usr/local/Apache/libexec/ssl/ssl/openssl.cnf on UNIX systems, or \usr\local\ssl\openssl.cnf on Windows systems. You will see an error stating that configuration information cannot be found if this file does not exist.

Step 7: Generate the certificate signing request (CSR).

From the working directory, type the following command to generate your CSR (apache_1024.csr) derived from the private key (apache_1024.key).

```
$ $OPENSSL_TOP/bin/openssl req -config $OPENSSL_CONF \
-new -key apache_1024.key -out apache_1024.csr
```

You will be prompted for the following:

- Enter PEM pass phrase: *Enter the pass phrase chosen in step 4.*
- Country Name (2 letter code) [AU]
State or Province Name (full name) [Some-State]: Locality Name (e.g., city)
[: Organization Name (e.g., company) [Internet Widgets Pty Ltd]: Organizational
Unit Name (e.g., section) []:
- Common Name (e.g., YOUR name) []: *Enter the fully qualified name of your server. For example: orl-sun.oracle.com*
- E-mail Address []: *Enter your e-mail address. This is where the certificate will be sent.*
- Please enter the following 'extra' attributes: *These questions are optional.*

Now the working directory contains a private key (apache_1024.key) and a certificate request (apache_1024.csr). Both are text files containing encrypted information and can be viewed. The contents of certificate request be used in the next step.

Step 8: Submit your certificate request (CSR) to your certificate authority(CA).

The request process is generally explained in detail by your CA of choice. Go to the web site of your CA to follow their specific process for requesting a certificate. In the example here, a trial certificate is requested from Verisign.

Go to www.verisign.com, to request a trial certificate. From Verisign's home page, there should be a link for getting a trial certificate (if this is not obvious, search on "trial certificate")

The Verisign web site will lead you through the steps of requesting your certificate. When asked to submit your CSR, paste the contents of your certificate request (apache_1024.csr) beginning with and including

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
```

and ending with and including

```
-----END CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
```

Click Submit, then enter the additional requested information, including your e-mail address again for the certificate. You should receive the certificate via e-mail within a couple of hours.

Step 9: Create the certificate file.

Once you have received your certificate, use your e-mail application to save the entire e-mail message to a text file. Name the file `apache_1024.crt`. It is very important to do this so that you do not corrupt your certificate by cutting and pasting from your e-mail application. In addition, you must use a text editor, rather than a word processing application for your editions to the resulting text file.

If you have saved your e-mail message to a machine that is not your server, transfer the file over to the server and into the working directory (`$COMMON_TOP/admin/certs/apache`), for example, using `ftp`.

In the working directory, open the file in a text editor and delete all the lines except for the certificate. The certificate consists of all lines beginning with and including

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
```

and ending with and including

```
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

Once your changes are made, save the file with the name `apache_1024.crt`.

At this stage, if you are using a global server certificate, you will also have to retrieve the intermediate certificate which should be accessible via a URL in the e-mail that you receive containing your certificate. Transfer the file over to the server and into the working directory (`$COMMON_TOP/admin/certs/apache`), for example, using `ftp`. Save this intermediate certificate in a file named `intermediate.crt`.

Configure Apache for SSL connections

Configuring Apache for SSL connections using AutoConfig

If you are AutoConfig enabled, run AutoConfig as described in Oracle *MetaLink* Note 165195.1 after ensuring that the following parameters are correctly set in your context xml file:

- set the %s_url_protocol variable to https
- set the %s_local_url_protocol variable to https
- set the %s_webssl_port variable to the Apache SSL port required
- set the %s_web_ssl_directory variable to point to the full directory path of the directory that is to contain the .crt and .key files that you are using for Apache, for example, <\$COMMON_TOP>/admin/certs/apache

Then perform the following steps:

- create two directories in the s_web_ssl_directory, named ssl.crt and ssl.key
- copy your Apache .crt file in to the ssl.crt directory with a file name of server.crt
- copy your Apache key file in to the ssl.key file with a file name of server.key

Test Startup of Apache and Oracle Applications Sign-On

Start up the Apache server in SSL mode on UNIX by invoking adaptctl.sh (which will invoke the httpdctl script) or on Windows NT/2000 by starting the Apache service.

On UNIX, you can ensure that there are several spawned processes for Apache through use of the command `ps -ef | grep util`. On NT/2000, you should use the processes taskbar to check for Apache processes.

If your server key is encrypted, you will be prompted for the PEM pass phrase that you chose when creating your server's private key.

Ensure that Apache can startup successfully before continuing and that you successfully get an SSL connection to the default Apache banner screen using `https://<host.domain>:<SSL_port>` where <host.domain> is the fully qualified name of the machine running Apache and <SSL_port> is the SSL port number defined in `httpds.conf`.

SSL Setup for Forms 6i Server

Use Wallet Manager to create certificate

In order for the forms server to run in https mode, you must use the Oracle Wallet Manager utility delivered with Developer 6i. Developer 6i is installed in the Oracle 8.0.6 Oracle Home on your server. All references to ORACLE_HOME in this section refer to the home for Oracle 8.0.6.

Use Wallet Manager to create certificate

In order for the forms server to run in https mode, you must use the Oracle Wallet Manager utility delivered with Developer 6i. Developer 6i is installed in the Oracle 8.0.6 Oracle Home on your server. All references to ORACLE_HOME in this section refer to the home for Oracle 8.0.6.

Create a working directory

Create a working directory to hold the Oracle Forms 6i Wallet, for example:

`$COMMON_TOP/admin/certs/forms`

Start Wallet Manager.

On UNIX, as the ORACLE user,

1. Change to the directory of your Oracle 8.0.6 \$ORACLE_HOME.
2. Source the environment file [sid].env.
3. Set the DISPLAY variable to display to the IP address from where you are working. For example:

```
$ export DISPLAY=192.168.0.x:0.0
```

 where 192.168.0.x is the IP address of your workstation.
4. Run owm, which is located in the 8.0.6 \$ORACLE_HOME/bin directory.

Create a new wallet and certificate request (CSR)

Note: When you create a new wallet in Wallet Manager, this step of creating a CSR is the only way to enable the function of importing a User Certificate. (Operations > Import User Certificate). If a CSR has not been generated within a specific wallet, the option to import a User Certificate will remain disabled. (See comments in the Oracle*MetaLink* note 123718.1 for additional details.)

1. Select Wallet > New.
2. Select No when prompted with the message:
 "Your default directory doesn't exist. Do you wish to create it now?"
3. In the New Wallet dialogue box, create a Wallet Password and click OK.

Make sure you remember this password. You will be prompted for the password each time you open this wallet with Oracle Wallet Manager.

4. Select Yes when prompted with the message:
 "A new empty wallet has been created. Do you wish to create a certificate request at this time?"
5. Fill out the fields in the Create Certificate Request dialogue box, for example:

Common Name: <Fully qualified host name of your server>

Organizational Unit:

Organization:

Locality/City:

State/Province:

Country:

Key Size: 512

Note: If you are not on Oracle Forms version 6.0.8.10.3 or higher, the list of values for Key Size will only contain 512 bits.

6. Select OK when prompted with the message:

"A certificate was created. Please submit this to a Certificate Authority or you can use 'Export Certificate Request' to export it into a file."

Select Wallet and ensure that the Auto Login checkbox is checked.

This ensures that the wallet is open to connect via SSL.

Select Wallet > Save As to save the new wallet.

Save the wallet files to the working directory chosen for the wallet, for example:

`$COMMON_TOP/admin/certs/forms`

(Use the value of `$COMMON_TOP`, rather than the variable.)

Two new files will be created in your wallet directory:

- `cwallet.sso` -- Auto Login is checked; wallet is open
- `ewallet.der` -- stores your certificate once imported

Submit your certificate request (CSR) to your certificate authority (CA)

Within the Wallet Manager navigator window, highlight the Certificate: [Requested] branch of the Wallet. On the right hand side you will see your CSR in the Certificate Request window. This is the window you will cut and paste from when prompted by your CA.

The request process is generally explained in detail by your CA of choice. Go to the web site of your CA to follow their specific process for requesting a certificate. The example described here uses a trial certificate from Verisign.

Go to www.verisign.com, to request a trial certificate. From Verisign's home page, there should be a link for getting a trial certificate (if this is not obvious, search on "trial certificate").

The Verisign web site will lead you through the steps for requesting your certificate. When asked to submit your CSR, paste the contents of your CSR from Wallet Manager beginning with and including

-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----

and ending with and including

-----END CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----

Click Submit.

If you have created the certificate request with a 512 bit key size, Verisign will warn you that it has detected a 512 bit key size. As stated earlier, the 512 key size is the only option in Release 11i for Forms 6i versions below 6.0.8.10.3.

Click Continue, then enter the additional requested information, including your e-mail address again for the certificate. You should receive the certificate via e-mail within several hours.

Create the certificate file.

Once you have received your certificate, use your e-mail application to save the entire e-mail message to a text file. Based on the convention in this document, name the file forms_[key_size].crt, where [key_size] is the number of bits chosen in Wallet Manager when creating the certificate request. For example, use forms_1024.crt if 1024-bit key size was chosen. It is very important to save the message as a text file so that you do not corrupt your certificate by cutting and pasting from your e-mail application. In addition, you must use a text editor, rather than a word processing application for your editions to the resulting text file.

If you have saved your e-mail message to a machine that is not your server, transfer the file over to the server and into the working directory (\$COMMON_TOP/admin/certs/forms), for example using binary ftp.

In the working directory, open the file in a text editor (for example, vi) and delete all the lines except for the certificate. The certificate consists of all lines beginning with and including

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
```

and ending with and including

```
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

Once your editions are made, save the file, again with the name forms_[key_size].crt, for example, forms_1024.crt.

Import your User Certificate into Wallet Manager

Back in Wallet Manager, perform the following steps:

1. Navigate to Operations > Import User Certificate.
2. Select a file that contains the certificate and click OK.
3. Enter the full path of your working directory where you have stored your certificate file (forms_[key_size].crt), for example:
\$ COMMON_TOP/admin/certs/forms
(Use the value of \$COMMON_TOP, rather than the variable).
4. Highlight the certificate file (forms_[key_size].crt) and click OK.
5. The bottom status bar of Wallet Manager should display the message:
"Your certificate has been successfully imported."
6. In the navigator window under Wallet, you can highlight the Certificate:
[Ready]
to see the unencrypted values of your certificate.

Note: The following error message when attempting to import the User Certificate indicates that you are working with an unrecognized CA root certificate:

"User certificate import has failed because the CA certificate doesn't exist. Do you want to import a CA certificate now?"

This error occurs when Wallet Manager attempts to import your User Certificate, but does not recognize the digital signature of the CA who issued this certificate to you. Wallet Manager then offers you the option to import the CA certificate under the "Trusted Certificates" branch of this Wallet, so that it can finish the proper import of your User Certificate.

At this point, it is best to leave the error message above open on the terminal and continue with the installation of the CA root certificate that is a pre-requisite of importing the user certificate in Oracle Wallet Manager by following the certificate authority's instructions to obtain an X.509 format *.cer file. then using it to import the digital certificate of your CA as trusted to successfully finish the import of your User Certificate.

The bottom status bar of Wallet Manager should display the message:

"Your certificate has been successfully imported."

You should now be able to highlight Certificate: [Ready] in the navigator window under Wallet to see the unencrypted values of your certificate.

Set up Forms Server environment

This section describes how the Forms Server environment is set up.

Test Startup of Oracle Forms 6i Server and Oracle Applications

Note: If you are using Service Management and Oracle Applications Manager, see also: Service Management and Control Scripts, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*.

Set up Forms Server Environment

Setting up the Forms Server environment using AutoConfig

This section contains instructions to modify configuration files and profiles that are maintained by the AutoConfig infrastructure.

Run AutoConfig as described in MetaLink Note 165195.1 or in the *AD Utilities Reference Guide* after ensuring that the variables that enable forms to connect in https mode are correctly set in your context XML file.

No more steps are required in the current section. You can proceed with testing the startup of Oracle Forms 6i and Oracle Applications.

Set the following SSL environment variables for Developer 6i Forms server by defining them somewhere below the setting of the ORACLE_HOME variable in the environment file for your 8.0.6 Oracle Home: \$ORACLE_HOME/[sid].env:

- **FORMS60_WALLET:** specifies the directory created for your wallet that holds the certificate used on the server, for example, \$COMMON_TOP/admin/certs/forms
- **FORMS60_HTTPS_NEGOTIATE_DOWN:** specifies whether to allow the Forms Server to negotiate encryption down to the highest level supported by the client (TRUE) or to ensure that all encryption occurs at the level at which it is running (FALSE). This should be set to TRUE.

On Windows NT/2000 platforms, these variables should also be set in the registry under \HK_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\ORACLE using the regedit or regedt32 command.

Test Startup of Oracle Forms 6i Server and Oracle Applications

Start up the forms servers.

On UNIX, startup the forms metrics server (adfmctl.sh) and forms metrics client (adfmctl.sh) as usual. Use adfmctl.sh to start up the forms server in https mode:

```
$COMMON_TOP/admin/scripts/<context_name>/adfmctl.sh start
```

On Windows NT/2000, start the forms service using the control panel.

Make sure that the forms server has started successfully before continuing:

On UNIX, check for a process for f60srv and a process similar to f60webmx webfile= HTTPS9,4,PID20 which indicates that forms is running in HTTPS mode using the command:

```
$ ps -ef | grep f60
```

On Windows NT/2000, check the services panel and task bar for forms server processes.

Test that you can connect to Forms (Core) Applications.

Note: Using JInitiator 1.1.7.27 requires that the initial connection to the Web server must be via the non-SSL port to load the jar files. For more details, see *OracleMetaLink* Note 123718.1.

Prepare the client for testing signon to Forms.

Perform the following steps to prepare the client.

1. Refresh the client caches for the browser and JInitiator. The browser and JInitiator both have a mechanism for remembering activities that are performed repeatedly. In a production environment these mechanisms dramatically increase the performance of the client. However, when testing any changes made to the servers, we often want to start with a clean slate. For example, clean out the JInitiator cache files in c:\Program Files\Oracle\JInitiator 1.1.7.27 Export\jcache. Exit your browser completely and start a new session.
2. Disable browser proxy settings. If your organization uses a firewall and the network administrator has not yet opened the necessary port in the firewall you will need to disable the browser proxy settings.
3. Enable JInitiator's Java console. Enabling JInitiator's Java console allows you to view all activity and errors for JInitiator for forms connections.

Test signon to Forms using one of the following URLs.

For UNIX:

```
http://[host.domain]:[port] /dev60cgi/f60cgi
```

where [host.domain] is the fully qualified hostname of the machine running Apache and [port] is the non-SSL web listener port.

Note: If the forms server is not starting successfully, or you cannot connect to Forms go over the above steps, checking for mistakes.

Also, refer to Oracle*MetaLink* Note 123718.1 "A Guide to Understanding and Implementing SSL with Oracle Applications 11i" for more information.

For Windows NT/2000:

```
http://[host.domain]:[port] /dev60cgi/if60cgi
```

Updating Profile options within Oracle Applications

Once SSL has been enabled the Profile options within Oracle Applications can be configured to use https and the SSL port. Refer to other sections of this documentation on how to set Profile options.

Note: Any HTML files being served from this server can be modified to use the https protocol instead of http once Apache is operating in SSL mode.

Administering the TCF SocketServer

In Oracle Applications Release 11i (11.5.7 and higher) the TCF (Thin Client Framework) SocketServer is implemented as a servlet that runs within the Apache JServ engine framework. The TCF SocketServer enables certain Java components of the Oracle Applications user interface to communicate with the middle tier and database tier. These components include the AK Object Navigator, the Function Security Menu Viewer, BOM Flow Routing Network Designer, WIP Manufacturing Scheduling Workbench, and others. The TCF SocketServer process should always be running in a production installation.

Prior to Release 11i (11.5.7 and higher) the TCF SocketServer was implemented as a standalone process.

This new implementation does require that you have Apache and Apache Jserv installed. There are no additional manual steps required for the TCF SocketServer, assuming that the Apache installation is set up properly. However, there are some recommended steps related to the Apache configuration. First, you should check that the Apache JServ engine is configured properly to run servlets. Second, you should add the TCF SocketServer to the list of servlets that are started automatically when the Apache Jserv is started. For more details, see below.

Check the Apache Jserv engine configuration

If the AOL/J Setup Test is available you should run it to check that the Apache JServ engine is configured properly to run servlets. Assuming it is, the Applications Servlet Agent (APPS_SERVLET_AGENT) profile will already be set to point to a proper servlet zone. The TCF:HOST and TCF:PORT profile options should automatically be updated so that the TCF Socket Server uses the same zone. The profiles are only updated at the site level.

If the Applications Servlet Agent profile is not set up to point to a servlet zone properly, check your Apache installation to see what servlet zones are defined. Typically, zones will be defined in the `jserv.properties` file; look also for `ApJServMount` calls in the `jserv.conf` file for zone aliases. The default zone for oracle servlets is expected to be called `'oa_servlets'`. The Applications Servlet Agent profile (and the TCF:HOST profile) should look something like `'http://hostname:port/oa_servlets'`.

Start the TCF SocketServer automatically

One other recommended step is to add the TCF SocketServer to the list of servlets that are started up automatically when Apache Jserv is started. This prevents the first user of the Socket Server from having to incur the overhead of starting it up.

To do this, find the `<zone>.properties` file corresponding to the servlet zone being used, and add the line:

```
servlets.startup=oracle.apps.fnd.tcf.SocketServer
```

to it. You will have to bounce your Apache server for any changes to Apache configuration files to take effect. If your setup is already correct, you may still need to bounce the server anyway depending on whether your Apache server is set up to load classes from the `'apps.zip'` file dynamically.

Checking the status of the TCF SocketServer

You can check the status of the TCF SocketServer using the TCF Status function on the AOL/J Diagnostics menu.

To navigate to this menu, log in to Oracle Applications with the System Administration (Oracle Self-Service Web Applications) responsibility. The navigation path is Navigate region, Self-Service > System Administration > Diagnostics, AOL/J Diagnostics.

Troubleshooting

If you encounter the following issues when upgrading to the TCF servlet, you can make the appropriate changes in the Apache configuration files.

- If you are getting an error message like `'Unable to establish a JDBC connection'`, the issue most probably is that `FND_TOP` needs to be defined as an initial argument to the TCF servlet. Change the appropriate zone.properties file to include the line:
`servlets.default.initArgs=FND_TOP=<value of FND_TOP>`
- If you are running the Manufacturing Scheduling Workbench but are getting an `'Unexpected error java.lang.NullPointerException raised'` in the Jinitiator console, the problem is most likely that an `ewt` class used by the workbench needs to be available in the `CLASSPATH` of the servlet code. Make sure your `jserv.properties` file has a line like:

```
wrapper.classpath=<8.0.6 oracle home>/forms60/java wrapper.classpath=<8.0.6  
oracle \ home>/forms60/java/f60srv.jar
```

Related Topics

AOL/J Setup Test Suite, page 2-41

AdminAppServer Utility

Because Release 11*i* is deployed in a multi-tier configuration, the security model includes authentication of application servers to the database servers they access. When this layer of security is activated, it uses "server IDs" or passwords that the application server passes to the database server. If the database server recognizes the server ID, it grants access to the database. The server IDs are created using a Java script called AdminAppServer.

The application server security system is initially not activated; you have to activate it after installation. The application servers are not assigned server IDs and the database servers do not check for server IDs.

Using the AdminAppServer utility

The Java script AdminAppServer is used to create .dbc files and to enable or disable application server security.

Prior to running AdminAppServer you must ensure that:

- JDBC classes are in the CLASSPATH and LD_LIBRARY_PATH
- \$JAVA_TOP is in the classpath

For UNIX platforms, the script is run as:

```
java oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer [parameters]
```

For Windows platforms, the script is run as:

```
jre -classpath %CLASSPATH% \  
oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer [parameters]
```

The first parameter must be the connection string followed by the command string, for example:

```
apps/apps@dbname ADD
```

The following commands are supported:

- **ADD** - create a new .dbc file
- **UPDATE** - update an existing .dbc file
- **DELETE** - delete an existing .dbc file
- **STATUS** - check the serverID status for a database
- **AUTHENTICATION** - toggle authentication mode

Additional parameters depend on the operation. These include:

- **DBC** - The .dbc file to modified, or used to connect to the database. Used with UPDATE, DELETE, STATUS, AND AUTHENTICATION.
- **SECURE_PATH** - Used with ADD. This parameter specifies in which directory the .dbc file should be created, and defaults to the current directory if not provided. This parameter should always point to \$FND_TOP/secure.
- **DB_HOST** - Required in Release 11*i*. The host machine of database.
- **DB_PORT** - Required in Release 11*i*. The port of database. The default is 1521.
- **DB_NAME** - For thin drivers. The database SID.

- **APPS_JDBC_DRIVER_TYPE** - THICK or THIN. This parameter must be set to THIN in Release 11i.
- **GUEST_USER_PWD** - Any valid applications user. This parameter defaults to the value of GUEST_USER_PWD profile if not provided. If passed with no arguments to an UPDATE call, it will refresh with the value from database.
- **GWYUID** - For thick drivers.
- **FNDNAM** - For thick drivers.
- **TWO_TASK** - For thick drivers. Name of database.
- **WALLET_PWD** - Used with the TCF Socket Server in SSL mode.
- **SERVER_ADDRESS** - Used with authentication.
- **SERVER_DESCRIPTION** - Used with authentication.
- **FND_MAX_JDBC_CONNECTIONS** - The maximum number of open connections in the JDBC connection cache. This number is dependent on the amount of memory available, number of processes specified in the init.ora file of the database and the per-processor file descriptor limit.
- **FND_IN_USE_CONNECTION_TIMEOUT** - The maximum number of seconds a connection can be in use. In order to avoid connections being locked up for too long, the connection cache uses this parameter to forcibly close connections that have been locked for longer than this specified limit. If this parameter is unspecified, connections in use will not be cleaned up. This should be set to a number larger than the time taken to complete the largest transaction.
- **FND_UNUSED_CONNECTION_TIMEOUT** - The maximum number of seconds an unused connection can remain in the cache. The connection cache will close and remove from the cache any connection that has been idle for longer than this specified limit.

Important: In Release 11i, the following parameters are required: APPS_JDBC_DRIVER_TYPE (must be set to THIN), DB_HOST, and DB_PORT.

Administering .dbc Files

The .dbc file is contained on the web/applications server and holds information used by the database for authentication. The web/application server passes the information from the .dbc file, as well as login information, to the database server to authenticate the user. The authentication process is handled by the standard applications security feature.

The .dbc files required by the application server security system are not part of the delivered product and must be created after installation.

The Java utility AdminAppServer is used to create the .dbc files.

Prior to running AdminAppServer you must ensure that:

- JDBC classes are in the CLASSPATH and LD_LIBRARY_PATH
- \$JAVA_TOP is in the classpath

Creating a .dbc file

Use the AdminAppServer utility to create a .dbc file for the application server to access the database server. In addition to creating the .dbc file this utility registers the application server with the database for the Applications Server Security feature.

To access additional database servers from the same application server, you must rerun the AdminAppServer utility for each additional database. You must run the AdminAppServer utility each time you create a .dbc file, and each .dbc file only allows access to one database.

To create a .dbc file for an application server:

1. You must set the username/password value for the GUEST_USER_PWD parameter. Create a valid username ("guest" for example) in Oracle Applications. Then use the username/password combination as the value for GUEST_USER_PWD. The syntax is illustrated in the following example:

```
GUEST_USER_PWD=guest/guest
```

Oracle recommends that you do not assign any responsibilities for this user.

2. From the command line, enter the appropriate command for your platform:

For UNIX platforms:

```
java oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps@dbname \  
ADD DB_HOST=database_host_name DB_PORT=database_port \  
DB_NAME=database_sid \  
[env_name=env_value] SECURE_PATH=$FND_TOP/secure
```

For Windows platforms:

```
jre -classpath %CLASSPATH% \  
oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps@dbname \  
ADD DB_HOST=database_host_name DB_PORT=database_port \  
DB_NAME=database_sid \  
[env_name=env_value] SECURE_PATH=$FND_TOP/secure
```

GWYUID, FNDNAM, and GUEST_USER_PWD will be defaulted if not provided explicitly. dbc files should be located in \$FND_TOP/secure, so SECURE_PATH should always be set to that, or this should be run directly out of the \$FND_TOP/secure area.

Updating a .dbc file (or Server ID)

When updating the .dbc file you can change as many parameters as you want, including the server ID, but you must enter at least one. Settings that you do not update retain their value.

To update a .dbc file or server ID:

Enter from the command line:

UNIX

```
java oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps@dbname \  
UPDATE DBC=$FND_TOP/secure/file.dbc APPL_SERVER_ID \  
[env_name=env_value]
```

Windows

```
jre -classpath %CLASSPATH% \ oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer  
apps/apps@dbname \ UPDATE DBC=$FND_TOP/secure/file.dbc APPL_SERVER_ID  
\ [env_name=env_value]
```

If APPL_SERVER_ID is not passed, AdminAppServer will attempt to synchronize the current server ID value in the .dbc file and the database, generating a new one if neither contains a value at all. Passing in APPL_SERVER_ID by itself will force a brand new application server ID to be created always, overwriting any existing one.

Note: You may need to run the AdminAppServer command if you are using a TCF SocketServer in SSL mode in an earlier release (11.5.5 or earlier). This command needs to be run specifying a wallet password. The command might look like (for UNIX):

```
java oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps \  
UPDATE DBC=$FND_TOP/secure/file.dbc WALLET_PWD=welcome
```

Generating the wallet password is not required in 11.5.7 or later, as TCF runs in servlet mode and no longer requires it.

Deleting a .dbc file

To delete a .dbc file, enter on the command line:

UNIX

```
java oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps@dbname \ DELETE  
DBC=$FND_TOP/secure/file.dbc
```

Windows

```
jre -classpath %CLASSPATH% \ oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer  
apps/apps@dbname \ DELETE DBC=$FND_TOP/secure/file.dbc
```

This deletes the .dbc file and disallows access to the indicated database if Server Security is active.

Troubleshooting

The following are possible problems you may encounter and suggested solutions.

- Database connection failed.

Check to see if your JDBC environment is correct. See: AdminAppServer Utility, page 2-32.

- File I/O error while adding the server.

Check to see if the path you supplied as SECURE_PATH exists and that you have write permissions on it.

- Unable to read environment file.

A value for SECURE_PATH may not have been specified. If a value is not specified, the AdminAppServer utility assumes you are running from JAVA_TOP and looks for the file \$JAVA_TOP/oracle/apps/env.html to find the value of FND_TOP. Retry the command specifying the value of SECURE_PATH.

- Database error: Unique constraint violated.

There can be only one entry for each application server per database. If you do not specify the value for SERVER_ADDRESS, the AdminAppServer utility will

default the IP address of the machine from which you are running the command. To resolve this issue, run the STATUS command of AdminAppServer to ensure you are not trying to create a duplicate entry. Delete the old entry if you want to replace it. Retry, supplying the correct value for SERVER_ADDRESS.

Support for Encrypted Thin JDBC Connections

Oracle Applications provides support for encrypted thin JDBC connections by allowing system administrators to set the thin driver client parameters described in the manual *Oracle8i JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*.

Users can set these thin driver client parameters

- oracle.net.encryption_client
- oracle.net.encryption_types_client
- oracle.net.crypto_checksum_client
- oracle.net.crypto_checksum_types_client

by setting their respective system properties in the jserv.properties file:

- ENCRYPTION_CLIENT
- ENCRYPTION_TYPES_CLIENT
- CRYPTO_CHECKSUM_CLIENT
- CRYPTO_CHECKSUM_TYPES_CLIENT

Note that these parameters can also be set in the DBC file. If the values are set in the DBC file, they will override the jserv.properties settings. Valid values for the parameters are shown in the table below.

Parameter	Valid Values
ENCRYPTION_CLIENT	REJECTED, ACCEPTED, REQUESTED, REQUIRED
ENCRYPTION_TYPES_CLIENT	RC4_40, RC4_56, DEC40C, DEC56C
CRYPTO_CHECKSUM_CLIENT	REJECTED, ACCEPTED, REQUESTED, REQUIRED
CRYPTO_CHECKSUM_TYPES_CLIENT	MD5

The following are example command lines to add to jserv.properties file:

```
wrapper.bin.parameters=-DENCRIPTION_CLIENT=REQUESTED
wrapper.bin.parameters=-DENCRIPTION_TYPES_CLIENT=RC4_40
wrapper.bin.parameters=-DCRYPTO_CHECKSUM_CLIENT=REQUESTED
wrapper.bin.parameters=-DCRYPTO_CHECKSUM_TYPES_CLIENT=MD5
```

Please see the Oracle database JDBC developer's guide for more information about JDBC support for data encryption and integrity.

Administering Server Security

Oracle Applications Release 11i is deployed in a multi-tier configuration with one database server and many possible middle-tier application servers. The application servers include Apache JSP/Servlet, Forms, Discoverer and also some client programs such as Application Desktop Integrator. Any program which makes a SQL*Net connection to the Oracle Applications database needs to be trusted at some level. Oracle Applications uses the Server Security feature to ensure that such SQL*Net connections are coming from trusted machines and/or trusted programs.

The Server Security feature of Application Object Library supports authentication of application server machines and code modules in order to access the database. When Server Security is activated, application servers are required to supply server IDs (like passwords) and/or code IDs to access a database server. Server IDs identify the machine from which the connection is originating. Code IDs identify the module and patch level from which the connection is originating. Code IDs are included in applications code by development. The database server can be set to allow access only from specific machines and/or by code at a desired patch level.

The application server security feature is not initially activated. You should activate it by using the commands described in this section.

Application Server Security can be OFF or in one of two active states:

- OFF - Server security is not checked. Any application server machine can access the database. Code IDs are also not checked. Use this option on test systems or if you have full control over the software on all machines which can physically access your database.
- ON - Some level of trust is required to access the database. Either the application server must be registered with the database or the code must pass a module and version ID known to be trusted. Use this option only if you wish to maintain compatibility with application servers that you cannot yet patch to the code level required for best security.
- SECURE - Full trust is required for access to the database. Only registered application server machines may connect to the database, and only trusted code modules may connect to the database.

Server Security Status

You can check the Server Security status for a particular database using the STATUS command in the AdminAppServer utility, and providing the dbc file corresponding to that database. The STATUS command will display whether server security is turned on and whether the server ID in the dbc file is currently valid.

To check the Server Security status for a database:

On UNIX:

```
java oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps \  
STATUS DBC=<dbc file path>
```

On Windows:

```
jre -classpath %CLASSPATH% \  
oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps \  
STATUS DBC=<dbc file path>
```

Important: Check the Server Security status of your databases before you activate server security and ensure that all desired application servers have been registered.

Adding, Updating, or Deleting Server IDs

Application servers can be registered as trusted machines with a database server. This works by generating a large random ID number and storing that in both the application server and the database. When the application server attempts to connect to the database it will supply its server ID and the database will verify that it matches a trusted machine. The server ID is stored as a parameter in the DBC file for each application server. It can also be defined as an environment variable. The AdminAppServer utility is used to generate server IDs and then register them with a database server.

To add a server ID

Server ID values are generated by the AdminAppServer utility, and therefore cannot be supplied on the command line. They will be added to the database automatically when the AdminAppServer is used to create a dbc file.

On UNIX:

```
java oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps \
ADD [SECURE_PATH=$FND_TOP/secure] \
DB_HOST=<database host> \
DB_PORT=<database port> \
DB_NAME=<database sid>
```

On Windows:

```
jre -classpath %CLASSPATH% \
oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps \
ADD [SECURE_PATH=$FND_TOP/secure] \
DB_HOST=<database host> \
DB_PORT=<database port> \
DB_NAME=<database sid>
```

To update a server ID

You can update an application server's server ID at any time. From the command line enter:

On UNIX:

```
java oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps \
UPDATE DBC= <dbc file path> APPL_SERVER_ID
```

On Windows:

```
jre -classpath %CLASSPATH% \
oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps \
UPDATE DBC=
```

By providing the APPL_SERVER_ID argument, you will force a new server ID to be generated and added to your DBC file. If the APPL_SERVER_ID argument is not provided, AdminAppServer will take care of syncing up the server ID's of your dbc file and your database automatically, if required.

To delete a server ID

Server IDs can be deleted. This must be done using the AdminAppServer utility as follows:

On UNIX:

```
java oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps \  
DELETE DBC= <dbc file path> APPL_SERVER_ID
```

On Windows:

```
jre -classpath %CLASSPATH% \  
oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps \  
DELETE DBC=
```

Activating Server Security

You can turn the server security feature to OFF, ON, or SECURE mode using the AdminAppServer utility. When you turn off server security, you will not change or delete your server IDs. You can re-enable server security without having to recreate server IDs for existing registered application servers.

On UNIX:

To activate basic server security on UNIX, enter on the command line:

```
java oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps \  
AUTHENTICATION ON DBC=<dbc file path>
```

To activate full server security (SECURE mode) on UNIX, enter:

```
java oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps \  
AUTHENTICATION SECURE DBC=<dbc file path>
```

To deactivate server security on UNIX, enter:

```
java oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps \  
AUTHENTICATION OFF DBC=<dbc file path>
```

On Windows:

```
jre -classpath %CLASSPATH% \  
oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps \  
AUTHENTICATION ON DBC=<dbc file path>
```

To activate full server security (SECURE mode), from the command line, enter:

```
jre -classpath %CLASSPATH% \  
oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps \  
AUTHENTICATION SECURE DBC=<dbc file path>
```

To deactivate server security, from the command line, enter:

```
jre -classpath %CLASSPATH% \  
oracle.apps.fnd.security.AdminAppServer apps/apps \  
AUTHENTICATION OFF DBC=<dbc file path>
```

Restricting Access to Responsibilities Based on User's Web Server

Oracle Applications has the capability to restrict access to a responsibility based upon the Web server from which the user logs in. This capability is provided by tagging Web servers with a "server trust level."

The server trust level indicates the level of trust associated with the Web server. Currently, three trust levels are supported: 1) administrative, 2) normal, and 3) external. Web servers marked as "administrative" are typically those used exclusively by system administrators. These servers are considered secure and may contain highly sensitive information. Servers marked as "normal" are those used by employees within a

company's firewall. Users logging in from normal servers have access to only a limited set of responsibilities. Lastly, servers marked as "external" are those used by customers or employees outside of a company's firewall. These servers have access to an even smaller set of responsibilities.

Setting the Server Trust Level for a Server

There are two ways to specify the server trust level of a Web server.

The first way is to edit the server's `jserv.properties` configuration file and setting the `APPL_SERVER_TRUST_LEVEL` parameter. This is done by adding the line

```
"wrapper.bin.parameters=-DAPPL_SERVER_TRUST_LEVEL=<LEVEL>"
```

where `<LEVEL>` is a number ranging from 1 to 3. The number 1 corresponds to the administrative level, 2 corresponds to normal, and 3 corresponds to external. For example:

```
"wrapper.bin.parameters=-DAPPL_SERVER_TRUST_LEVEL=1"
```

indicates that this server is an administrative-level server.

The second way to specify the server trust level of a Web server is to edit the DBC file used by the Web server.

Adding the line

```
"APPL_SERVER_TRUST_LEVEL=<LEVEL>"
```

to the DBC file will give the Web server a trust level of `<LEVEL>`. For example:

```
"APPL_SERVER_TRUST_LEVEL=1"
```

The value set in the DBC file will override the value (if set) in the `jserv.properties` file. By default, the Web server has a trust level of 2 (the trust level of "normal").

Restricting Access to a Responsibility

To restrict access to a responsibility, set the Application Server Trust Level profile option value for that responsibility to be either the number 1, 2, or 3. This indicates that only Web servers with the same or greater privileged trust level may access that responsibility.

When a user logs on to Oracle Applications via a Web server, the system determines which responsibilities are valid for that user, and of those responsibilities, which can be accessed from that Web server the user has used to log on. The system returns only responsibilities that have an Application Server Trust Level greater than or equal to the Server Trust Level of the Web server.

For example, a responsibility with an Application Server Trust Level set to 1 would only be available if the Web server has its Application Server Trust Level set to 1 as well. A responsibility with Application Server Trust Level set to 2 would only be available if the Web server has its Server Trust Level set to either 1 or 2.

Profile Option - Application Server Trust Level

Responsibilities or applications with the specified level of trust can only be accessed by an application server with at least the same level of trust.

Users can see this profile option, but they cannot update it.

The system administrator access is described in the following table:

Level	Visible	Allow Update
Site	Yes	Yes
Application	Yes	Yes
Responsibility	Yes	Yes
User	No	No

The internal name for this profile option is APPL_SERVER_TRUST_LEVEL.

Application Object Library AOL/J Setup Test Suite

The AOL/J Setup Test suite consists of Java Server Pages (JSPs) and can be used to diagnose AOL/J setup issues. These JSPs exercise various features of AOL/J and provide feedback on the results. The test suite is accessed from the URL:

`http://<host_name>:<port_number>/OA_HTML/jsp/fnd/aoljtest.jsp`

where `host_name` and `port_number` correspond to the host name and port number of your instance's Apache listener. The host name and port number values are normally found in the APPS_SERVLET_AGENT profile option.

When you access the test suite, you will be asked to provide login information for your instance:

- Applications Schema Name
- Applications Schema Password
- TWO_TASK
- Host Name
- Port Number

The following is a list of functions and tests you can run with your instance.

- Connection Test
 - Locate DBC File
 - Verify DBC Settings
 - AOL/J Connection Test
- Virtual Directory settings
- APPS_WEB_AGENT
 - Virtual Directory Settings
 - FND_WEB.PING
 - Custom Authentication
 - GFM (Generic File Manager)
- APPS_SERVLET_AGENT

- Virtual Directory Settings
- Servlet Ping
- Jsp Ping
- APPS_FRAMEWORK_AGENT
 - Virtual Directory Settings
 - Servlet Ping
 - Jsp Ping
 - Cabo Setup Tests
 - X Server Accessibility
 - OA Framework System Info
 - Versions for Loaded Classes
- HELP_WEB_AGENT
- TCF
 - Test Connection
- Tool Launcher Profile Settings
 - ICX_FORMS_LAUNCHER
 - ICX_REPORT_LAUNCHER
 - ICX_DISCOVERER_LAUNCHER
- Application Login
 - Login Page
 - Show Responsibilities
 - Show Session Properties

Using Oracle Applications Framework

The Oracle Applications Framework is the Oracle Applications development and deployment platform. It is a 100% Java and XML, middle-tier application framework and services for the rapid development and deployment of HTML based applications.

For information on the Oracle Applications Framework, see the "Oracle Applications Framework Release 11i Documentation Road Map", Note 275880.1 on *OracleMetaLink*. This document contains references to documents covering the following areas:

- Installation/Configuration, including a list of profile options used by Oracle Applications Framework
- Personalization
- Development
- Related Areas, including the Oracle Applications Java Caching Framework

Oracle Applications Tablespace Model

Introduction

Release 11.5.10 introduces the new Oracle Applications Tablespace Model (OATM), with fewer, consolidated tablespaces (twelve, including three system tablespaces: temporary, system and undo segments) and support for locally managed tablespaces. In prior 11i releases of the E-Business Suite, each product was allocated two tablespaces, one for data and one for indexes. Customers with previous releases of the E-Business Suite (11i/10.7) may adopt OATM using the Oracle Applications Tablespace Migration Utility, which is available in 11.5.10 as well as in standalone mode. The Migration Utility is a menu-based PERL program and a series of sizing estimate reports that enables conversion of E-Business Suite applications schemas either in a single comprehensive migration or a phased, schema-by-schema migration. In general Oracle recommends performing a single comprehensive migration, however this requires a sufficient amount of down time and disk space. Oracle does not support partial migration of tablespaces. You must still migrate all schemas when performing a phased schema-by-schema migration.

With OATM, each database object is mapped to a tablespace based on its Input/Output characteristic, which include object size, life span, access methods and locking granularity. This model allows for easier maintenance, and reduced space usage for the E-Business Suite.

Advantages of Migrating to OATM

Migrating database objects to OATM provides the following benefits:

- Fewer and more consolidated tablespaces
- Locally Managed Tablespaces
- Accounts for the I/O characteristics of an object
- Reclaims space after migration
- Real Application Cluster (RAC) Support

Fewer and More Consolidated Tablespaces

OATM contains twelve locally managed tablespaces for all products, including temporary tablespace, system tablespace, and undo segments. The previous tablespace model contained two tablespaces for each Oracle product resulting in hundreds of tablespaces.

Locally Managed Tablespaces

This model provides support for either Uniform or Auto-allocate extent management, available with Locally Managed Tablespaces. Locally Managed Tablespaces have benefits over Dictionary Tablespaces in the previous model and allow for the sizes of extents to be determined automatically by the system (Auto-allocate). Alternatively, all extents can have the same size (Uniform) in and override object storage options.

OATM implements Automatic segment-space management, a simpler and more efficient way of managing space within a segment. It completely eliminates any need to specify and tune the PCTUSED, FREELISTS, and FREELISTS GROUPS storage parameters for schema objects created in the tablespace. Automatic segment-space management delivers better space utilization than manual segment-space management, and is self tuning because it scales by increasing the number of users, as well as instances. For a Real Application Clusters environment, automatic segment-space management enables dynamic affinity of space to instances, which avoids the hard partitioning of space inherent with using free list groups.

I/O Characteristics of an Object

OATM takes into account the following object I/O characteristics of an object:

- size
- life span
- access methods
- locking granularity

Automatic Segment-space Management

Automatic segment-space management is a simpler and more efficient way of managing space within a segment. It completely eliminates any need to specify and tune the PCTUSED, FREELISTS, and FREELISTS GROUPS storage parameters for schema objects created in the tablespace. Automatic segment-space management delivers better space utilization than manual segment-space management, and is self tuning because it scales with the increasing number of users and instances. For a Real Application Cluster (RAC) environment, automatic segment-space management enables dynamic affinity of space to instances, which avoids the hard partitioning of space inherent with using free list groups.

Reclaims Space After Migration

The tablespace migration utility migrates objects from the existing dictionary-managed tablespaces to locally managed tablespaces with automatic segment management and either uniform or Auto-allocate extent management. As a result, space is better utilized and less wasted. Migration of table and index segments from one tablespace to another also reclaims unused space, especially for indexes that are fragmented when the index columns are inserted, updated or deleted frequently.

Real Application Cluster (RAC) Support

OATM facilitates Real Application Cluster (RAC) support because of its reduced number of tablespaces. RAC is an Oracle9i database feature that harnesses the processing power

of multiple interconnected computers where all active instances can concurrently execute transactions against a shared database disk system. The new tablespace model is critical when implementing RAC on Linux, where currently there is a limitation of 255 raw devices.

Additional Benefits

OATM provides the following additional benefits:

- Facilitates administration and configuration ease
- Increases block-packing to reduce the overall number of buffer gets.

OATM Tablespaces

The advantages of OATM's product tablespaces are best understood in terms of the tablespace model that preceded it. This model contained two tablespaces for each Oracle Applications product. One tablespace was allocated for tables and one for indexes. In this model, the standard naming convention for tablespaces contained the product's Oracle schema name with a suffix of either "D" for "Data" tablespaces or "X" for "Index" tablespaces. For example, the tablespaces APD and APX were the default tablespaces for Oracle Payables tables and indexes, respectively.

OATM

In contrast to the previous tablespace model, OATM contains nine default tablespaces for applications objects in addition to Undo, Temp and System database tablespaces. Indexes on transaction tables are held in a separate tablespace dedicated for transaction table indexes whereas all other indexes are held in the same tablespace as the parent/base table. All Oracle Applications product schemas now have a default tablespace set to point to the TRANSACTION_TABLES tablespace type for data objects and the TRANSACTION_INDEXES tablespace type for index objects.

Tablespace Types

Tablespace Type	Tablespace Name	Content
Transaction Tables	APPS_TS_TX_DATA	Tables that contain transactional data.
Transaction Indexes	APPS_TS_TX_IDX	Indexes on transaction tables.
Reference	APPS_TS_SEED	Reference and setup data and indexes.
Interface	APPS_TS_INTERFACE	Interface and temporary data and indexes.
Summary	APPS_TS_SUMMARY	Summary management objects, such as materialized views, fact tables, and other objects that record summary information.
Nologging	APPS_TS_NOLOGGING	Materialized views not used for summary management and temporary objects.
Advanced Queuing/ AQ	APPS_TS_AQ	Advanced Queuing and dependent tables and indexes.
Media	APPS_TS_MEDIA	Multimedia objects, such as text, video, sound, graphics, and spatial data.
Archive	APPS_TS_ARCHIVE	Tables that contain archived purge-related data.
Undo	UNDO	Automatic Undo Management (AUM) tablespace. UNDO segments are identical to ROLLBACK segments when AUM is enabled.
Temp	TEMP	Temporary tablespace for global temporary table, sorts, and hash joins.
System	SYSTEM	System tablespace used by the Oracle Database

Tablespace Classification

OATM relies on specific explicit and implicit classification rules that are determined based on storage considerations for the object type in question. The Oracle Tablespace Migration Utility migrates objects based on these rules. The following table contains rules for implicit classifications that are applied in OATM, based on object types. Objects that do not have an implicit classification rule or an explicit object classification are migrated to the default tablespaces of the schema in which they reside.

Explicit Classification Rules

Explicit object classifications are seeded by Oracle based on the I/O characteristics of the object.

Implicit Classification Rules

The following table contains implicit classification rules for the Oracle Applications Tablespace Migration Utility.

Implicit Classification Rules

Object Type	Tablespace_Type
AQ Tables	AQ
IOTs (Index Organized Tables)	Transaction_Tables
Materialized Views	Summary
Materialized View Logs	Summary
All other Indexes	Same Tablespace type as the table
Domain Indexes	Transaction_Indexes
Indexes on Transaction Tables	Transaction_Indexes

Customizations and Extensions

The Oracle Applications Tablespace Migration Utility is primarily designed to migrate tables, indexes, materialized views, materialized view logs and other database objects that are owned by standard Oracle Applications schemas from their existing tablespace model to OATM. Custom or third party schemas can also be migrated using the Oracle Tablespace Migration Utility, customer preferred methods, or a database management tool such as the Oracle Enterprise Manager (OEM). Custom objects in standard Oracle application product schemas are migrated by default.

The Oracle Tablespace Migration Utility enables the following customizations:

- Changing tablespace names
- Registering custom tablespace types
- Registering custom object-tablespace classifications
- Changing existing object classifications.

Migrating Custom or Third Party schemas

Login to the Forms-based version of Oracle Applications with the System Administrator Responsibility. Navigate to Security -> ORACLE -> Register and register the external schema(s) if they are not already registered. Set Privilege to "Enabled".

Preventing Migration of Specific Schemas

In some cases, you may not want to migrate some of your schemas such as non-Oracle schemas that are registered with Oracle Applications. To accomplish this, you must disable those schemas by accessing System Administrator responsibility -> Security -> ORACLE -> Register and then selecting either "External" or "Disabled" for the schema in question. Conversely, if you want to flag specific schemas for migration, you can enable them by accessing System Administrator responsibility -> Security -> ORACLE -> Register and then selecting "Enabled".

Oracle Applications Tablespace Migration Utility

Oracle Applications Tablespace Migration Utility

Introduction

The Tablespace Migration Utility is a menu-based PERL program that enables you to estimate future space requirement for the tablespaces and to migrate the Applications database to OATM. Log files are available for user viewing and are created in the working directory from which you run the PERL program. The Log file name and location are displayed once you choose the required option.

The Tablespace Migration Utility enables you to perform either a single, comprehensive migration of all schemas or a phased, schema-by-schema migration. To minimize downtime, Oracle recommends that you perform the single comprehensive migration of all schemas, however this requires a sufficient amount of down time and available disk space. If you do not have sufficient down time or disk space to accomplish this, then you can run the phased schema-by-schema migration. Once you migrate an object from its existing tablespace to OATM, this process cannot be reversed. Oracle does not support the rollback of schemas migrated to OATM in a phased schema-by-schema migration. The only method for achieving this result is to recover the migrated schemas from a backup.

Note: Once you initiate migration of one or more schemas to OATM it is not possible to perform additional migrations from a different PERL menu. You must wait until one migration is completed before beginning another.

Planning for Migration

Sizing Requirements

Whenever possible, Oracle recommends the following:

- perform a single comprehensive migration of all schemas instead of performing a phased schema-by-schema migration.
- perform test runs to determine the amount of down time required to perform a comprehensive migration of all schemas
- secure twice as much disk space as your existing space to perform the a single comprehensive migration of all schemas, and to be operational using the new model.

Setting Up the Tablespace Migration Utility

Installing the Tablespace Migration Utility Patch 3381489

Perform the following steps to install the Tablespace Migration Utility patch, 3381489:

1. Ensure that your Oracle database version is RDBMS 9.2.0.4 or higher.
2. Ensure you have installed AD mini-pack H or higher.
3. Download and apply FND standalone patch 3381489 for the Tablespace Migration Utility. This patch performs the following:
 - Copies the PERL menu script, `fndtsmig.pl`, to the `FND_TOP/bin` directory
 - Copies the SQL scripts for the Tablespace Migration utility to `FND_TOP/patch/115/sql` directory.
 - Compiles the Java files into the packages `oracle.apps.fnd.tsmig`, in `FND_TOP/java/apps.zip` file.
 - Creates and seeds the following tables:
 - `FND_TABLESPACES`
 - `FND_OBJECT_TABLESPACES`
 - `FND_TS_SIZING`
 - `FND_TS_MIG_CMDS`
 - `FND_TS_MIG_RULES`
 - `FND_TS_PROD_INSTS`

Invoking the Tablespace Migration Utility Main Menu

Invoke the Tablespace Migration Utility main menu by performing the following:

1. Run the following PERL script:
`FND_TOP/bin/fndtsmig.pl.`
2. Provide the following information when prompted to access the Tablespace Migration Utility main menu:
 - `FND_TOP[/fnddev/fnd/11.5]`
 - Database Connect String [dummy]: `atgtsqa`
 - Password for your 'SYSTEM' ORACLE Schema
 - Password for your 'SYS' ORACLE Schema
 - Oracle Application Object Library Schema name [APPS]
 - Password for APPS
 - APPLSYS Schema Name [APPLSYS]

Understanding the Tablespace Migration Utility Main Menu

The Tablespace Migration Utility main menu lists six required sequential steps and one optional step to migrate your database objects to OATM. These steps are categorized in

three phases. In Phase 1, you perform the necessary preparation steps for migrating your objects to OATM. In Phase 2, you perform the necessary steps to migrate your objects to OATM and in Phase 3 you run the required post migration steps.

1. (Preparatory Step) Generate Migration Sizing Reports
2. (Preparatory Step) Create New Tablespaces
3. (Preparatory Step) Generate Migration Commands
4. (Migration Step) Execute Migration Commands
5. (Migration Step) Run Migration Status Reports
6. (Post Migration Step) Run Post Migration Steps
7. (Optional) Run Customization Steps

Steps 1, 2, 3 can be executed while Oracle Applications are still available to users. Step 4 must be executed when Oracle Applications are not available to users and steps 5 and 6 must be completed before making Oracle Applications available to users again. If you choose to perform optional Step 7 you should do so before the other steps.

Caution: Oracle highly recommends that you back up your database after performing Step 3, which is the final preparatory step. You should have a backup copy of your database before performing the subsequent migration steps.

Backing up the Database

Oracle highly recommends that you perform a backup of your database *twice* as follows;

1. **Copy of previous tablespace model.** Back up your database before performing any of the migration steps. Because Oracle does not support the rollback of migrated database objects, this is the only available method for restoring your previous tablespace model.
2. **Copy of database that has been prepared for migration.** Backup your database after performing Step 3: Generate Migration Commands. This enables you to migrate your database objects to OATM using your last good copy of a database that has been prepared for migration.

Phase 1: Preparatory Steps

Step 1: Generate Migration Sizing Reports

Select Step 1: Generate Migration Sizing Reports to access a list of reports that help you to gauge the space requirements for the new tablespace model and that assist you in determining which migration approach best suits your requirements. The reports perform sizing estimation by executing a program that calculates the size of each object using package DBMS_SPACE.UNUSED_SPACE and by populating table FND_TS_SIZING. The sizing reports use the data in this table to display the required information. The Plan Migration menu contains the following options:

1. Calculate total space required by each new tablespace to migrate all Oracle Application product schemas
2. Calculate total space required by each new tablespace to migrate each Oracle Application product schema (relevant for a schema-by-schema migration)

3. Calculate total space required by each Oracle Applications schema, with details for each object
4. Display Sizing Exception report

Option 1: Calculate Total Space Required by Each New Tablespace to Migrate all Oracle Application Product Schemas

Choose option 1 to calculate the total space required by each new tablespace when performing a single comprehensive migration of all Oracle Applications product schemas, and to generate the report fndtrep1.txt. Before running the report, the program prompts you to specify whether the information in the sizing table is current or must be updated. Enter the following to calculate space requirements for performing a single comprehensive migration of all schemas:

- Whether the sizing information is current or must be gathered before running the report.
- If you selected "Y" for the previous option, provide the extent management type for the tablespaces, since the space requirements are dependent on this.
- If Uniform Extent Management, provide the uniform extent size for the tablespaces or choose the default value provided on the screen.

Example

```
Sizing Program was last run on 02-SEP-03
Do you want to run the Sizing program again before running the rep
ort [N]:y
Enter the Extent Allocation type A(utoallocate) or U(niform Extent
Size) [U]: U
Enter Uniform Extent Size for the Tablespaces in KBytes[128]:
```

Option 2: Calculate Total Space Required by Each New Tablespace to Migrate Each Oracle Application Product Schema

Choose Option 2 to calculate total space required by each new tablespace when migrating individual Oracle Application product schemas one at a time, and to generate the report fndtrep2.txt. The program prompts you for the following information:

- Schema name, enter the percent sign (%) for all schemas,
- Whether the sizing information is current or must be gathered before running the report.
- If you selected Y for the previous option, provide the extent management type for the tablespaces, since the space requirements are dependent on this.
- If Uniform Extent Management, provide the uniform extent size for the tablespaces or choose the default value provided on the screen.

Example

```
Enter the Schema name: <HR>
```

```
Sizing Program was last run on 02-SEP-03
Do you want to run the Sizing program again before running the rep
ort [N]:
```

Option 3: Calculate Total Space Required by Each Oracle Applications Schema with Details for Each Object

Choose option 3 to calculate total space required by each Oracle Applications schema with details for each object and to generate the report fndtrep4.txt. The program prompts you for the following information:

- Schema name, enter the percent sign (%) for all schemas,
- Whether the sizing information is current or must be gathered before running the report.
- If you selected Y for the previous option, provide the extent management type for the tablespaces, since the space requirements are dependent on this.
- If Uniform Extent Management, provide the uniform extent size for the tablespaces or choose the default value provided on the screen.

Example

Enter the Schema name: <HR>

Sizing Program was last run on 02-SEP-03

Do you want to run the Sizing program again before running the report [N]:

Option 4: Display Sizing Exception Report

Choose option 4 to generate report fndtrep5.txt, listing all the objects for which sizing estimation generated an error. The program prompts you for the schema name. Enter the percent sign (%) for all schemas.

Example

Enter the Schema name: <%>

Step 2: Create New Tablespaces

Select Step 2: Create New Tablespaces to create the OATM tablespaces to which you will migrate your database objects. The Create New Tablespaces menu contains the following options:

1. Generate the Tablespace Creation Script
2. Create New Tablespaces

Option 1: Generate the Tablespace Creation Script

Option 1 prompts you for the extent allocation type, such as Autoallocate, Uniform Extent, and Uniform Extent Size, which will be used for creating the new tablespaces. The utility prompts for the name of the directory in which the datafile will get created. For every tablespace created as part of OATM, the utility prompts you for information, such as number and size of the datafiles. The utility will append a sequence number to the tablespace name and a .dbf extension to generate the datafile name. For example, if you enter the datafile directory as "/u01/oradata" and for transaction data tablespace, APPS_TS_TX_DATA, you enter the number of datafiles as 2 and size as 2000M, the utility will create tablespace creation script with 2 datafiles for the tablespace named "/u01/oradata/APPS_TS_TX_DATA01.dbf" and "/u01/oradata/APPS_TS_TX_DATA02.dbf", each of size 2000M. To create datafiles of different sizes or in different locations, you must modify the generated script, crtts.sql.

If you do not have limited disk space, create all tablespaces with the estimated sizes listed in report #1. This will eliminate the need to extend the tablespaces as the migration proceeds. If you do not have enough disk space to create all the tablespaces with the total size, use the estimated values in report #2 <Schema Name> for reference. If your operating system has a limit on the size of a dbf file, ensure you enter a value less than this when prompted.

Example

```
Enter the Extent Allocation type A(utoallocate) or U(niform Extent Size)[U]:
*****
The utility will append a sequence number to the tablespace name
and a .dbf extension to generate the datafile names.
Datafile size should not be greater than OS file size limit.
Please edit the generated script to change the file name/size
*****

Enter the absolute path for the datafiles directory: /u01/oradata
Enter the Number of Datafiles for Transaction data tablespace[1]:
2
Enter the Datafile Size for Transaction data tablespace (MB): 2000
Enter the Number of Datafiles for Transaction index tablespace[1]:
2
Enter the Datafile Size for Transaction index tablespace (MB): 2000
0
Enter the Number of Datafiles for Reference tablespace[1]: 1
Enter the Datafile Size for Reference tablespace (MB): 2000
Enter the Number of Datafiles for Interface tablespace[1]: 1
Enter the Datafile Size for Interface tablespace (MB): 1700
Enter the Number of Datafiles for Summary tablespace[1]: 2
Enter the Datafile Size for Summary tablespace (MB): 2000
Enter the Number of Datafiles for Nologging tablespace[1]:
Enter the Datafile Size for Nologging tablespace (MB): 60
Enter the Number of Datafiles for Archive tablespace[1]:
Enter the Datafile Size for Archive tablespace (MB): 1400
Enter the Number of Datafiles for Queue tablespace[1]:
Enter the Datafile Size for Queue tablespace (MB): 150
Enter the Number of Datafiles for Media tablespace[1]:
Enter the Datafile Size for Media tablespace (MB): 2000
```

Option 2: Create New Tablespaces

Select option 2 to create new tablespaces by executing the script crtts.sql that was generated in the previous step. This script does not check the operating system limitation for the maximum size of a file.

Step 3: Generate Migration Commands

Select Step 3: Generate Migration Commands to generate migration commands for your schemas. The Generate Migration Commands menu contains the following options:

Caution: You should *not* generate migration commands if you have already executed migration commands and your migration is already in progress. Oracle does not recommend manually updating table FND_TS_MIG_CMDS, especially while you are generating or executing migration commands.

1. Invalid Indexes Report.
2. Generate Migration Commands for all Schemas
3. Generate Migration Commands for a List of Schemas

Option 1: Invalid Indexes Report. Please correct/drop these before generating migration commands

Select Option 1 to generate a report listing all the indexes which are invalid in the Oracle Applications schemas that is stored in report `fn dinvld.txt`. You must correct or drop all invalid indexes before generating migration commands for all schemas or for a given schema. This is especially relevant for context indexes. Invalid indexes (especially context indexes) on an object may cause errors during migration of the base table and invalid context indexes will not be moved.

Option 2: Generate Migration Commands for all Schemas

Select Option 2 to generate the commands for migrating the objects in all the schemas to the correct tablespace. The migration commands are stored in the table `FND_TS_MIG_CMDS`. You can check the generated log file `fn dgmcmd <timestamp>.log` for errors during the generation process. A threshold object size is calculated based on the sizing data in `FND_TS_SIZING` to determine whether an object will be moved sequentially or in parallel. Migration commands for all objects with total blocks greater than or equal to threshold blocks are generated with the `PARALLEL` clause and execution mode as sequential. Migration commands for objects with total blocks less than threshold are generated with `NOPARALLEL` clause and execution mode as parallel. Partitioned objects are always executed sequentially regardless of their size.

Option 3: Generate Migration Commands for a List of Schemas

Select Option 3 to generate the commands for migrating the objects in a given list of comma separated schema names into the correct tablespace. The migration commands are stored in the table `FND_TS_MIG_CMDS`. You can check the generated log file `fn dgmcmd <timestamp>.log` for errors during the generation process. A threshold object size is calculated based on the sizing data in `FND_TS_SIZING` to determine whether an object will be moved sequentially or in parallel. Migration commands for all objects with total blocks greater than or equal to threshold blocks are generated with the `PARALLEL` clause and are executed sequentially. Migration commands for objects with total blocks less than threshold are generated with `NOPARALLEL` clause and are executed in parallel using multiple processes. Partitioned objects are always executed sequentially regardless of their size.

Example

Enter a comma separated list of schema names: `HR,AP`

Caution: Oracle highly recommends that you back up your database after performing Step 3, which is the final preparatory step. You should have a backup copy of your database before performing the subsequent migration steps.

Phase 2: Migration Steps

Step 4: Execute Migration Commands

Select Step 4: Execute Migration Commands to execute migration commands for your schemas. The Execute Migration Commands menu contains the following options:

1. Execute Migration Commands for all Schemas
2. Execute Migration Commands for a List of Schemas

Caution: You should *not*. generate migration commands if your migration is in progress. Oracle does not recommend manually updating table FND_TS_MIG_CMDS, especially while you are generating or executing migration commands.

Option 1: Execute Migration Commands for all Schemas

Select Option 1 to migrate the objects in all the schemas to the correct tablespaces. You are prompted for the number of parallel processes as input. This option executes the generated commands from FND_TS_MIG_CMDS table which generates the following events in sequence:

1. All constraints, triggers, policies are disabled first and then the queues are stopped.
2. Java program oracle.apps.fnd.tsmig.TSMigration is executed to migrate all the tables with LONG and LONG RAW columns along with their indexes. A log file for the migration of tables with LONG is generated as fndmlong<timestamp>.log.
3. A sequential process is started that executes the script fndemseq.sql to move all the objects generated with execution mode as sequential. A log file for the sequential process is generated as fndemseq<timestamp>.log.
4. Multiple processes are started to execute the SQL script fndemcmd.sql to migrate the objects generated with execution mode as parallel. A log file is generated as fndemcmd<timestamp>.log.

Example

Enter the maximum number of parallel processes [4]: <10>

Option 2: Execute Migration Commands for a List of Schemas

Select Option 2 to migrate the objects in a given list of schemas to the correct tablespaces. You are prompted for a list of comma separated schema names and then for the number of parallel process as input. This option executes the generated commands from FND_TS_MIG_CMDS table which generates the following events in sequence:

1. All constraints, triggers, policies are disabled first and then the queues are stopped.
2. Java program oracle.apps.fnd.tsmig.TSMigration is executed to migrate all the tables with LONG and LONG RAW columns along with their indexes. A log file for the migration of tables with LONG is generated as fndmlong<timestamp>.log.
3. A sequential process is started that executes the script fndemseq.sql to move all the objects generated with execution mode as sequential. A log file for the sequential process is generated as fndemseq<timestamp>.log.
4. Multiple processes are started to execute the SQL script fndemcmd.sql to migrate the objects generated with execution mode as parallel. A log file is generated as fndemcmd<timestamp>.log.

Example

Enter a comma separated list of schema names: HR,AP

Enter the maximum number of parallel processes [4]: <10>

Note: If your migration process terminates before it is completed, please check enqueue/dequeue status of queue - SYSTEM.TBLMIG_MESSAGEQUEUE by querying the following:

```
select NAME, ENQUEUE_ENABLED, DEQUEUE_ENABLED
       from dba_queues
       where owner = 'SYSTEM'
       and name = 'TBLMIG_MESSAGEQUEUE';
```

Step 5: Run Migration Status Report

Select Step 5: Run Migration Status Report to run progress and error reports on the migration process. The Run Migration Status Report menu contains the following options:

1. Run Migration Status Report
2. Run Migration Error Report

Option 1: Run Migration Status Report

Select Option 1 to generate a report containing the number of successfully migrated objects, objects in error (if any) and the percentage of completion, per schema, or for all the schemas and a breakdown of the objects per object type. This option prompts you to enter the schema name and generates report fndtrep8.txt.

Example

Enter the Schema name[%]: <HR>

Option 2: Run Migration Error Report

Select Option 2 to generate a report that provides a list of objects that generated an error during the migration process that includes the error details. This option prompts you to enter the schema name and generates report fndtrep10.txt.

Example

Enter the Schema name[%]: <HR>

Phase 3: Post Migration Steps

Step 6: Run Post Migration Steps

Select Step 6: Run Post Migration Steps to determine which objects have not yet been migrated to OATM, to enable constraints, triggers, policies, and start queues, and to re-size old tablespaces. The Run Post Migration Steps menu contains the following options:

1. Run Audit Reports
2. Enable the Constraints, Triggers and Policies, and Start Advanced Queues
3. Re-size Old Tablespaces

Note: After running post migration steps, you must perform a complete refresh of all materialized views. This is a required manual step that is not included in the Tablespace Migration Utility menu.

Option 1: Run Audit Reports

Select Option 1 to generate a report that provides a list of objects that have not been migrated to the correct tablespace. This option prompts you to enter the schema name and generates the report, fndtrep6.txt.

Example

```
Enter the Schema name[%]: <HR>
```

Option 2: Enable the Constraints, Triggers and Policies, and Start Advanced Queues

Select Option 2 to enable all the constraints, triggers, policies and start queues, and to generate the log file, fndenabl<timestamp>.log is generated. This option prompts you to enter the schema name.

Example

```
Enter the Schema name[%]: <HR>
```

Option 3: Re-size Old Tablespaces

Select Option 3 to reduce the size of the old tablespaces. This option queries the data dictionary for all data files of the previous tablespaces to determine the level at which they can be re-sized, and generates the resize commands in a script resizdb.sql. This script is then executed to resize the data files.

Step 7: Run Customization Steps

Optionally select Step 7: Run Customization Steps to customize tablespaces, tablespace types, and object classifications as required. If you choose run customization steps you should do so before performing any of the other steps for migrating your database objects to OATM. The Run Customization Steps menu contains the following options:

1. Register new tablespace - tablespace type
2. Change name of the existing tablespace
3. Register object classification
4. Change object classification

Option 1: Register new tablespace - tablespace type

Select Option 1 to used to register any custom Tablespace types that are not available by default with OATM. If the tablespace type or tablespace name is already registered, message will be displayed stating that it already exists

Example

```
Enter the tablespace type: CUSTOM_TABLESPACE_TYPE
```

```
Enter the tablespace name: CUSTOM_TABLESPACE
```

```
Tablespace CUSTOM_TABLESPACE registered.
```

```
Do you want to continue registering tablespaces ?[Y]:
```

Selecting the default, "Y" prompts you to enter next tablespace type/name pair. Selecting "N" returns you to the previous menu.

Option 2: Change name of the existing tablespace

Select Option 2: Change name of the existing tablespace to update the tablespace name of any default OATM tablespaces or registered custom tablespaces. If the new tablespace name is already registered, a message will be displayed stating that tablespace already exists, and that you must enter a new name.

Example

Enter the existing tablespace name: CUSTOM_TABLESPACE

Enter the new tablespace name: CUSTOM_TBLSP

Tablespace name CUSTOM_TABLESPACE changed to CUSTOM_TBLSP.

Do you want to continue changing tablespace names?[Y]:

Selecting the default, "Y" prompts you to enter next existing/new tablespace pair. Selecting "N" returns you to the previous menu.

Option 3:

Select Option 3: Register object classification to register new object-tablespace classifications. This is relevant only for objects such as tables that require explicit classification. These can include custom tables residing in Oracle Application product schemas or those residing in custom schemas. If object classification for the object is already registered, a message will be displayed stating that classification already exists, and will prompt you to enter a new object name. Existing classification can be modified by selecting option 4 from the Run Customization Steps menu.

Example

Enter the application short name: FND

Enter the object name: FND_TABLES

Enter the tablespace type: CUSTOM_TABLESPACE_TYPE

Tablespace type CUSTOM_TABLESPACE_TYPE for object FND_TABLES registered.

Do you want to continue registering tablespace types for other objects?[Y]:

Selecting the default, "Y" prompts you to register the next object classification and selecting "N" returns you to the previous menu.

Option 4: Change object classification

Select Option 4: Change object classification to change any existing object-tablespace classifications. If object classification for the object is not already registered, a message will be displayed stating that classification does not exist, and you will be prompted to enter a new object name. New object classification can be entered by selecting Option 3 from the Run Customization Steps menu.

Example

Enter the application short name: FND

Enter the object name: FND_LOBS

Enter the tablespace type: MEDIA

Tablespace type for object FND_LOBS changed to MEDIA.

Do you want to continue changing tablespace types for other objects?[Y]:

Selecting the default, "Y" prompts you to enter the next object classification modification and selecting "N" returns you to the previous menu.

System Administration Setup Tasks

Setting Up Oracle Applications System Administrator

This section contains an overview of each task you need to complete before you can use Oracle Applications products.

Setup Checklist

After you log on to Oracle System Administrator, complete the following steps to set up your Oracle Applications:

- *Create an Oracle Applications User to Complete Setting Up (Required)*, page 5-1
- *Create New Responsibilities (Optional)*, page 5-2
- *Implement Function Security (Optional)*, page 5-2
- *Create Additional Users (Required)*, page 5-2
- *Set Up Your Printers (Required)*, page 5-3
- *Specify Your Site-level and Application-level Profile Options (Required with Defaults)*, page 5-3
- *Define Your Concurrent Managers (Optional)*, page 5-3
- *Define Report Sets (Optional)*, page 5-4
- *Set Up AuditTrail (Optional)*, page 5-4
- *Modify Language Prompts (Optional)*, page 5-4
- *Modify Territory LOV Values (Optional)*, page 5-4
- *Specify Preferences for Oracle Workflow Notifications (Required)*, page 5-4

Setup Steps

Create an Oracle Applications User to Complete Setting Up

You must create an Oracle Applications user to complete the setup of your applications. You can create one user to set up all of your applications, or you can define one for each product or group of products.

To log on to Oracle Applications, double-click on the Oracle Applications icon.

The sign-on window appears. Enter user name SYSADMIN and password SYSADMIN to access the system administrator responsibility and choose Connect.

Important: In some cases, a consultant installing your application may have changed the command, username and/or password to something appropriate to your organization. If so, please refer to your consultant for the correct logon instructions.

To define your user, navigate to the Users window by choosing Security > User > Define from the navigation list. Enter a username (for example, INSTALL) in the User Name field and choose your own password. Oracle Applications asks you to change the password the first time you sign on as this new user. You should enter a description to remind yourself that this user is for the setting up of Oracle Applications.

Set the end date to the current date for each of the users you create in this step. This ensures that no one can access your applications with these usernames later.

Assign responsibilities to your new user. You should assign to your new user the full-function responsibility for each of the applications you install.

Create New Responsibilities (Optional)

A responsibility in Oracle Applications is a level of authority that determines how much of an application's functionality a user can use, what requests and concurrent programs the user can run, and which applications' data those requests and concurrent programs can access. Oracle Applications provides a set of predefined responsibilities that you can use. You can also define your own responsibilities if the ones provided do not meet your needs.

You associate each responsibility with a data group, request group, and a menu. The data group defines the pairing of application and ORACLE username. The ORACLE username determines the database tables and table privileges accessible by your responsibility. The request group permits the user with this responsibility to run requests, request sets, or concurrent programs from the Submit Requests form. Select a predefined menu. A menu provides access to application functions through a hierarchical arrangement of functions and menus of functions

Use the Responsibilities window to define a new responsibility. You can then assign your new responsibility to a user using the Users window.

Implement Function Security (Optional)

Function security is the mechanism by which user access to applications functionality is controlled.

Use the Responsibilities form to limit a responsibility's functionality by excluding menus and functions.

Or

Use the Menus form to create new menus that point to functions you want to make available to a responsibility.

Create Additional Users

You should use the procedure outlined in Step 1 to create additional application users. When you define a new user, you assign one or more responsibilities and a password that the user changes after the initial logon. You can use the LOV in the

Responsibility field to get a list of the standard responsibilities for each application you specify. You can assign multiple responsibilities to a user.

Set Up Your Printers

Read the Setting Up Your Printers, page 10-7 page to learn how to set up your printers. You must define any printer types used at your site that are not shipped with Oracle Applications, then register each printer with its name as determined by your operating system.

For every custom printer type or specialized print style you define, use the Printer Drivers form to assign a printer driver to use with each print style used by a printer type.

If you need more information on how to find your printer operating system names, refer to the Printing section of *Installing Oracle Applications*.

Specify Your Site-level and Application-level Profile Options

Navigate to the System Profile Values form (Profile > System). In the Find window check Site and Application as your Display levels. Enter System Administration for the Application field and enter Site Name in the Profile field. Oracle Applications displays 'Not Specified' as the site name. Change **Not Specified** to your site name.

To specify the remaining options, return to the Find window, clear the Profile field and choose Find.

You should also examine the values set by Rapid Install for the other profile options and determine which ones you want to change. The site-level profile options serve as the defaults for your system until you override them at other levels.

Important profile options include:

- Application Web Agent
- Gateway User ID
- TWO_TASK
- Site Name
- Help System Base URL
- Help System Root
- Self Service Personal Home Page mode
- TCF:Host
- TCF:Port
- FND: Native Client Encoding

Important: This list is not a complete list of System Administration profile options. Use the Find window to find all System Administration profile options.

Define Your Concurrent Managers (Optional)

Concurrent Processing is a feature of Oracle Applications that lets you perform multiple tasks simultaneously. Oracle Applications Concurrent Processing lets you run long, data-dependent functions at the same time as your users perform online

operations. Concurrent managers are components of concurrent processing that monitor and run your time-consuming tasks without tying up your computers.

Oracle Applications automatically installs one standard concurrent manager that can run every request. You may want to take advantage of the flexibility of concurrent managers to control throughput on your system.

You can define as many concurrent managers as you need. Keep in mind, however, that each concurrent manager consumes additional memory.

You can specialize each of your concurrent managers so that they run all requests, requests submitted by a particular user, requests submitted by a particular application, or other constraints, or any combination of these constraints.

If you are using Parallel Concurrent Processing in a cluster, massively parallel, or homogeneous networked environment, you should register your Nodes and then assign your concurrent managers to primary and secondary nodes. You can spread your concurrent managers, and therefore your concurrent processing, across all available nodes to fully utilize hardware resources.

Use the Define Concurrent Manager form to define new concurrent managers.

Define Request Sets (Optional)

A request set is a group of reports or programs which you submit with one request. To define and maintain request sets, use the Request Sets form.

Your users can also define their own report sets.

Set Up AuditTrail (Optional)

If you want to keep track of the changes made to your data by application users, you should set up AuditTrail for the relevant tables.

Defining AuditTrail for your site involves defining Audit Groups, which are groups of tables and columns for which you intend to track changes. You then define Audit Installations to instruct AuditTrail which ORACLE IDs you want to audit. Finally, you run the Audit Trail Update Tables Report, which allows your AuditTrail definitions to take effect.

Modify Language Prompts (Optional)

If you want to modify the field name displayed in the Translations window, you should change the Description value for the language you want to modify in the Languages window.

Modify Territory LOV Values (Optional)

If you want to modify the territory value displayed in LOVs, you should change the Description value for the territory you want to modify in the Territories window.

Specify Preferences for Oracle Workflow Notifications (Required)

The SYSADMIN user is the default recipient for some types of notifications in Oracle Applications, such as error notifications. You need to specify how you want to receive these notifications by defining the notification preference and e-mail address for the SYSADMIN user.

By default, the SYSADMIN user has a notification preference to receive e-mail notifications. To enable Oracle Workflow to send e-mail to this user, navigate to the Users window and assign SYSADMIN an e-mail address that is fully qualified with a valid domain. However, if you want to access notifications only through the Oracle Workflow Worklist Web page, then you should change the notification preference for SYSADMIN to "Do not send me mail" in the Preferences page. In this case you do not need to define an e-mail address.

Introduction to Oracle Applications Manager

Introduction to Oracle Applications Manager

Oracle Applications Manager (OAM) allows administrators to manage Oracle E-Business Suite systems from an HTML console. Some of the major features in Oracle Application Manager are: Oracle Workflow Manager, Patch Wizard, and Service Fulfillment Manager.

With Oracle Applications Manager, system administrators can view information on general system activity including the statuses of the database, concurrent managers and other services, concurrent requests, and Oracle Workflow processes. OAM provides a summary of configuration changes, infrastructure usage, performance, required maintenance activities, potential security issues, status of business flows, and diagnostic test results. In addition, they can manage downtime and patching. System administrators can also start or stop services, and submit concurrent requests.

Using Oracle Workflow Manager, administrators can control Workflow system services, such background engines, the Notification Mailer, agent listeners, queue propagation, and purging obsolete Workflow data.

Refer to the following documentation for additional information:

- *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*
- *Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide*
- *Maintaining Oracle Applications Documentation Set*

Function Security and Oracle Applications Manager

Oracle Applications Manager uses with Oracle Application Object Library's function security model. You can create custom responsibilities and menus to control access to specific OAM features. These features are thus directly available from the E-Business Suite Home Page.

Oracle Applications Manager Setup

Oracle Applications Manager (OAM) allows you to customize how certain components are monitored and how metrics are collected.

Navigation: Setup (global icon)

OAM Dashboard Setup

Dashboard Setup displays a summary of data collection for metrics and services. For each metric, you can see whether collection is enabled and whether you have alerting enabled for the metric. If alerting is enabled, you see the condition which must be met for an alert to be raised. To update the setup for the data collection, use the Dashboard Setup Wizard.

MetaLink Credentials

You can maintain your Oracle*MetaLink* username, password, and e-mail address on this page. These credentials will be used when querying Oracle*MetaLink* through Knowledge Base links. Also, you should ensure that the following profile options are set appropriately for your proxy server:

- Applications Proxy Bypass Domains
- Applications Proxy Port
- Applications Server-Side Proxy Host and Domain

Business Flows Setup

Maintain Business Flow Monitoring through this page.

Dashboard Setup

This page shows a summary of data collection for metrics and services. For each metric, you can see whether collection is enabled and whether you have alerting enabled for the metric. If alerting is enabled, you see the condition which must be met for an alert to be raised.

Metrics for the following can be monitored for the following using the Dashboard Setup Wizard:

- Activity
- Forms sessions
- Database sessions
- Running concurrent requests
- Service processes
- Services up
- Services down
- Invalid database objects
- Unsent Oracle Workflow e-mail
- Configuration Changes (in the last 24 hours)
- Patches applied
- Site level profile options
- Applications context files edited

The following types of System Alerts are available:

- New alerts
- New occurrences of an alert
- Open alerts
- Open occurrences

System Throughput for the last 24 hours are available for the following components:

- Completed concurrent requests
- Sent Oracle Workflow e-mail

Alerts can be raised for the following services. When a service attains a specified status, an alert is raised.

- Service instances listed under Applications System Status
- Web components

Note that for web components, the status is collected by manually refreshing the data on the OAM Dashboard. These web components include:

- PL/SQL agent
- Servlet agent
- JSP agent
- Discoverer
- Personal Home Page
- TCF

Overview

Use the Dashboard Setup Wizard to update information for the OAM Applications Dashboard Collection program.

Navigation: Setup global link > Update (B)

Oracle Applications Manager collects metrics for many services, web components, and other features of an Oracle Applications instance. Oracle Applications Manager uses the program OAM Applications Dashboard Collection (short name: FNDOAMCOL) to gather the information displayed on the Dashboard.

The Dashboard Collection Program can selectively enable and disable monitoring of various metrics, and to raise alerts for services when the service has a specified status. The Dashboard Collection Program can collect data for a metric and then raise an alert when a metric reaches a specified threshold. Note that for most components, you can collect data for monitoring purposes in two different ways: (1) through the Dashboard Collection Program, or (2) manually refreshing the data from a Dashboard page.

Metrics that can be configured using the Dashboard Setup Wizard are listed below.

Activity:

- Forms Sessions
- Database Sessions
- Running concurrent requests

- Service processes
- Services up
- Services down
- Invalid database objects
- Unsent Oracle Workflow e-mail

Configuration Changes (in the last 24 hours):

- Patches applied
- Site-level profile options
- Applications context files edited

System Alerts:

- New alerts
- New occurrences of an alert
- Open alerts
- Open occurrences

System Throughput for the last 24 hours are available for the following components:

- Completed concurrent requests
- Sent Oracle Workflow e-mail

Dashboard Setup Wizard

Use the Dashboard Setup Wizard to update information for the OAM Applications Dashboard Collection program.

Navigation: Setup global link > Update (B)

From the first page you can specify the OAM Dashboard Collection Interval. The default is to collect data every ten minutes.

You can also specify the time out period for how long to wait to see if the Web Component URLs are up. For example, if you specify 40 seconds for the "Web ping time out", the system will wait 40 seconds for a response from the web components. The default timeout value is 60 seconds.

Update Dashboard Setup: Metrics

From this page you can update the collection information for metrics. Specify if you want to collect data for a metric, and whether you want to be alerted if the metric exceeds or falls short of a specified value.

Update Dashboard Setup: Services

Use this page to specify which services you want to monitor. For a given service, you can specify if you want to collect data for it and whether you want to be alerted if the service is in a specified status.

Update Dashboard Setup: Review

This page shows a summary of your Dashboard Setup.

The Site Map

The Site Map lists the features and applications available in the Oracle Applications Manager. Features are grouped into the following categories: Administration, Monitoring, Maintenance, and Diagnostics and Repair.

Site Map - Administration

System Configuration

These features provide detailed information on the configuration of your system. You can update many of your configuration settings from these links also.

- Hosts - For each of your hosts, you can view its status and configuration. You can also bring it online or offline, or disable it.
- AutoConfig - View and update your AutoConfig settings here. For more information on this feature, see *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*.
- License Manager - With the License Manager you can license additional products, country-specific functionalities and languages. You can also generate reports on the licenses for your installation. For more information on this feature, see *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*.

Application Services

Use these links to see information on various types of application services.

- Generic Services
- Request Processing Managers
- Transaction Managers

Workflow

Use these links to navigate to the Oracle Workflow Manager.

- Home
- Work Item Metrics
- Agent Activity
- Background Engines
- Notification Mailer
- Service Components
- Purge

Concurrent Request

Use these links to submit a new concurrent request or to view details on existing requests.

- Submit New - this link launches the Oracle Applications Framework Schedule Request page in a separate window.
- Pending
- Running

- Completed (Last Hour)

Service Fulfillment Manager

Use this link to access the Service Fulfillment Manager. Service Fulfillment Manager (SFM) provides a complete set of tools to automate step-by-step fulfillment activities and integrate business flows for any type of service across multi-vendor application systems.

Others

- Applications Manager Log

Site Map - Monitoring

The Monitoring section links you to features to help you monitor your Oracle E-Business Suite.

Availability

Use these links to navigate to pages on the availability of these components.

- Hosts
- Database
- Web components
- Internal Concurrent Manager
- Request Processing Managers
- Transaction Managers
- Forms
- Workflow
- Business Flows

Performance

Use these links to see information regarding performance of these components.

- SQL Activity
- Jserv Usage
- Forms Sessions
- Forms Runtime Processes
- Concurrent Processing Reports
- Concurrent Processing Charts
- Workflow

Current Activity

Use these links to view activity information for their respective areas.

- System Alerts
- Database Sessions

- Invalid Objects
- Forms Runaway Processes
- Forms Sessions
- Forms Runtime Processes
- Application Services
- Activity Monitors
- Concurrent Requests
- Critical Activities
- Logs

Configuration Changes

From the Overview link you can navigate to the Configuration Overview page.

Usage

Use these reports to learn more about application usage and concurrent processing.

Custom Reporting Utilities

The SQL Extensions page enables you to run seeded and custom scripts.

Site Map - Maintenance

These features help you maintain your Oracle Applications installation.

Note that most of these features are described in detail in the *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures* and the *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities* guides.

Patches and Utilities

- Applied Patches
- File History
- Patch Wizard
- Timing Reports
- Manage Downtime Schedules

Cloning

- Clones Status
- Simple Clone
- Advanced Clone

Purging

- Setup
- Monitor

Site Map - Diagnostics and Repair

Use these features in diagnostics and troubleshooting.

Diagnostics

- Test Statistics - links to the Diagnostics tab of the OAM Dashboard.
- Launch Tests - launches Oracle Diagnostics in a separate window.

Troubleshooting Wizards

- Concurrent Manager Recovery
- Service Infrastructure
- GCS and Forms Monitoring
- CP Signature
- Dashboard Collection
- Statspack Report

Defining Concurrent Programs and Reports

Overview of Concurrent Programs and Requests

A concurrent program is an executable file that runs simultaneously with other concurrent programs and with online operations, fully utilizing your hardware capacity. Typically, a concurrent program is a long-running, data-intensive task, such as posting a journal or generating a report.

Request Groups and Request Sets

Reports and concurrent programs can be assembled into request groups and request sets.

- A *request group* is a collection of reports or concurrent programs. A System Administrator defines report groups in order to control user access to reports and concurrent programs. Only a System Administrator can create a request group.
- *Request sets* define run and print options, and possibly, parameter values, for a collection of reports or concurrent program. End users and System Administrators can define request sets. A System Administrator has request set privileges beyond those of an end user.

Standard Request Submission and Request Groups

Standard Request Submission is an Oracle Applications feature that allows you to select and run all your reports and other concurrent programs from a single, standard form. The standard submission form is called *Submit Request*, although it can be customized to display a different title.

- The reports and concurrent programs that may be selected from the Submit Requests form belong to a *request security group*, which is a request group assigned to a responsibility.
- The reports and concurrent programs that may be selected from a customized Submit Request form belong to a request group that uses a code.

In summary, request groups can be used to control access to reports and concurrent programs in two ways; according to a user's responsibility, or according to a customized standard submission (Submit Request) form. See: Customizing the Submit Request Window using Codes, page 7-18.

See also: Running Reports and Programs, *Oracle Applications User's Guide*

Limiting Active Requests by User

As System Administrator you can limit the number of requests that may be active (status of Running) for an individual user. This ensures that a user cannot monopolize the request queue. For example, if a user with an Active Request Limit of 5 submits 20 requests, only 5 requests will be run at the same time. The remaining requests will be run when the number of active requests for the user drops below 5. Use the Profile Options window to set the *Concurrent: Active Request Limit* profile. To set a global limit for all users, set this option at the site level. You can then modify limits for individual users by setting this profile option at the User level.

Related Topics

Organizing Programs into Request Sets, page 7-2

System Administrator Request Set Privileges, page 7-11

Organizing Programs into Request Groups, page 7-15

Defining Data Groups, page 7-23

Copying and Modifying Program Definitions, page 7-35

Organizing Programs into Request Sets

Request sets are a quick and convenient way to run several reports and concurrent programs with predefined print options and parameter values. Request sets group requests into stages that are submitted by the set. The order in which the stages are submitted is determined by the status of previous stages.

Request sets can also be used by a System Administrator to customize access to reports and concurrent programs. Using request sets, a System Administrator can:

- grant users of a responsibility the ability to run selected reports and concurrent programs that are outside their request security group.
- grant access to requests and other concurrent programs on a user-by-user basis.
- guarantee that reports in the set run with print options and parameter values that cannot be edited by end users.

Note: Multilingual requests cannot be run within request sets.

As System Administrator, you have privileges beyond those of your application users, including a privileged version of the Request Set window.

Defining Request Sets

You can run the same set of concurrent requests regularly by defining a request set, and then submitting the request set from the Submit Requests form.

As System Administrator, you can include *any* Standard Request Submission report or concurrent program in the request sets you define. When end users define a request set, they can only select from reports and programs that belong to their responsibility's request security group.

Use the Request Set form to create and edit request sets.

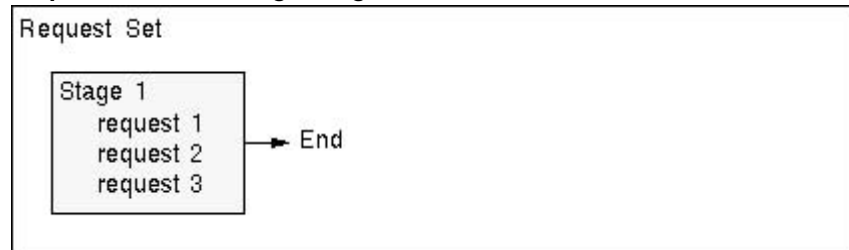
Request Set Stages

This section describes how request set stages are defined and organized.

Organizing Request Sets into Stages

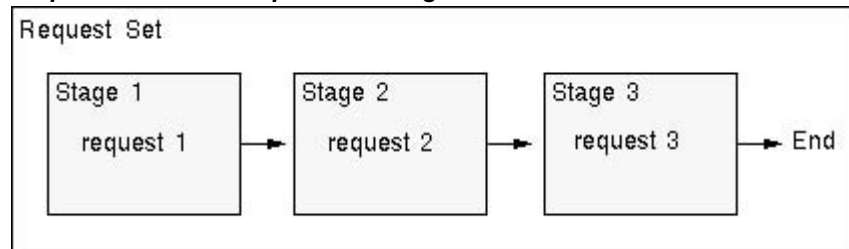
Request sets are divided into one or more "stages" which are linked to determine the sequence in which requests are run. Each stage consists of one or more requests that you want to run in parallel (at the same time in any order). For example, in the simplest request set structure, all requests are assigned to a single stage. This allows all of the requests to run in parallel.

Request Set with a Single Stage



To run requests in sequence, you assign requests to different stages, and then link the stages in the order you want the requests to run.

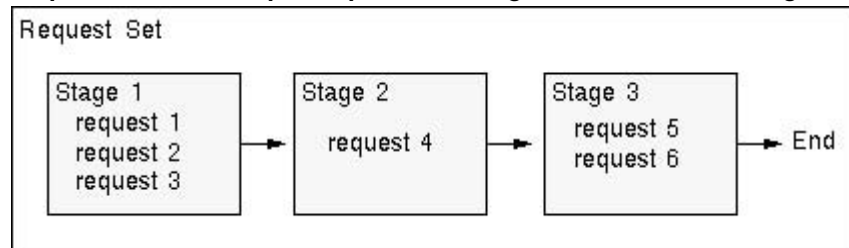
Request Set with a Sequence of Stages



The concurrent manager allows only one stage in a request set to run at a time. When one stage is complete, the following stage is submitted. A stage is not considered to be complete until all of the requests in the stage are complete.

One advantage of using stages is the ability to run several requests in parallel and then move sequentially to the next stage. This allows for a more versatile and efficient request set.

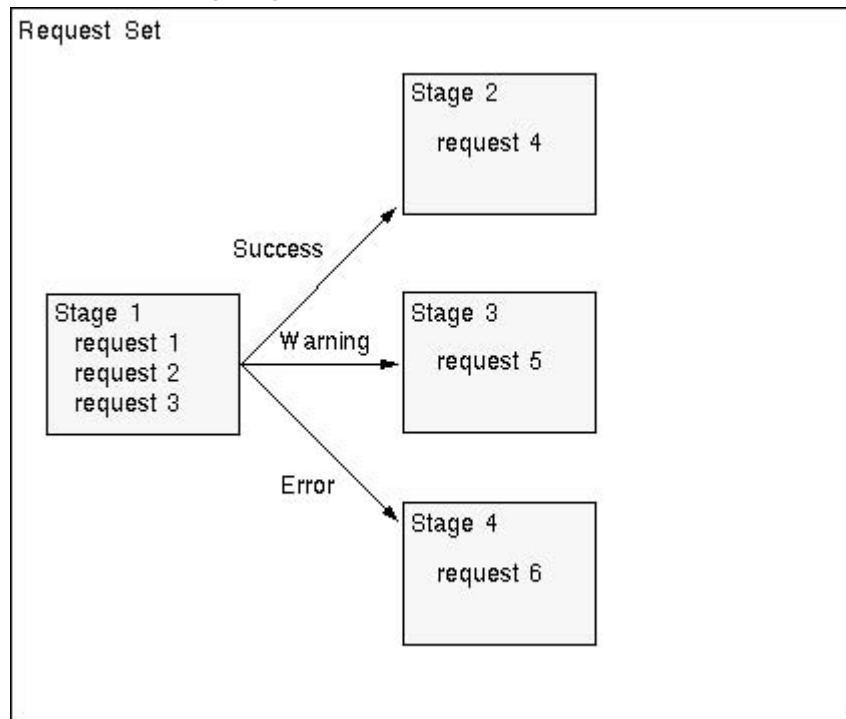
Request Set with Multiple Requests Running in Parallel within a Stage



Using Stage Status

Like request sets and concurrent requests, stages can complete with different statuses. Each stage can complete with a status of Success, Warning, or Error. You can use these completion statuses to structure your request set, by defining which stage will follow the current stage based on its completion status. For example: a request set always begins with Stage 1. If Stage 1 completes with the status Success, then the Success link is followed, and Stage 2 is submitted. After Stage 2 completes, the set ends. If Stage 1 completes with Warning, then the Warning link is followed, and Stage 3 is submitted. After Stage 3 completes, the set ends. If Stage 1 completes with Error, then the Error link is followed, and Stage 4 is submitted. After Stage 4 completes, the request set ends.

Request Set Using Stage Statuses

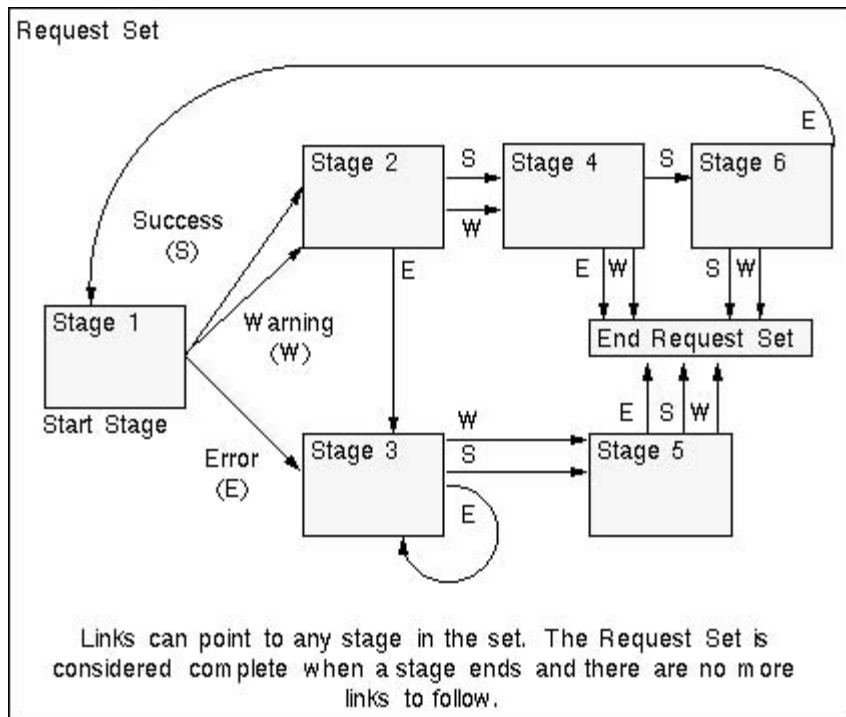


In this example, the stage status is determined using the Standard stage function. The Standard stage function uses the statuses of the requests within the stage to calculate the status for the stage. If all of the requests in a stage complete with a status of Success, then the status for the stage is Success. If one or more requests complete with a status of Error, then the status of the stage is Error. For a stage's status to be Warning, one or more of the requests must have a status of Warning, and no request may have a status of Error.

Linking of Stages

There are no restrictions on linking stages within a request set. Any stage may be linked to any other stage, including itself. Two or more links can point to the same stage. For example, Stage 1 can link to Stage 2 if the completion status of Stage 1 is Success or Warning, and link to Stage 3 if the status is Error.

Request Set with Multiple Links to Stages



You determine the end of a request set by not specifying a followup stage for each completion status. You can end a request set after any stage in the request set. When any stage completes with a status that does not link to another stage, the request set ends.

You can use the linking of stages to control your request set. In previous releases you had three options: run in parallel, run sequentially, and run sequentially but abort on Error. All of these are easy to recreate using the request set wizard. You can use the Request Set Wizard button in the Request Set window to start the wizard. The wizard takes your input and creates the request set as follows:

Run in Parallel	Creates one stage containing all of the requests you wish to run in parallel.
Run Sequentially	Creates a separate stage containing the request or requests for each step in the sequence and link in the appropriate order.
Run Sequentially but abort on Error	Sets up your sequence the same as it did for Run Sequentially, but when it links the stages, it does not enter a follow up stage as a link in the Error completion status field.

Stage Evaluation Function

The completion status of a stage is determined by a predefined function. The Oracle Applications Standard Stage Evaluation function uses the completion status of the requests it contains. Use this function to determine the status of a stage.

Request Set Completion Status

When a stage completes with a status for which there is no link defined, the request set ends. The completion status for the request set is determined by one of the following methods:

- Using the completion status of the last stage run in the request set. This method is used by default.
- The user can override the default behavior by defining a specific stage within the set to be "critical". If the request set runs a critical stage, then the completion status of the set will be the same as the completion status of the most recently run critical stage. This can be useful if the final stage of the set is a "clean up" stage and is not considered important to the overall status of the set.

Printing Request Sets

On a report-by-report basis, you can select a different printer for each report in a request set. When you define a request set, print options, such as the printer a report is sent to, are saved so you do not have to specify them again when you run the request set.

Important: If a printer is defined for a concurrent program using the Concurrent Programs form, then that value cannot be updated, either by a user profile option setting, a request set definition, or when running the program or request set.

Note: Defining a printer for a request set concurrent program (e.g., Request Set Payables Aging Reports) in the Concurrent Programs form has no effect; the printer definition is not referred to.

Request Sets as Concurrent Programs

When you define a request set or a stage within a request set that allows incompatibilities, a concurrent program is created to run the requests in your request set according to the instructions you enter.

All concurrent programs that run request sets are titled *Request Set <name of request set>*, and programs that run request set stages are titled *Request Set Stage <name of request set stage>*. In the Concurrent Programs form, to query request set or request set stage concurrent programs on the basis of a program's name, enter the following in the Name field:

- "Request Set" or "Request Set Stage" before the name of the concurrent program
- "Request Set %" or "Request Set Stage %" to perform a query on all request set programs

Request set and request set stage concurrent programs create log files documenting the execution of the request set or stage. Each report or concurrent program within a request set or stage also creates its own log file.

When you run a request set that allows incompatibilities, you submit a request to run the concurrent program that defines the request set. The request set concurrent program submits a request set stage concurrent program. The request set stage concurrent program submits the requests for the individual programs and reports within the stage. A request to run the request set concurrent program or the request set stage concurrent program is a *Parent* request, while the requests to run the programs and reports are *Child* requests.

You can review the status of a request set and the programs it contains using the Concurrent Requests form. The following table displays information pertaining to request sets in the Running phase.

Status	Description
Paused	Parent request pauses for all its Child requests to complete. For example, a request set stage pauses for all reports in the stage to complete.
Resuming	All requests submitted by the same Parent request have completed running. The Parent request resumes running.

Modifying Request Sets

A request set can only be modified by its owner or by a System Administrator. To make modifications, query the request set you want to modify in the Request Set window.

Note: If you wish to retain modifications to request sets provided by your Oracle application during upgrades, you must rename or recreate the request set using a different name before you upgrade. If you modify a predefined request set without changing the name, your modifications are overwritten when you upgrade your Oracle Applications.

Creating Request Sets

Follow this procedure to create a request set:

1. Navigate to the Request Set window.
2. Enter a Name for your request set.
3. Enter a Set Code for your request set. This name is used internally to reference your request set.
4. Enter the Application with which you want to associate your request set.
5. Enter a Description of your request set if you like.
6. The Owner field defaults to your username and can only be changed by your system administrator.
7. Enter the Active Dates From and To fields to define an effective period when you and others can run the request set. If the current date is outside the range you define, the request set will not be available in the Submit Requests window.
8. Check the Print Together check box to send all your requests to the printer together when they complete, or uncheck the check box to send each request one at a time to the printer as it completes.
9. Check the Allow Incompatibility check box to allow your system administrator to specify programs that this request is incompatible with (may not run with). Leave Allow Incompatibility unchecked to specify that this request set may run with all other concurrent requests or request sets.
10. Choose **Define Stages** or **Link Stages** if you have finished defining your stages.

Defining Stages

Follow this procedure to define stages:

1. The value for the Display Sequence is defaulted in sequence as you enter your stages. You may change the display order of the stages by modifying this field.
2. Enter a Name for the stage.
3. Enter a Description of your stage if you like.
4. Enter a Stage Code for the stage. This code is used internally to reference the stage.
5. In the Function field of the Function region, use the List of Values to select a function. The default value for this field is the Standard Stage Evaluation function. This function bases its completion status on the normal completion status of the requests it contains. Other functions may be provided by your Oracle product. For a description of these functions, refer to the user's guide for that product.
6. Use the "The Return Value of this Stage Affects the Set Outcome" check box if you want to ensure that the request set's completion status is equal to the completion status of this stage.

Note: If you choose this check box for more than one stage, the completion status of the request set will equal the completion status of the last of these stages to run within the set.

7. Use the Allow Incompatibility check box to allow your system administrator to specify programs that this stage is incompatible with (may not run with). Leave Allow Incompatibility unchecked to specify that this stage of the request set may run with all other concurrent requests or request sets.
8. Choose **Requests**.

Stage Requests Window

In the Stage Requests window you define which requests you want to include in the stage.

1. Select the report or program you want to include in your request set. A description of the request you choose and its associated application appears in the Description and Application fields.

The list of requests you can choose includes the requests that your responsibility's request group lets you access from the Submit Requests form.

2. Use the Allow Stage Function to Use This Program's Results check box to indicate which programs or reports should be included.
3. The Print Options region reflects the options for the current request. Specify the number of Copies of output to print, the Style to print, the Printer to print to, and whether to save the output to an operating system file.

Standard Request Submission saves these options so you do not have to specify them again when you run the request set. If you do not wish to specify these options for each request when you define the set, Standard Request Submission uses the values of your personal profile options as the default when you submit the request set. See: *Concurrent Processing User Profile Settings, Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*.

Note: Some requests may have a required Style or Printer that you cannot change.

4. When you are done with the Print Options, choose Parameters to display the Request Parameters window.

Request Parameters Window

The Request Parameters window lets you customize the parameter values of a specific request in a request set. The fields at the top of the Request Parameters window list general information about the current request set and the request for which you can customize the parameter values. The multi-row portion of the window lists the parameters for that request.

1. The Sequence field displays the order in which each request parameter appears when you run the request in the Submit Requests window (lower numbers appear before higher numbers). Only your system administrator can change a parameter's order.
2. The Prompt field is a display-only field that shows the request parameter's prompt.
3. Check the Display check box to specify that you can see a request parameter at submission time, or uncheck the check box to specify that a parameter should not be displayed at submission time.
4. Check the Modify check box to specify that you can insert or change the value for a request parameter at submission time, or uncheck the check box to specify that a parameter cannot be changed at submission time.
5. Use the Shared Parameter field to set a default value for a parameter that occurs in more than one report or program of a request set. Once you enter the same parameter label in the Shared Parameter field for each occurrence of the same parameter, the value that you assign to the first occurrence of the parameter becomes the default value for all subsequent occurrences of the parameter. The shared parameter label simply enables you to set an initial default value for all occurrences of the same parameter so you can avoid typing the same value all over again for every occurrence of the parameter.

For example, suppose you define a request set that includes three reports, and all reports include a parameter called "Set of Books". You want the "Set of Books" parameter to default to the same value in all reports. To accomplish this, enter a label called "Book" in the Shared Parameter field for the first occurrence of this parameter. You can also assign a value in the Default Value field of this parameter now, or wait until you run the request set to assign a default value when the parameter first appears. Enter the label "Book" in the Shared Parameter field of all other occurrences of the "Set of Books" parameter in your request set. When you submit this request set from the Submit Requests window, every parameter that you label "Book" defaults to the value you assign to the first occurrence of the "Set of Books" parameter.

Important: Note that if you later change the value of a parameter that contains a shared parameter label, you change only the value for that instance of the parameter, and not the value for all other occurrences of that labelled parameter.

We recommend that if you make a parameter with a shared parameter label modifiable, that you also display the parameter so you can always see what the parameter's current value is. This

helps reinforce the understanding that a later value change to one labelled parameter cannot propagate a value change to all other similarly labelled parameters.

6. Optionally enter a Default Type and Value for the parameter.
7. Save your work.
8. Go back to the Stage Requests window and repeat Steps 9 through 11 to add more requests to the request set stage.

You can select a request more than once if you want to run the same request with different default parameter values.
9. To start a new stage, return to the Stage window and choose New Record from the File Menu.

Linking Stages

Follow this procedure to link stages:

1. Enter the Start Stage. The stage you enter here is the first stage submitted for the request set.
2. Enter the stages you want to run following the first stage in the Success, Warning, and Error columns. To ensure that a particular stage follows the preceding stage regardless of the completion status, enter the desired stage in all three columns. To stop the request set if a stage ends in Error, leave the Error column blank. Any time you do not specifically indicate which stage should follow for a completion status, the request set will exit on that completion status.

In the example shown in the following table, the request set will always exit if any stage returns a completion status of error. In addition, stages C and D will terminate the request set regardless of their completion status. If Stage A returns a status other than Error, Stage B will be submitted. Finally, when Stage B completes with a status of Success, it is followed by Stage C, or if the status is Warning, Stage D will follow.

Example:

Display Sequence	Name	Success	Warning	Error
1	Stage-A	Stage-B	Stage-B	
2	Stage-B	Stage-C	Stage-D	
3	Stage-C			
4	Stage-D			

3. Choose **Done**.

Related Topics

Overview of Concurrent Programs and Requests, page 7-1

Request Sets and Owners

There are significant differences between end user and System Administrator privileges when defining or editing request sets.

End users own the request sets they create

An end user can create a request set by selecting reports, other request sets, or concurrent programs that are part of the report security group assigned to his or her responsibility.

When an end user creates a request set, the user automatically becomes the “owner” of the request set. Ownership is identified by the person’s application username.

End users use the Request Set form to create a new request set, or to query and update any request sets they own. End users can only edit request sets they own.

We sometimes refer to a request set that an end user owns as a *private* request set. Private request sets are not automatically added to a request security group. That is, other users cannot access your private request sets using the Submit Requests window unless the System Administrator assigns that request set to a request security group.

Request sets owned by an end user are always available to that user, regardless of what responsibility the user is operating under. However, a standard submission form customized to display only reports in a request group using a code does not display private request sets.

When a user signs on to Oracle Applications, the user can run requests, request sets, and concurrent programs included in:

- their responsibility’s request security group
- any request sets they own.

End User Benefits from Private Request Sets

Private request sets offer two main benefits to end users:

1. The request sets that users own are always available to them, regardless of which responsibility they are working under.
2. Users can create as many request sets as they want without adding request set choices to the list of standard submission concurrent programs that other users must select from.

System Administrator Request Set Privileges

As System Administrator, you can:

- create request sets that include *any* reports or concurrent program.
- query and edit *all* request sets using the Request Set form.
- permit and define incompatibility rules for individual request sets. See: Request Set Incompatibilities, page 7-12.

After you define a request set, you can assign a user to be its owner if you want the user to be able to run or edit this request set from any responsibility. Request sets without an owner cannot be edited or updated by any end users. In this way, you can guarantee print options and report parameters for a request set. You can also later edit the request set to remove or change its ownership properties.

Other users can also run a request set if you, as System Administrator, assign the request set to their responsibility's request security group. If you do not assign a request set to a request security group, then only the owner can run the request set. In this way, you can grant access to reports and concurrent programs on a user-by-user basis.

Request Security Groups, Request Sets, and Reports

As System Administrator you can add any request set, including private request sets, to a request security group. This allows you to provide members of a responsibility access to reports and programs outside their request security group.

Request set editing and report viewing privileges are different for reports that belong to a user's request security group than they are for reports that are not in the user's request security group.

- cannot edit the request set.
- cannot run an individual report by itself, but can only run the entire request set.
- can add any other requests in their request security group to the request set.
- can delete any request from the request set, regardless of whether that report is in their request security group.
- can update print options or parameters for an individual report in the request set, if the report is in their request security group.
- cannot run an individual report by itself, but can only run the entire request set.

System Administrator Benefits from Request Sets

Request sets offer three main benefits to System Administrators:

1. Request sets offer a means of controlling access to concurrent programs on a user-by-user basis.

By defining a request set, assigning it an owner, and then not assigning the request set to any request security group, the reports and programs in the request set are only available to the owner.

2. By leaving the Owner field blank, System Administrators can create request sets whose individual programs and parameters cannot be edited or updated by end users.

Only a System Administrator can edit a request set that has no owner.

3. System Administrators can provide members of a responsibility access to reports and programs outside their request security group.

By defining a request set that contains reports or programs not in a request security group, and assigning that request set to the request security group, users can be granted run, but not edit privileges for selected reports or programs.

Request Set Incompatibilities

A request set is actually a concurrent program that submits requests to run each program in the request set. You can allow incompatibility rules to govern your request set so that the request set does not run at the same time as other reports or concurrent programs. You can also apply these rules to the stages that make up the request set.

Use the Concurrent Programs form to query the request set concurrent program and list those programs, and/or stages you want to define as incompatible with your request set. See: Concurrent Programs, page 7-51.

All concurrent programs that run request sets are titled *Request Set <name of request set>*. In the Concurrent Programs form, if you query a request set concurrent program on the basis of the program's name, you must enter in the Name field the words:

"Request Set" before the name of a concurrent program

"Request Set %" to perform a query on all request set programs

When you list a program as incompatible with your request set, the program will not run simultaneously within the same conflict domain as the request set or any of the reports within the set. See: Defining Program Incompatibility Rules, page 7-19.

Related Topics

Overview of Concurrent Programs and Requests, page 7-1

Defining Program Incompatibility Rules, page 7-19

Concurrent Programs, page 7-51

Sharing Parameters in a Request Set

Parameters, also referred to as *arguments*, are values that define aspects of a program's execution. You can share a parameter and its entered value among some or all of the requests in your request set.

You identify a parameter as shared by giving it a label. Then, for each concurrent program in your request set, you can assign the same label to a parameter for that program. Among the programs in your request set, the parameters for each program share or accept a common value.

The *first time* you enter a value for any of the shared parameters, that value becomes the shared parameter's value. This is useful, because you only have to enter a value once, rather than for each program in the request set.

Behavior of Shared Parameters

Selecting a value for a shared parameter provides a default for subsequent occurrences of the parameter. Changing a shared parameter's value provides a new default for subsequent occurrences of the parameter, but does not affect prior requests in the set.

Once all the shared parameters contain values, changing the value for a shared parameter has no effect on the other shared parameters.

Important: Do not hide shared parameters. Do not set shared parameters to Display = No (which prevents modifying the value) or Modify = No. This prevents updates to shared parameters, which are not propagated to other reports in the set, from generating unwanted inconsistencies.

Example - Shared Parameter Value

We've created a request set containing two reports, a *Concurrent Programs Report* and the *Concurrent Program Details Report*. The two reports and their parameters are listed in the table below:

REPORT	PARAMETERS
Concurrent Programs Report	Application Name
Concurrent Program Detail Report	Application Name, Program

We identify the parameter Application Name as a parameter shared between the two reports. We want to enter a value only once, that is, when the Report Parameters window appears for the first report in the set, requiring us to enter Application Name.

To identify a shared parameter, we give it a name, in this example, *applname*, and enter it as a Shared Parameter for each report.

Report Parameters						
Sequence	Prompt	Display	Modify	Shared Parameter	Type	Default Value
1	Application Name	Yes	Yes	applname		

Report Parameters						
Sequence	Prompt	Display	Modify	Shared Parameter	Type	Default Value
1	Application Name	Yes	Yes	applname		
2	Program	Yes	Yes			

Related Topics

Overview of Concurrent Programs and Requests, page 7-1

Control the Behavior of Request Parameters, page 7-39

Concurrent Programs, page 7-51

Request Sets Report

This report documents request set definitions, including the set's owner, program incompatibilities, as well as printer and print style information. Use this report when defining or editing request set definitions.

Report Parameters

None.

Report Headings

The report headings provide you with general information about the contents of the report.

Related Topics

Overview of Concurrent Programs and Requests, page 7-1

Organizing Programs into Request Sets, page 7-2

Concurrent Programs Report, page 7-45

Organizing Programs into Request Groups

This essay explains how you can organize your applications programs and reports into request groups. It presents the following topics:

- Request Security Groups
- Using Codes with Request Groups
- Customizing the Submit Requests Window using Codes
- Report Group Responsibilities report

Defining a Request Group

When defining a request group, you can include:

- all the reports and concurrent programs owned by an application
- individual reports and concurrent programs
- request sets, which are collections of reports and concurrent programs that may be selected from an application user's request security groups
- request set stage functions, which are used to calculate the status of stages within a request set.

Two Types of Request Groups

A request group is used by Oracle Applications at two different levels:

1. Responsibility level

When a request group is assigned to a **responsibility**, it is referred to as a request security group, and it defines the reports, request sets, and concurrent programs that a user, operating under that responsibility, can select from the Submit Requests Window.

2. Form level

When a request group is assigned a **code**, that code can be passed as a parameter to the Submit Requests Window. The code helps define the function that calls the Submit Requests Window.

The list of values for that unique Submit Requests Window lists the reports, request sets, and concurrent programs in the request group.

Request Security Groups

When a request group is assigned to a responsibility, the request group is referred to as a *request security group*. Any user signed on under a responsibility can run the reports and concurrent programs contained in their responsibility's request security group.

The Submit Requests standard submission form displays a list of all the reports and programs in the current responsibility's request security group.

Related Topics

Using Codes with Request Groups, page 7-16

Customizing the Submit Requests Window using Codes, page 7-18

Report Group Responsibilities Report, page 7-19

Request Groups, page 7-46

Using Codes with Request Groups

Normally, when a menu calls the standard request submission form, that form can list the reports and concurrent programs contained in the report security group for the current responsibility.

Alternatively, you can assign a code to a request group so that a customized standard submission form only displays a list of concurrent programs contained in that particular request group. A request group code is simply an argument that is passed from a menu to a customized standard submission form. To summarize:

- Request group codes provide a form-based method of controlling user access to concurrent programs and reports.
- A code can be assigned to a request group.
- You can use the code as an argument passed from a menu to the standard submission form.
- When a menu that calls the standard submission form uses the code, that form lists only those programs in the request group identified by the code.

Related Topics

Organizing Programs into Request Groups, page 7-15

Customizing the Submit Requests Window, page 7-16

Customizing the Submit Requests Window using Codes, page 7-18

Request Groups, page 7-46

Customizing the Submit Requests Window

You can customize the Submit Request window in several ways.

Rename the Window Title

You can change the title to reflect the requests available in the window. See: Customizing the Submit Requests Window using Codes, page 7-18.

Restrict Requests Available to A Request Group

You can restrict the reports and programs available to those in a specified request group. See: Customizing the Submit Requests Window using Codes, page 7-18.

Restrict Requests to a Single Request

You can call Submit Requests form for a single request submission by passing the program/set name as parameters

The parameters window pops up on navigation to the form when called with a program/report_set name. The form exits after the user acknowledges the displayed request ID for the submitted request.

Restrict Requests To A List of Requests

You can call Submit Requests form to submit one or more requests for a single program/set by passing the program/set name as parameters

The parameters window pops up on navigation to the form and the user can submit one or more requests for the program that was passed as a parameter. Requests for other programs cannot be submitted in this case.

Pass Parameters Used in Value Set Parameters

You can pass additional parameters to the Submit Requests form that can be referenced in the value sets to validate the request parameters.

Pass Manufacturing "ORG" Parameters

You can pass 5 ORG related parameters and refer to them in the value set. Alternatively, you can bring up a ORG LOV on navigation to the Submit Requests form that populates the ORG parameters which can be referenced in the value sets.

Complete List of All Submit Request Paramters

Below is the comprehensive list of parameters supported by the "Run Requests"/SRS form and additional information about their usage.

- REQUEST_GROUP_CODE
- REQUEST_GROUP_APPL_SHORT_NAME (used with REQUEST_GROUP_CODE)
- CONCURRENT_PROGRAM_NAME
- PROGRAM_APPL_SHORT_NAME (used with CONCURRENT_PROGRAM_NAME)
- REQUEST_SET_NAME
- SET_APPL_SHORT_NAME (used with REQUEST_SET_NAME)
- SUBMIT_ONCE (default 'N').

SUBMIT_ONCE can be set to either Y or N (N is the default).

SUBMIT_ONCE is used in conjunction with CONCURRENT_PROGRAM_NAME or REQUEST_SET_NAME.

If SUBMIT_ONCE is set to Y, then the form will exit after the Submit button is clicked.

- TITLE
- LOOKUP (default 'N')
- USE_ORG, ORG_ID, ORG_NAME, ORG_CODE, CHART_OF_ACCOUNTS_ID (five parameters)

If USE_ORG is set to 'Y' (default is 'N') then the Submit Requests form checks to see if the other ORG parameters are set. If the parameters are not set, then it attempts to populate the parameters from the globals (GLOBAL.FND_ORG_ID, GLOBAL.FND_ORG_NAME, etc.). If the globals have not yet been set, then an ORG LOV shows, and both the parameters and the globals are populated from the LOV.

Values sets should always reference the parameters, not the globals.

- CHAR1, CHAR2, CHAR3, CHAR4, CHAR5
- DATE1, DATE2, DATE3, DATE4, DATE5
- NUMBER1, NUMBER2, NUMBER3, NUMBER4, NUMBER5

In your value sets, refer to these parameters as:

`:PARAMETER.CHAR1, :PARAMETER.DATE1, :PARAMETER.NUMBER1 etc.`

Customizing the Submit Requests Window using Codes

You can give the Submit Requests Window a different title, and define the form so that it allows users to select only those reports or concurrent programs belonging to a request group that you have assigned a code to. To do this, you register a form function that references the Submit Requests Window, and you pass certain arguments to the function. Then you construct your menu to include this form function. For more information, see: the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide: Security*.

Using a Request Group Code as an argument

The following table describes the parameters passed to associate a request group with the Submit Requests Window and to customize the title of that form. Text is entered in the Parameters field of the Form Functions form.

Parameter Syntax followed by Example	Explanation
REQUEST_GROUP_CODE =" <i>Request Group Code</i> " REQUEST_GROUP_CODE = "OE_CONC_PROGRAMS"	This parameter passes the request group's code. (Required)
REQUEST_GROUP_APPL_SHORT_NAME = " <i>Application short name</i> " REQUEST_GROUP_APPL_SHORT_NAME = "OE"	This parameter identifies the short name for the application associated with the request group. (Required)
TITLE =" <i>Application short name:Message_ Name</i> " TITLE = "FND:SRS_NEWTITLE"	This parameter identifies a message whose contents define the title, as well as the application short name of that message. (Optional)
LOOKUP = "Y N" LOOKUP = "Y"	This parameter indicates whether the TITLE parameter is a message name or a hardcoded string. The default value is "Y", which indicates that TITLE is a message name. (Optional)

Related Topics

Customizing the Submit Requests Window, page 7-16

Organizing Programs into Request Groups, page 7-15

Using Codes with Request Groups, page 7-16

Report Group Responsibilities Report, page 7-19

Request Groups, page 7-46

Report Group Responsibilities Report

This report lists those responsibilities which have access to a report or a request set. Use this report when granting access privileges to reports and request sets, either by assigning reports and request sets to request security groups, or when assigning owners to a request set.

Report Parameters

Application Name

Choose the application name associated with the report or request set.

Report Name/Request Set Name

Either choose the name of a report or request set.

Related Topics

Overview of Concurrent Programs and Requests, page 7-1

Organizing Programs into Request Groups, page 7-15

Request Groups, page 7-46

Defining Program Incompatibility Rules

This essay explains how you can define incompatibility rules for your concurrent programs and reports.

Incompatible and Run Alone Programs

When a concurrent program is incompatible with another program, the two programs cannot access or update the same data simultaneously.

When you define a concurrent program, you can list those programs you want it to be incompatible with. You can also list the program as incompatible with itself, which means that two instances of the program cannot run simultaneously.

You can also make a program incompatible with *all other* concurrent programs by defining the program to be run-alone.

There are two types of program incompatibilities, "Global" incompatibilities, and "Domain-specific" incompatibilities.

You can define a concurrent program to be globally incompatible with another program -- that is, the two programs cannot be run simultaneously at all; or you can define a concurrent program to be incompatible with another program in a Conflict

Domain. Conflict domains are abstract representations of groups of data. They can correspond to other group identifiers, such as sets of books, or they can be arbitrary.

You define a concurrent program to be run-alone or to be incompatible with specific concurrent programs by editing the concurrent program's definition using the Concurrent Programs window. See: Concurrent Programs, page 7-51.

Program incompatibility and run-alone program definitions are enforced by the Conflict Resolution Manager (CRM).

Note: The concept of "Global" incompatibilities was introduced with Patch 2364876.

With this patch, all pre-existing incompatibilities are converted to the type Global, unless both of the programs have a conflict domain parameter registered. This may mean that if you have been using the Concurrent:Conflicts Domain profile option for your custom programs, you may need to switch the incompatibility type to "Domain-specific" to keep the expected behavior.

Also, the two user-level constraints, set by the Concurrent:Active Request Limit and Concurrent:Sequential Requests profile options, are now enforced globally across all conflict domains.

Request Sets - Incompatibilities Allowed

When you define a request set or request set stage that allows incompatibilities, you create a concurrent program that runs the reports in your request set or stage according to the instructions you entered. Using the Concurrent Programs window, when you list programs as incompatible with a request set, those programs are prevented from starting until all the reports in the set or stage have completed running.

To define incompatibility rules for a request set and request set stage:

- For a request set check the Allow Incompatibility check box on the Request Set window.
- For a request set stage check the Allow Incompatibility check box on the Stages window.
- Navigate to the Incompatible Programs block in the Concurrent Programs form and list those programs that your request set or stage is incompatible with.

All concurrent programs that run request sets are titled *Request Set <name of request set>* while all concurrent programs that run request set stages are titled *Request Set Stage <name of stage>-Request Set <name of request set>*. In the Concurrent Programs form, if you query a request set or stage concurrent program on the basis of the program's name, you must enter in the Name field the words:

- "Request Set" or "Request Set Stage" before the name of a concurrent program
- "Request Set %" to perform a query on all request set and stage programs

Related Topics

Overview of Concurrent Programs and Requests, page 7-1

Request Set Incompatibilities, page 7-12

Modifying an Incompatible Programs list, page 7-38

Concurrent Conflict Domains

If two programs are defined as incompatible with one another, the data these programs cannot access simultaneously must also be identified.

In other words, to prevent two programs from concurrently accessing or updating the same data, you have to know *where*, in terms of data, they are incompatible. A Conflict Domain identifies the data where two incompatible programs cannot run simultaneously.

Conflict Domains

In Oracle Applications, data is stored in database tables that belong to a particular application. Each table may also contain information used to determine what conditions need to be met to access the individual records. These conditions may consist of one or more of the following data groupings:

- SOB - based on the profile option GL_SET_OF_BOOKS
- Multiple installations (referred to as MSOB)
- Multiple Operating units (determined by profile option MO_OPERATING_UNIT) (referred as MULTIORG).
- Multiple Orgs (determined by profile option INV_ORGANIZATION_ID, Used by Manufacturing Applications)
- HR may use business group as a conflict resolution domain
- FA may use FA book
- etc...

A conflict domain is an abstract representation of the groupings used to partition your data. There is no limit to the number of domains that can be defined, but excessive domains may hurt performance.

All programs are assigned a conflict domain when they are submitted. If a domain is defined as part of a parameter the concurrent manager will use it to resolve incompatibilities. If the domain is not defined by a parameter the concurrent manager uses the value defined for the profile option Concurrent:Conflicts Domain. Lastly, if the domain is not provided by a program parameter and the Concurrent:Conflicts Domain profile option has not been defined the 'Standard' domain is used. The Standard domain is the default for all requests.

All programs use the Standard conflict domain unless a value is defined for the profile option Concurrent:Conflicts Domain or a conflict domain is defined through a program parameter.

Each request submitted uses parameters which identify the records that it will access. For programs that are defined with incompatibility rules an additional parameter (conflict domain parameter) is used. The conflict domain may be set automatically based on such variables as a login ID, set of books, or the organization the user is working in. The conflict domain parameter may in some cases be selected in the parameters field of the Submit Requests form. Once the parameter is determined the Conflict Resolution Manager (CRM) uses the domain to ensure that incompatible programs do not run simultaneously in the same domain.

Enforcing Incompatibility Rules

Concurrent managers read requests to start concurrent programs running. The Conflict Resolution Manager checks concurrent program definitions for incompatibility rules.

If a program is identified as Run Alone, then the Conflict Resolution Manager prevents the concurrent managers from starting other programs in the same conflict domain.

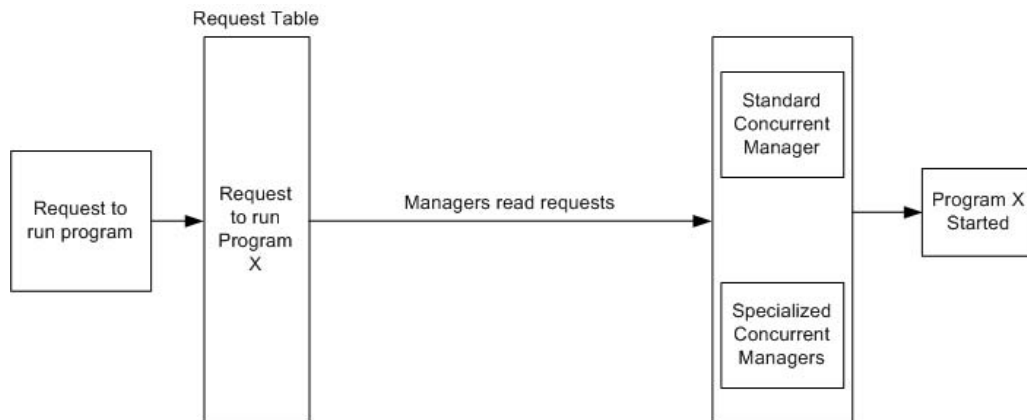
When a program lists other programs as being incompatible with it, the Conflict Resolution Manager prevents the program from starting until any incompatible programs in the same domain have completed running.

The figures below illustrate the role of the Conflict Resolution Manager when enforcing program incompatibility rules.

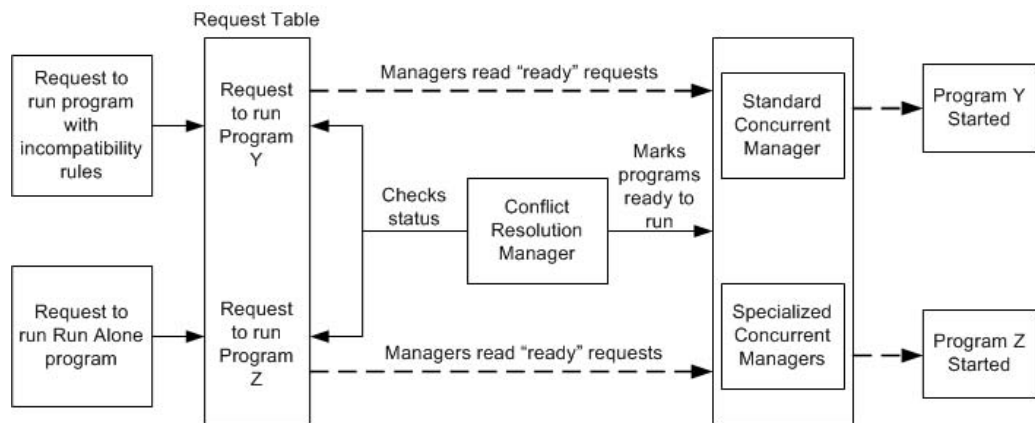
In a simple example without incompatibilities, a user submits a request to run a program. This request is then added to the request table which contains a list of requests. Managers then read requests from this table and start the associated concurrent programs.

A more complex example users may have submitted one request with incompatibility rules and another request to run a program that must be run alone. In this case these requests are added to the request table, but the Conflict Resolution Manager then checks the statuses of the requests in the table and marks which requests are ready to be run. The concurrent managers then read only the "ready" requests and start their concurrent programs.

Simple Run Program Request



Complex Run Program Request



Related Topics

Overview of Concurrent Programs and Requests, page 7-1

Defining Data Groups, page 7-23

Copying and Modifying Program Definitions, page 7-35

Modifying an Incompatible Programs list, page 7-38

Concurrent Programs, page 7-51

Defining Data Groups

This essay explains how you can define data groups, which specify your applications database connections.

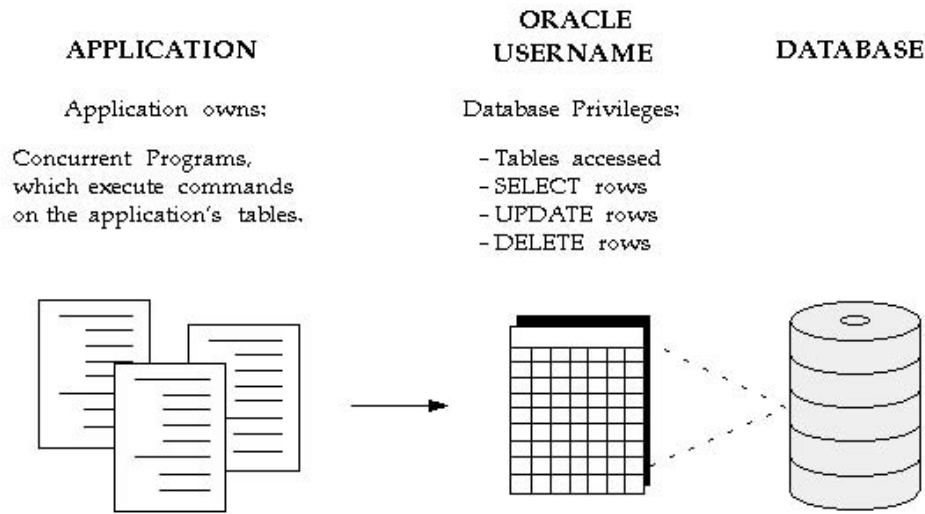
Introduction to Data Groups

A data group is a list of Oracle Applications and the Oracle username assigned to each application. Each application in a data group must have a Oracle username assigned to it. An application may be listed only once in a data group.

An application includes concurrent programs that execute commands on the application's tables.

An Oracle username and password allow access to an application's tables in an Oracle database. Each Oracle username in a data group determines the database tables and table privileges accessible by the corresponding application or applications.

Applications and ORACLE Usernames



Data Group's Purpose

Each responsibility has a data group associated with it. A data group serves two purposes:

1. It identifies the Oracle username that forms connect to when you select the responsibility.
2. Concurrent managers use a data group to match the application that owns a report or concurrent program (submitted by a user of the responsibility) with a Oracle username.

Related Topics

Overview of Concurrent Programs and Requests, page 7-1

Using Data Groups, page 7-24

Modifying Data Groups, page 7-25

Data Groups, page 7-61

ORACLE Users field help, page 12-8

Using Data Groups

Using Data Groups with multiple Sets of Books

Use data groups to support multiple installations of an Oracle Applications product (for example, Oracle Payables) that supports multiple sets of books, where a different application is associated with each set of books.

For example, with two installations of Oracle Payables supporting two Sets of Books, use data groups to indicate which Oracle Payables Oracle username to access from a certain General Ledger responsibility.

Define a data group for each application installation (set of books).

Define a responsibility for each application installation (set of books), and assign the appropriate data group to each responsibility.

Using Data Groups to include custom applications

Use data groups to include custom applications you develop using Oracle's Application Object Library. To integrate a custom application with Oracle Applications, you must register the application using the Applications window. See: Applications Window, page 12-12.

An example of using two Data Groups to support two installations of Oracle Payables, Oracle Purchasing, and Oracle Receivables is given below.

In this example a data group Books 1 is assigned to a responsibility called General Ledger User 1. The data group Books 1 includes General Ledger - GL, Oracle Payables - AP1, Oracle Purchasing - PO1, and Oracle Receivables - AR1. A user with this responsibility can submit an Oracle Receivables report, which runs accessing data with ORACLE ID AR1 privileges. Another data group Books 2 is defined and includes General Ledger - GL, Oracle Payables - AP2, Oracle Purchasing - PO2, and Oracle Receivables - AR2. The data group Books 2 is assigned to a responsibility called General Ledger User 2. Note that both responsibilities attach to the same set of forms, (same ORACLE ID). A user of responsibility General Ledger User 2 can submit an Oracle Receivables report which runs accessing data with ORACLE ID AR2 privileges.

See:

Defining Data Groups, page 7-23

Modifying Data Groups, page 7-25

Data Groups, page 7-61

ORACLE Users field help, page 12-8

Modifying Data Groups

Predefined Standard Data Groups

During installation or upgrade of Oracle Applications, a standard data group is defined that pairs each installed application with an ORACLE username (note: this occurs for each set of books).

You cannot change or delete the predefined values for *Application* or *ORACLE username* in a Standard data group. However, you may modify the Tool ORACLE username and description, or add new Application-ORACLE username pairs to the group.

Defining new Data Groups

Since the installation process automatically defines Data Groups for Oracle Applications, you only need to define any additional data groups you wish to utilize.

You can copy a data group and give it a new name, creating a new data group. Each application, its assigned Oracle username, and, if present, its Tool Oracle username and description, are copied to the new data group.

Tip: Make a backup copy of your standard Data Group, and do not assign it to a responsibility. That way, if you ever inadvertently connect the wrong Oracle username to an application, or lose track of your

applications' configuration, you have an initial configuration you can revert to.

Adding a custom application to a Data Group

If a custom application is developed with Oracle Application Object Library, to include it in a Data Group, you:

- Register the application with Oracle Applications using the Applications form
- Assign an Oracle username to the application using the ORACLE Usernames form

Registering an Oracle Username

Registering an Oracle username with Oracle Applications sets up the privileges to the Oracle Application Object Library database tables (such as flexfield tables, menu tables, and so on) that are necessary to successfully use Oracle Applications. See: Overview of Applications DBA Duties, page 12-1.

Related Topics

Defining Data Groups, page 7-23

Using Data Groups, page 7-24

Data Groups, page 7-61

ORACLE Users field help, page 12-8

Custom Concurrent Programs

This section provides information for system administrators on custom concurrent programs. It explains certain procedures and conventions for creating customized concurrent programs:

- Log and Output Filenames
- Oracle Tool Concurrent Programs
- Pro*C Concurrent Programs
- Submitting Concurrent Requests (CONCSUB)

For information on creating custom concurrent programs, see the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

For information on setting up the development environment, see the *Oracle Applications Concepts Guide*.

Log and Output Filenames

Log and output files must have specific names and locations for users to review the files online.

If you use the Oracle Application Object Library routine `fdpwrt()` to write to files, the concurrent managers automatically name the files according to the operating system's naming conventions. This method of writing to files is completely portable. You do not have to rewrite your programs to name your log and output files differently if you port your application to another platform.

Standard Names

Standard names for log and output files are listed in the following table:

File Type	Location	Filename
Log	<i>Default:</i> \$<PROD>_TOP/ \$APPLLOG with Common Directory: \$APPLCSF/\$AP PLLOG	l<request ID>.req
Output	<i>Default:</i> \$<PROD>_TOP/ \$APPLOUT with Common Directory: \$APPLCSF/\$AP PLOUT	<i>Default:</i> <USERNAME>. <request ID> or O<request ID>.out <i>or</i> user.out based on value of APPCPNAM

The variable parameters shown in this table have the following values:

- <PROD>_TOP - The application's top environment variable.
- <Request ID> - The number that identifies the concurrent request.
- <USERNAME> - Up to eight characters (uppercase) of the application username of the person who requested the concurrent process.

Oracle Tool Concurrent Programs

If you write concurrent programs in PL/SQL, SQL*Plus, or Oracle Reports, name the program exactly as you identified it in the Execution File field of the Concurrent Program Executable window, plus an extension if necessary.

The following table lists the file extensions used for these programs and the directories where the programs should reside. (This does not apply to PL/SQL stored procedures, which are stored in the database.) The directories are under your custom application's TOP directory, \$<PROD>_TOP.

If you use shared PL/SQL libraries with your Oracle Reports programs, and you want to include the libraries you write for your custom application, place the libraries in the \$APPLPLS directory under your custom application's TOP directory.

Tool	Extension	Directory	Comments
SQL*Plus and PL/SQL	.sql	\$APPLSQL	The program name is case sensitive and must exactly match the Execution file you defined with Oracle Application Object Library.
Oracle Reports	.rdf	\$APPLREP	Oracle Application Object Library looks for the .rdf file first. It uses the .rex file if it does not find the .rdf file. The program name is case sensitive and must exactly match the execution file name you defined with Oracle Application Object Library.
SQL*Loader	.ctl	\$APPLBIN	

Pro*C Concurrent Programs

When you write a concurrent program in Pro*C, copy the skeleton programs EXMAIN.c and EXPROG.c from the directory \$FND_TOP/\$APPLUSR. Rename the files and globally replace SUBROUTINE_NAME with the name of your subroutine.

EXMAIN.c is the skeleton used for your spawned programs. EXPROG.c is the skeleton used for your program's logic. This module can be used to create a spawned or an immediate program. For immediate programs, you must include your copy of EXPROG.c in a program library. See below for information on building a program library.

You can use programs written with these skeleton programs as spawned or immediate concurrent programs. Spawned programs run as a separate process while immediate programs run linked in with a concurrent manager.

Important: Oracle Corporation provides information on immediate concurrent programs for backwards compatibility only. We strongly recommend that you do not create any new immediate concurrent programs. You should define your new Pro*C concurrent program executables as spawned.

Naming Your Executable File

Name your program's executable file exactly as you identified it in the Execution File field of the Concurrent Program Executable window. Put your executable file in the \$APPLBIN directory under your application's TOP directory.

Building Your Program Library

Register a new program library with the Register Concurrent Program Library form and register all the programs you want to include in this library. Then enter "Yes"

in the Rebuild field and commit. This creates a request to build a new catalog file called <Library Name>.c under \$<PROD>_TOP/\$APPLLIB\$. You should compile the <Library Name>.c file after the request completes.

Sample program libraries such as prgcat.c and prglib.c are located under \$FND_TOP/\$APPLUSR.

Tip: For ease of maintenance, define your concurrent program executables as spawned.

Compiling C and Pro*C Programs

Your environment for compiling custom code depends on the file \$FND_TOP/usrxit/devenv. If you change this file, you should reread it by logging in again so that the changes take effect.

You compile your C or Pro*C programs into object modules using \$FND_TOP/usrxit/Makefile. You then link your programs using adrelink. We do not support both compiling and linking executables using a single makefile or utility.

To compile the C program example.c, use the following syntax. In all the examples, you should run the commands from the directory in which your files are located.

```
$ make -f $FND_TOP/usrxit/Makefile example.o
```

To compile the Pro*C program proexamp.pc, use the following syntax:

```
$ make -f $FND_TOP/usrxit/Makefile proexamp.o
```

To compile the four C and Pro*C programs a.c, b.c, c.pc, d.pc (all of which are in the current directory), use the following syntax:

```
$ make -f $FND_TOP/usrxit/Makefile a.o b.o c.o d.o
```

Linking Spawned Concurrent Programs as Stand-alone Programs

If you want your spawned concurrent program to run as a stand-alone program, perform the following steps before compiling your stand-alone executable.

For custom concurrent programs you define under your custom application (as recommended), you should copy the sample.mk file from \$FND_TOP/usrxit to your \$<PROD>_TOP/\$APPLLIB directory. Modify your copy according to the instructions contained in the file. This is the file adrelink uses to link your stand-alone executables.

Then enter the following commands.

```
$ . $FND_TOP/fndenv
```

Move to the directory in which your source files are kept.

```
$ cd <source_directory>
$ make -f $FND_TOP/$APPLLIB/Makefile <source file>.o
```

Here, <source file> is the name of the file containing your program and <directory> is the directory where the source file is located.

You can then link your stand-alone executable and place the executable in the \$APPLBIN directory under the TOP directory for your custom application:

```
$ adrelink force=y "<appl_short_name> <program name>"
```

In this relink command, <appl_short_name> is the application short name of the application your program belongs to, and <program name> is the program name.

Linking your Immediate Concurrent Program

To create a program library, you link your compiled library catalog with your program object files using an Oracle Application Object Library link procedure.

Important: Oracle Corporation provides information on immediate concurrent programs for backwards compatibility only. We strongly recommend that you do not create any new immediate concurrent programs. You should define your new Pro*C concurrent program executables as spawned.

Make sure the environment variable \$LUSRLIB includes the modules that define the functions for the immediate concurrent programs and your program library. Set the \$LUSRPRG variable to include the object modules of your library catalog. The file devenv in the directory \$FND_TOP/\$APPLUSR defines the variables \$LUSRLIB and \$LUSRPRG. The file fndenv executes devenv.

The files devenv and fndenv are UNIX shell scripts that set up the necessary environment variables.

We recommend that you make a copy of the working program library before linking your new immediate concurrent program library in case your new program library does not function as expected. To link your program library, execute this command from the operating system:

```
$ adrelink force=y "fnd UFNDLIBR"
```

This creates your new program library as UFNDLIBR. You can rename it, but the name of your new program library must be eight characters or less.

Testing Pro*C Concurrent Programs

You can use the following method to test your program. You must pass each argument needed by your program. To pass parameters, enter the following at the operating system prompt:

```
$ <program name> <ORACLE username>/<ORACLE password> 0 Y \  
[<parameter 1> <parameter 2>... ]
```

The program name must be uppercase and the same name that you entered in the Execution File field of the Concurrent Program Executable window. The 0 and Y arguments are required.

If any of your program-specific parameters includes spaces, enclose that parameter in double quotes. If a parameter contains a literal double quote, precede that mark with a backslash [\\].

Host Language Concurrent Programs

Name your program <name>.prog, where <name> is the value you enter in the Execution File field of the Concurrent Executable window. Then make a symbolic link using your execution file name (without an extension) to fndcpesr, which is located in

the \$FND_TOP/\$APPLBIN directory. Put your executable file and the linked file in the \$APPLBIN directory under your application's TOP directory.

For example, name your custom shell script CUSTOM.prog. Create a symbolic link to fndcpr named CUSTOM. Place both files in your \$APPLBIN directory. Create your concurrent program executable using the execution file CUSTOM.

Host Program Parameters

The concurrent manager running your program puts your program name in \$0, the four arguments orauser/pwd, userid, username, and request_id in \$1 to \$4, and your program specific parameters in \$5 and beyond. Each of these arguments can be at most 50 characters.

For example, if you pass two parameters into your program, you use \$5 to refer to the first parameter and \$6 to refer to the second parameter.

Protecting Your Oracle User Password

In some cases, there are security concerns with passing your Oracle username and password directly to your HOST program. If you do not want the concurrent manager to pass your username/password to your program, you can have the manager pass it as an environment variable instead, or not pass it at all.

First, define your concurrent program executable as a HOST program in the Concurrent Program Executable form.

To have the username/password passed as an environment variable, enter the term 'ENCRYPT' in the Execution Options field of the Concurrent Programs window when defining a concurrent program using this executable. 'ENCRYPT' signals the concurrent manager to pass the username/password in the environment variable fcp_login. The argument \$1 is left blank.

If you do not want the username/password passed to the program at all, enter 'SECURE' in the Execution Options field. The concurrent manager will not pass the username/password to the program.

Success Codes

By default, a shell script returns success (status code 0). If your script traps an error, use the UNIX exit command "exit 1" to return failure (status code 1) to the concurrent manager running the program.

Log and Out Files

Use names in FCP_LOG and FCP_OUT. This way log and output/report files can be viewed online.

Testing Your Program

You should test using the <name>.prog file to make sure your script behaves correctly.

Submitting Concurrent Requests (CONCSUB)

You can test your concurrent program by submitting the program using the CONCSUB utility from the operating system.

Syntax

You can submit a concurrent request to run any concurrent program by running the CONCSUB program with the following syntax:

```
$ CONCSUB <APPS username>/<APPS password> \  
<responsibility application short name> \  
<responsibility name> \  
<username> \  
[WAIT=N|Y|<n seconds>] \  
CONCURRENT \  
<program application short name> \  
<program name> \  
[PROGRAM_NAME="<description>"] \  
[REPEAT_TIME=<resubmission time>] \  
[REPEAT_INTERVAL= <number>] \  
[REPEAT_INTERVAL_UNIT=< resubmission unit>] \  
[REPEAT_INTERVAL_TYPE=< resubmission type>] \  
[REPEAT_END=<resubmission end date and time>] \  
[START=<date>] \  
[IMPLICIT=< type of concurrent request>] \  
[<parameter 1> ... <parameter n>]
```

For parameters that follow the CONCURRENT parameter and include spaces, enclose the parameter argument in double quotes, then again in single quotes. Oracle Application Object Library requires this syntax because it parses the argument string twice. For example, to pass this argument to a program:

This is an example

pass this argument through CONCSUB:

```
'"This is an example"'
```

Example

Here is an example of the command to run CONCSUB:

```
$ CONCSUB APPS/APPS \  
SYSADMIN \  
"System Administrator" \  
SYSADMIN \  
WAIT=N \  
CONCURRENT \  
FND \  
FNDFMRTC \  
PROGRAM_NAME=' "Register Custom Tables Weekly" ' \  
REPEAT_INTERVAL=7 \  
REPEAT_INTERVAL_UNIT="DAYS" \  
REPEAT_INTERVAL_TYPE="START" \  
START=' "08-JUN-96 23:55:00" '  
CGL  
APPLSYS  
ALL  
CGL
```

Parameters

The following entries explain the required and optional parameters for submitting a concurrent program with CONCSUB. Default values are listed to the right.

username/ password	Required. The ORACLE username and password that provides access to the data that your program uses.
responsibility application short name	Required. The application short name of the responsibility whose concurrent processing options you want to use.
responsibility name	Required. The name of your responsibility. If the name of your responsibility includes spaces, enclose that name in double quotes.
username	Required. The uppercase username of the application user whose concurrent processing options you want to use.
WAIT	<p>Optional. A flag that indicates whether to wait for the submitted request to complete. If you leave this parameter out, the default value of N makes CONCSUB return you to the operating system prompt without waiting for your request to complete.</p> <p>Set WAIT=Y to have CONCSUB check the request status every 60 seconds and return you to the operating system prompt when your request is completed. You can also enter an integer value for a number of seconds, as in WAIT=30, for CONCSUB to check for request completion every <number> seconds.</p>

Important: Using WAIT=Y or WAIT=<number> requires that your request completes before CONCSUB returns you to the operating system. If the concurrent manager is down, your CONCSUB process waits indefinitely until the concurrent manager is started and the request completes.

CONCURRENT	Required. A flag that separates the program-specific parameters from the operating system parameters.
program application short name	Required. The application short name of your concurrent program.
program name	Required. The uppercase name of your program. It must be the short name that you enter in the Concurrent Programs window when defining a concurrent program.
PROGRAM_NAME	Optional. A descriptive name for your program. The program field on the View Requests form displays this as the user-friendly program name. The concurrent program short name passed to CONCSUB is often hard for end users to understand, so the PROGRAM_NAME parameter allows you to pass a more easily remembered name for your concurrent program. If you do not specify a PROGRAM_NAME, the View Requests form displays the user-friendly program name specified in the Concurrent Programs window.

You may also use the PROGRAM_NAME parameter to indicate the batch that your request processes for programs that process a set of data, where there could be several requests for a given program that are active at the same time.

REPEAT_TIME

Optional. The time of day to resubmit the request. The format for the time is HH24:MI or HH24:MI:SS. For example, REPEAT_TIME=14:30 resubmits your request daily at 2:30 p.m.

Important: Do not use REPEAT_TIME with other resubmission parameters except for the optional parameters REPEAT_END and START.

REPEAT_INTERVAL

Optional. The interval between resubmission (a positive integer or real number). Use this parameter along with REPEAT_INTERVAL_UNIT to specify the time between resubmissions.

REPEAT_INTERVAL_UNIT

Optional. The unit of time used for the interval between resubmissions. The available units are MINUTES, HOURS, DAYS or MONTHS. Use this parameter along with REPEAT_INTERVAL to specify the time between resubmissions. For example, setting REPEAT_INTERVAL=12 and REPEAT_INTERVAL_UNIT=HOURS resubmits your request every twelve hours. The default value is DAYS.

Important: Do not use REPEAT_INTERVAL and REPEAT_INTERVAL_UNIT with REPEAT_TIME.

REPEAT_INTERVAL_TYPE

Optional. Whether to time the resubmission interval from the requested start time of the request or from its completion. Set this parameter either to START or END. The default value is START.

Important: Use REPEAT_INTERVAL_TYPE only if you use REPEAT_INTERVAL.

REPEAT_END

Optional. The date and time to stop resubmitting the concurrent request. Use one of the following for the format of the end date:

**"DD-MON-RR
HH24:MI:SS"** (as in
"07-APR-02 18:32:05")

or

**"DD-MON-RRRR
HH24:MI:SS"** (as
in **"07-APR-2002
18:32:05"**)

Note that because this date format includes a space, you must enclose the date in double quotation marks and single quotation marks. You can also specify just the date:

'DD-MON-RR'

	or 'DD-MON-RRRR'
START	Optional. A start date and time for your program in this format: ""DD-MON-RR HH24:MI:SS"" (as in ""07-APR-02 18:32:05"") Because this date format includes a space, you must enclose the date in double quotation marks and single quotation marks. If you do not specify a start time, your program submits immediately and is processed by the next available concurrent manager. The default value is the current time.
IMPLICIT	Optional. Whether to show this concurrent request on the View Requests form. Specify NO, YES, ERROR or WARNING. The value IMPLICIT=NO allows the request to appear on the View Request form. The default value is NO. The value IMPLICIT=YES means that only the System Administrator's privileged View Concurrent Requests form displays this request. Use this value if the request is not interesting to the user. Specify IMPLICIT=ERROR or IMPLICIT=WARNING, respectively, if you want the request to appear only if it fails or completes with warnings.
REPEAT_DAYS	Optional. The number of days after which to repeat the concurrent request, calculated from the last requested start date. The number can be a positive integer or real number. For example, REPEAT_DAYS=1.5 resubmits your request every 36 hours. Important: Do not use REPEAT_DAYS with other resubmission parameters except for the optional parameters REPEAT_END and START. Tip: REPEAT_DAYS will become obsolete in a future release. You may therefore want to use REPEAT_INTERVAL, REPEAT_INTERVAL_TYPE and REPEAT_INTERVAL_UNIT instead of REPEAT_DAYS.
parameter 1 ... parameter n	Optional. Your program-specific parameters. If a parameter includes spaces, enclose that parameter in double quotes, then in single quotes. If a parameter contains a double quotation mark as part of the argument, precede that mark with a backslash [\].

Copying and Modifying Program Definitions

These sections explain how you can copy and modify concurrent program definitions.

Warning: Do not overwrite program definitions for existing concurrent programs. Copy the program, rename it, then make any desired modifications to the new program.

Related Topics

Overview of Concurrent Programs and Requests, page 7-1

Copying and Renaming a concurrent program, page 7-36

Defining Program Incompatibility Rules, page 7-19

Alter Program Priority, page 7-37

Modifying an Incompatible Programs list, page 7-38

Concurrent Program Parameters, page 7-38

Example of modifying a program's parameters, page 7-43

Concurrent Programs, page 7-51

Warnings for Modifying Program Definitions, page 7-42

Copying and Renaming a concurrent program

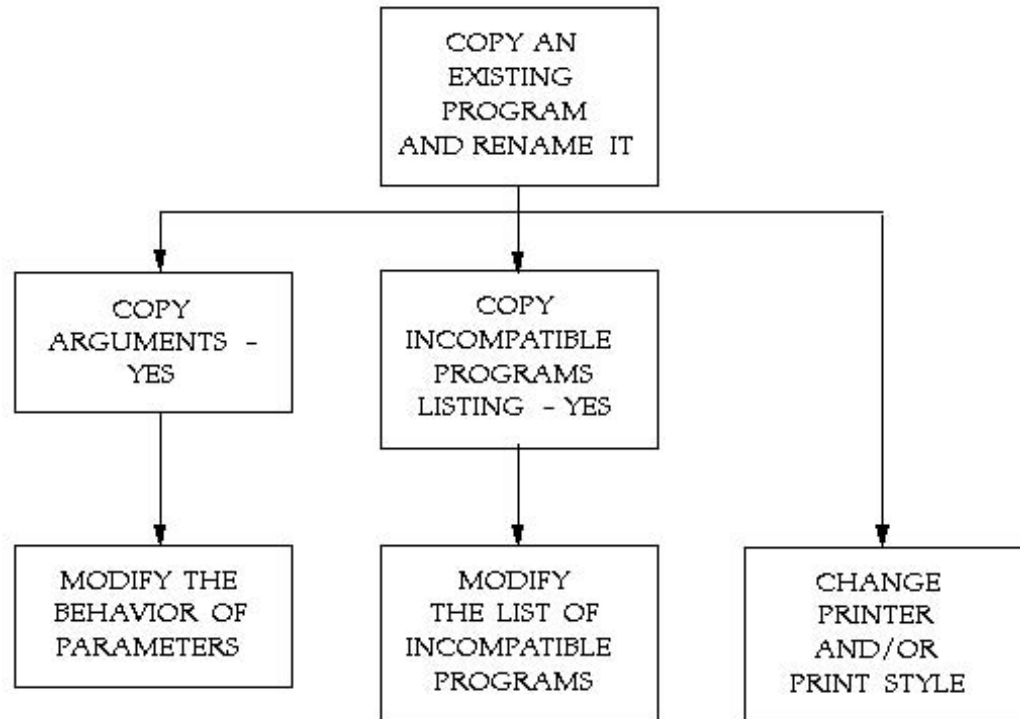
You can copy your concurrent programs and modify them to create new programs with definitions that meet your needs. You can modify how a concurrent program operates by changing the program's definition of:

- incompatible programs
- parameters (arguments)
 - parameter value sets
- printer, print style, etc.

Rather than overwrite a concurrent program's definition, you should customize a program by copying and renaming an existing program, then modifying the new program to suit your needs. The figure below illustrates the basic steps in copying and modifying a new concurrent program.

As the figure illustrates, you can copy parameters, and then modify the behavior of the parameters. Or you can copy the list of incompatible programs, and then modify the list. Finally, you can change the associated printer and/or print style.

Modifying a Concurrent Program



Related Topics

Overview of Concurrent Programs and Requests, page 7-1

Copying and Modifying Program Definitions, page 7-35

Example of modifying a program's parameters, page 7-43

Concurrent Programs, page 7-51

Alter Program Priority

You may wish to control the priority of some requests on a program level rather than at the user level.

Setting the priority for a program allows any request to run that concurrent program to use your selected priority rather than the priority of the user submitting the request.

For example, a user can submit a variety of requests at the standard priority determined by the value of the user profile `Concurrent:Priority`. However, when the user submits a request for a particular concurrent program, you want that request to have a higher priority.

You assign that program a priority of 10. When the user requests that program to run, it receives the higher priority defined on the Concurrent Program window rather than the user's standard priority and is processed ahead of other requests. When the users requests other concurrent programs that do not have a specified priority, those requests use the user's `Concurrent:Priority` profile value.

Related Topics

Copying and Modifying Program Definitions, page 7-35

Concurrent Programs, page 7-51

Modifying an Incompatible Programs list

A concurrent program's definition may include a list of incompatible programs. When a program is listed as incompatible with another program, the two programs cannot run simultaneously in the same conflict domain. See: Defining Program Incompatibility Rules, page 7-19.

You can view which programs are incompatible with a concurrent program from the Incompatible Programs block on the Concurrent Programs window. The programs listed cannot run simultaneously within the same conflict domain as the concurrent program whose definition you are viewing.

To modify the list of incompatible programs you can either:

Add new programs to the list.

The *Scope* field refers to whether you want the program by itself to be incompatible, or whether you want the program and all child requests, that is, concurrent programs started by the program as part of a request set, to be incompatible.

- Delete programs from the list.

Important: To immediately effect any changes you make in the Incompatible Programs zone, you must navigate to the Administer Concurrent Managers window and choose *Verify* for the Internal Concurrent Manager.

Related Topics

Copying and Modifying Program Definitions, page 7-35

Concurrent Programs, page 7-51

Administer Concurrent Managers field help, page 8-39.

Concurrent Program Parameters

Parameters, also referred to as *arguments*, are assigned to standard submission concurrent programs. To define a program as standard submission, set the value of the Standard Submission field in the Concurrent Programs form to Yes.

Important: All the mechanisms for parameter defaulting (including references to values of other parameters, user profiles, etc.) are evaluated only at submission time.

There are two aspects to a parameter associated with a concurrent program: its value set and its behavior.

Parameter value set	The valid values the parameter can accept. The set of valid values is referred to as a <i>value set</i> .
Parameter behavior	How the parameter behaves within an application. For example, whether:

- an entry value for the parameter is required in order for the program to work
- the parameter is displayed to the end user
- a default value is automatically provided for the parameter

If you wish to define or modify a value set, you must first carefully plan your value set's purpose and implementation.

Using the Concurrent Programs form, you can see a concurrent program's parameters by choosing *Parameters*. Each parameter has a value set that defines what values are permissible for the parameter. To see the name of a parameter's value set, look at the Value Set field in the Argument Details block.

Related Topics

Copying and Modifying Program Definitions, page 7-35

Control the Behavior of Request Parameters, page 7-39

Example of modifying a program's parameters, page 7-43

Concurrent Programs, page 7-51

Control the Behavior of Request Parameters

The behavior of parameters in programs running individually may differ from when those programs are run as part of a request set.

You define how a program's parameters behave when you define the program using the Concurrent Programs form.

Using the Request Set form, you can also define how a program's parameters behave when the program is run as part of a request. In addition, you can define parameters in different programs in a request set to all share the same value by labeling them as Shared Parameters. See: *Sharing Parameters in a Request Set*, page 7-13.

Warning: Modifying a concurrent program's definition by adding new or deleting existing parameters, or changing a parameter's value set can prevent the program from running. See: *Warnings for Modifying Program Definitions*, page 7-42.

Not Displaying Parameters

Using the Concurrent Programs form or the Request Set form, you can set a parameter so it does not display to an end user. Because parameters that do not display cannot be modified, setting a parameter to not display:

- is a good security measure, guaranteeing a desired default value is used
- means you should enter a valid default type and value at either the program's definition, or if the program is part of a request set, at the request set's definition.

Warning: Set defaults for required parameters before setting the Display field to No. Otherwise the Submit Requests form returns an error when attempting to submit the program.

If you define a parameter to not display, then the parameter does not appear when the program is run using the Submit Requests form, nor does it appear in the Request Set form.

If you define a parameter to not display, using the Request Set form, then the parameter does not appear on the Submit Requests form when the program is run as part of a request set.

Viewing displayed parameters after a request is submitted

After a request is submitted to run a concurrent program, the program's parameters may be displayed in the Details block of the Concurrent Requests form.

When a parameter is set to not display, it does not appear in the Details block of the Concurrent Requests form.

These displayed parameter values exactly match the values that the concurrent manager passes to the concurrent program, and may or may not correspond to the displayed value that the user chose.

For example, in the Submit Requests form, the user may choose "Oracle General Ledger" as a parameter, but the corresponding application ID displays in the Concurrent Requests form.

Tip: If your users encounter errors when running a program, you can look at the exact values that the concurrent program uses to help you diagnose the problem.

Setting Default Values for Parameters

Parameter default values can be changed by users when they submit a program or request set to run.

You can set a default value for a parameter using the:

- Default Type and Default Value fields in the Concurrent Programs form. These values cannot be changed on the Request Set form.
- Default Type and Default Value fields in the Request Set form.

This default definition applies only when the program is run as part of a request set.

- Shared Parameter and Default Value fields in the Request Set form

This default definition applies only when the program is run as part of a request set. All parameters labeled with the *same shared parameter label* default to the value you set in the Default Value field.

Entering erroneous default values

If the Default Type or Default Value for a parameter is incorrect, when the program is being set to run using the Submit Requests form, a window displays along with an error message.

If the parameter is not displayed, you receive an error message. You cannot update a field that is not displayed.

Warning: Be careful when entering the default type and default value, because these values are not validated with the value sets for your parameters. If you enter incorrect values, they do not appear as defaults when you run this request set using the Submit Requests form.

Preventing modification of parameter values in a Request Set

If a parameter is displayed in the Request Set form and there is no default value provided by the program's definition, you can define a default value or have the parameter inherit a shared value, and then prevent end users from modifying that value.

Set the Modify field in the Request Set form to No if you want to show the value for a parameter but not allow changing it when the request set is run using a Standard Submission form. You can set a value for the parameter using a default value or a shared parameter.

If the Display field is set to No, the Modify field automatically defaults to No, and you cannot update it.

Caution: Set defaults for required parameters before turning Modify to No. Otherwise the Submit Requests form returns an error when attempting to submit this report.

Changing responsibility to see changes take effect

Modifying parameter behavior, for example, changing whether a parameter is displayed to the end user, takes effect immediately after you commit your change. However, some changes do not appear to you unless you change responsibility or select your current responsibility again.

Behavior of Program Parameters

The following table describes how a parameter's details affect its behavior in the Concurrent Programs form and the Run Requests form.

Parameter Details	Concurrent Programs form	Run Requests form
Required	Yes	Parameter requires a value (entered by user or a default).
Display	Yes	Parameter is displayed.
Display	No	Parameter is not displayed, and cannot be modified.
Default Type & Value	Yes - Default Type and Value entered.	A default value displays, and can be changed by the user.
Default Type and Value	No default entered.	No default value is displayed.

The following table describes how a parameter's details affect its behavior in the Request Sets form and Run Requests form.

Parameter Details	Concurrent Programs form	Request Set form	Run Requests form
Required	Yes	Parameter does not require a value.	Parameter requires a value.
Display	Yes	Parameter is displayed. - Display set to Yes.	Parameter is displayed.
Display	Yes	Parameter is displayed. - Display set to No.	Parameter is not displayed.
Display	No	Parameter not displayed.	Parameter not displayed.
Modify	n/a	Yes	Value can be modified.
Modify	n/a	No	Value cannot be modified.
Default Type & Value	Yes - Default Type and Value entered.	Default Type and Value cannot be modified.	Default values can be changed by the user.
Default Type & Value	No default entered.	Yes - a Default Type and Value can be entered.	Default values can be changed by the user.
Default Type & Value	No default entered.	No - Default Type and Value are not entered.	No default value is displayed.

Warnings for Modifying Program Definitions

The following table lists warnings for modifying program definitions:

Action	Form Used	Warning
Changing the number of columns or rows in a report program.	Concurrent Programs - Report Information region.	Some report programs are written to produce a precise output. Changing the output definition could prevent the program from running, or produce poor results.
Setting print style to Dynamic.	Concurrent Programs - Report Information region - Style field.	Dynamic print style informs the program to generate its output based on output dimensions that may vary. Special coding within a program is required to support the Dynamic print style.
Changing the number of parameters in a program definition.	Concurrent Programs - Parameters window.	Programs are defined to expect x number of parameters. If you add a new parameter (x + 1), the program will ignore it. Deleting a parameter can cause a program not to run.
Changing Value Sets.	Concurrent Programs - Argument Details region - Value Set field.	Programs expect values of a certain type and length. Programs may not operate if value set is changed.
Changing tokens.	Concurrent Programs - Argument Details region - Token field.	Programs expect values of a certain type and length. Program may not operate if expected token is not received.
Defining a concurrent executable or program's execution method as Immediate.	Concurrent Program Executables - Execution Method field. Concurrent Programs - Executable Information region - Method field.	Concurrent programs whose execution method is Immediate must be registered with the program library FNDL IBR. Application developers can register programs with program libraries, System Administrators cannot.

Related Topics

Copying and Modifying Program Definitions, page 7-35

Concurrent Program Parameters, page 7-38

Example of modifying a program's parameters, page 7-43

Concurrent Program Details Report, page 7-45

Example of modifying a program's parameters

Consider the following example of when and how to modify a concurrent program's parameters.

If one user submits a large number of concurrent requests on a daily basis, for example, an Oracle Bill of Materials or Oracle Purchasing supervisor, you can create a streamlined purge program that *only* purges that user's concurrent processing records.

You can run this program as System Administrator and have it automatically resubmitted on a specific time interval.

You could also create a request set containing this one program and define the user as the owner of the request set. Then, if you do not assign the request set to any report security group, only the user (owner) can run the program. This way, the user can be responsible for purging their own records.

The System Administrator's Purge Concurrent Request and/or Manager Data program contains twelve parameters. You can copy, rename, and modify the program so it displays only three parameters, with only one parameter requiring user entry. See: Purge Concurrent Request and/or Manager Data, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*.

The table below summarizes the steps to follow in our example.

Form Used	Task
Concurrent Programs (Concurrent Programs Define)	Query the Application Object Library program named "Purge Concurrent Request and/or Manager Data" and press Copy. Select both Copy Arguments and Copy Incompatible Programs. Enter a new name for the program you are going to copy, for example, enter JSMITH PURGE.
Concurrent Programs	To modify the JSMITH PURGE program's parameters, select the Parameters button.
Concurrent Programs, Parameter Window	Modify the following seven parameters so they do not display (user JSMITH cannot see nor change the program's default values). - Oracle ID - Program Application - Program - Manager Application - Manager - Responsibility Application - Responsibility Modify the following three parameters so they do not display (user JSMITH cannot see nor change the default values you set). Set the parameters to the following (Type=Constant) defaults: - Entity = Request - Mode = Age - User Name = JSMITH Leave the following two parameters unchanged so they display. Mode Value will require JSMITH to enter a value, and Report is set to a default value of "Yes". - Mode Value - Report
Request Set (Reports Set)	Create a request set with one program in it, the JSMITH PURGE program. Enter JSMITH in the Owner field. If this request set is not assigned to any report security group, only JSMITH will be able to run the JSMITH PURGE program.
Standard Request Submission program form. For example, the Run Reports form (Reports Run)	When first submitting the JSMITH PURGE program to run, navigate to the Resubmission Options region and enter, for example, "5" and "Days" in the Interval field.

Related Topics

Copying and Modifying Program Definitions, page 7-35
Concurrent Program Parameters, page 7-38
Control the Behavior of Request Parameters, page 7-39
Concurrent Program Details Report, page 7-45

Concurrent Program Details Report

This report documents concurrent program definitions, including executable file information, execution method, incompatible program listings, and program parameters. If a concurrent program generates a report, column and row information, as well as print output and print style, are also documented.

Use this report when considering concurrent program modifications, such as modifying program incompatibility rules.

Report Parameters

Caution: If you do not enter any parameters, the report returns values for *all* concurrent programs, and may be very lengthy.

Application Name

Choose the application name associated with the concurrent program whose program definition details you wish to report on.

Choose only an application name, without a program name, if you wish to run a program definition details report on all concurrent programs associated with an application.

Program

Choose the name of a concurrent program whose program definition details you wish to report on. You must enter a value for Application Name before entering a value for Program.

Report Headings

The report headings display the specified report parameters and provide you with general information about the contents of the report.

Concurrent Programs Report, page 7-45

Concurrent Programs Report

This report shows which concurrent programs are currently enabled and which programs are disabled.

Use this report to record the execution method, argument method, run alone status, standard submission status, request type, and print style information associated with your concurrent programs.

Report Parameters

Application Name

Choose the application name associated with the concurrent programs whose program information you wish to report on.

If you do not enter an application name, the report will return values for *all* concurrent programs.

Report Headings

The report headings display the specified report parameters and provide you with general information about the contents of the report.

Related Topics

Overview of Concurrent Programs and Requests, page 7-1

Concurrent Program Details Report, page 7-45

Concurrent Programs, page 7-51

Request Groups Window

Oracle Applications

File Edit View Folder Tools Window Help

Request Groups

Group

Application

Code

Description

Requests

Type	Name	Application

Description

<OSC>

Use this window to define a request group. A request *security* group is the collection of requests, request sets, and concurrent programs that a user, operating under a given responsibility, can select from the Submit Requests window.

System Administrators:

- Assign a request security group to a responsibility when defining that responsibility. A responsibility without a request security group cannot run any requests using the Submit Requests window.
- Can add *any* request set to a request security group. Adding a private request set to a request security group allows other users to run that request set using the Submit Requests window.

Users:

- Can create their own private request sets using the Request Sets window. In a private request set, users can include only the requests you assign to their request security group.
- Cannot update another user's private request set using the Request Sets window.
- Cannot delete a private request set if it is assigned to a request security group.

Request Groups Block

Group

Use the request group's name to assign the request group to a responsibility on the Responsibilities window. An application name and request group name uniquely identify a request group.

Application

Select the name of the application you wish to associate with your request group. An application name and a request security group name uniquely identify a request security group. This application name does not prevent you from assigning requests and request sets from other applications to this request group.

Code

Assign a code to this request group. Some products use the request group code as a parameter that identifies the requests a customized standard submission form can select. See: Customizing the Submit Requests Window using Codes, page 7-18.

Requests Block

Specify the requests and request sets in the request group.

Type

Choose program or set to add one item, or choose application to include all requests in an application.

Related Topics

Overview of Concurrent Programs and Requests, page 7-1

Organizing Programs into Request Groups, page 7-15

Using Codes with Request Groups, page 7-16

Customizing the Submit Requests Window using Codes, page 7-18

Concurrent Program Executable Window

Oracle Applications

File Edit View Folder Tools Window Help

ORACLE

Concurrent Program Executable

Executable

Short Name

Application

Description

Execution Method: Oracle Reports

Execution File Name

Subroutine Name

Stage Function Parameters

<OSC>

Define a concurrent program executable for each executable source file you want to use with concurrent programs. The concurrent program executable links your source file logic with the concurrent requests you and your users submit to the concurrent manager.

Important: You cannot add new immediate programs to a concurrent manager program library. We recommend that you use spawned concurrent programs instead.

Concurrent Program Executable Block

The combination of application name plus program name uniquely identifies your concurrent program executable.

See: Concurrent Programs Window, page 7-51

Executable

Enter a name for your concurrent program executable. In the Concurrent Programs window, you assign this name to a concurrent program to associate your concurrent program with your executable logic.

Short Name

Enter a short name for your concurrent program executable.

Application

The concurrent managers use the application to determine in which directory structure to look for your execution file.

Execution Method

The execution method cannot be changed once the concurrent program executable has been assigned to one or more concurrent programs in the Concurrent Programs window.

The possible execution methods are:

Host	The execution file is a host script.
Oracle Reports	The execution file is an Oracle Reports file.
PL/SQL Stored Procedure	The execution file is a PL/SQL stored procedure.
Java Stored Procedure	The execution file is a Java stored procedure.
Java Concurrent Program	The execution file is a program written in Java.
Multi Language Function	The execution file is a function (MLS function) that supports running concurrent programs in multiple languages.
SQL*Loader	The execution file is a SQL script.
SQL*Plus	The execution file is a SQL*Plus script.
Spawned	The execution file is a C or Pro*C program.
Immediate	The execution file is a program written to run as a subroutine of the concurrent manager. We recommend against defining new immediate concurrent programs, and suggest you use either a PL/SQL Stored Procedure or a Spawned C Program instead.
Request Set Stage Function	PL/SQL Stored Function that can be used to calculate the completion statuses of request set stages.

Execution File Name

Enter the operating system name of your execution file. Some operating systems are case sensitive, so the name entered here should match the file name exactly.

Do not include spaces or periods (.) in the execution file name, unless the execution method is PL/SQL stored procedure or Request Set Stage Function.

The maximum size of an execution file name is 60 characters.

Subroutine Name

Enter the name of your C or Pro*C program subroutine here. Do not use spaces or periods (.) in this field.

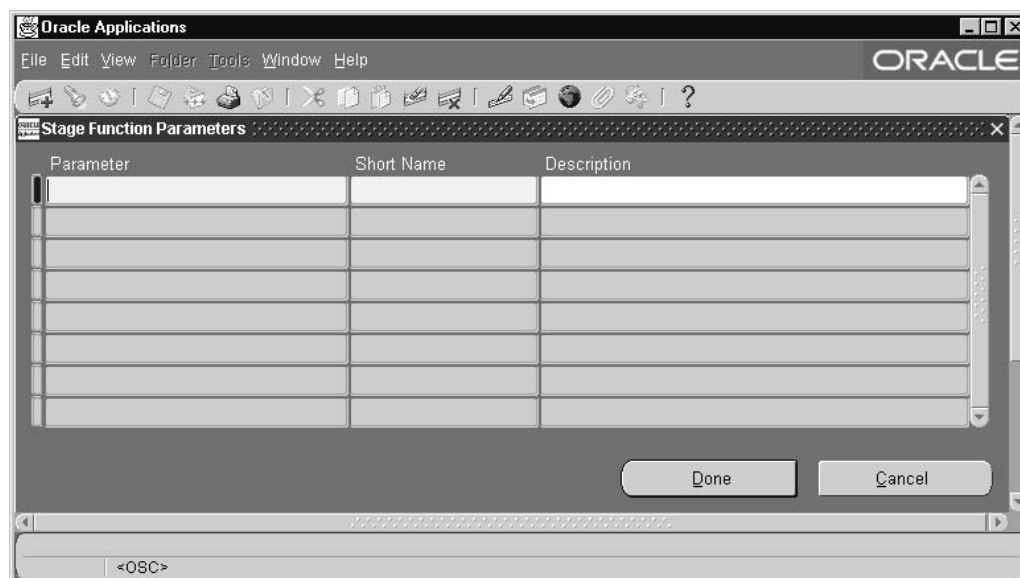
Only immediate programs or spawned programs using the Unified C API use the subroutine field.

We recommend against defining new immediate concurrent programs, and suggest you use either a PL/SQL Stored Procedure or a Spawned C Program instead.

Stage Function Parameters

The Stage Function Parameters button opens a window that allows you to enter parameters for the Request Set Stage Function. This button is only enabled when you select Request Set Stage Function as your Execution Method.

Stage Function Parameters Window



List the Parameters that your custom Stage Function uses.

Parameter

Enter a name for the Parameter. This name will be displayed in the Stage Functions Parameter window of the Request Set form.

Short Name

Enter a short name that will be used by the function to reference the parameter.

Related Topics

Concurrent Programs, page 7-51

Concurrent Programs Window

Oracle Applications

File Edit View Folder Tools Window Help

Concurrent Programs

Program ☒ Enabled

Short Name

Application

Description

Executable

Name Options

Method Priority

Request

Type

Incrementor

MLS Function

☒ Use In SRS ☐ Allow Disabled Values

☐ Run Alone ☒ Restart on System Failure

☐ Enable Trace ☐ NLS Compliant

Output

Format

☒ Save ☒ Print

Columns

Rows

Style

☐ Style Required

Printer

Copy to... Session Control Incompatibilities Parameters

<OSC> <DI>

Use this window to define and modify your concurrent programs.

Prerequisites

- ☐ Build the execution file for your concurrent program.
- ☐ Use the Concurrent Program Executables window to define a concurrent program executable for your operating system program.

Concurrent Programs Block

The combination of application name plus program name uniquely identifies your concurrent program.

Program

You see this longer, more descriptive name when you view your requests in the Requests window. If this concurrent program runs through Standard Request Submission, you see this name in the Submit Requests window when you run this program.

Short Name

Enter a brief name that Oracle Applications can use to associate your concurrent program with a concurrent program executable.

Application

The program's application determines what ORACLE username your program runs in and where to place the log and output files.

Enabled

Indicate whether users should be able to submit requests to run this program and the concurrent managers should be able to run your program.

Disabled programs do not show up in users' lists, and do not appear in any concurrent manager queues. You cannot delete a concurrent program because its information helps to provide an audit trail.

Executable**Executable: Name**

Select the concurrent program executable that can run your program. You define the executable using the Concurrent Program Executables window. You can define multiple concurrent programs using the same concurrent program executable. See: Concurrent Program Executables, page 7-48.

Executable: Options

Some execution methods, such as Oracle Reports, support additional execution options or parameters. You can enter such options in this field. The syntax varies depending on the execution method.

If you define a concurrent program with the bitmapped version of Oracle Reports, you can control the orientation of the bitmapped report by passing the ORIENTATION parameter or token. For example, to generate a report with landscape orientation, specify the following option in the Options field:

ORIENTATION=LANDSCAPE

Do not put spaces before or after the execution options values. The parameters should be separated by only a *single* space. You can also specify an orientation of PORTRAIT.

You can control the dimensions of the generated output with the PAGESIZE parameter. A specified *<width>x<height>* in the Options field overrides the values specified in the report definition. For example:

ORIENTATION=LANDSCAPE PAGESIZE=8x11.5

The units for your width and height are determined by your Oracle Reports definition. You set the units in your Oracle Reports menu under Report => Global Properties => Unit of Measurement.

If the page size you specify with the PAGESIZE parameter is smaller than what the report was designed for, your report fails with a "REP-1212" error.

Executable: Method

The execution method your concurrent program uses appears here.

Valid values are:

Spawned	Your concurrent program is a stand-alone program in C or Pro*C.
Host	Your concurrent program is written in a script for your operating system.
Immediate	Your concurrent program is a subroutine written in C or Pro*C. Immediate programs are linked in with your concurrent manager and must be included in the manager's program library.

Oracle Reports	Your concurrent program is an Oracle Reports script.
PL/SQL Stored Procedure	Your concurrent program is a stored procedure written in PL/SQL.
Java Stored Procedure	Your concurrent program is a Java stored procedure.
Java Concurrent Program	Your concurrent program is a program written in Java.
Multi Language Function	A multi-language support function (MLS function) is a function that supports running concurrent programs in multiple languages. You should not choose a multi-language function in the Executable: Name field. If you have an MLS function for your program (in addition to an appropriate concurrent program executable), you specify it in the MLS Function field.
SQL*Loader	Your concurrent program is a SQL*Loader program.
SQL*Plus	Your concurrent program is a SQL*Plus or PL/SQL script.
Request Set Stage Function	PL/SQL Stored Function that can be used to calculate the completion statuses of request set stages.

You can switch between Spawned and Immediate, overriding the execution method defined in the Concurrent Program Executable window, only if either method appears when the executable is selected and both an execution file name and subroutine name have already been specified in the Concurrent Program Executable window. See: Concurrent Program Executables, page 7-48.

Priority

You can assign this program its own priority. The concurrent managers process requests for this program at the priority you assign here.

If you do not assign a priority, the user's profile option Concurrent:Priority sets the request's priority at submission time.

Request

Type

If you want to associate your program with a predefined request type, enter the name of the request type here. The request type can limit which concurrent managers can run your concurrent program.

Incrementor

For use by Oracle Applications internal developers only. The incrementor function is shown here.

MLS Function

The MLS function, if any, used by the program.

The Multilingual Concurrent Request feature allows a user to submit a request once to be run multiple times, each time in a different language. If this program utilizes this feature the MLS function determines which installed languages are needed for the request.

See:

Oracle Applications Developer's Guide

Use in SRS

Check this box to indicate that users can submit a request to run this program from a Standard Request Submission window.

If you check this box, you must register your program parameters, if any, in the Parameters window accessed from the button at the bottom of this window.

Allow Disabled Values

If you check the Use in SRS box, you can also check this box to allow a user to enter disabled or outdated values as parameter values.

Many value sets use special table columns that indicate whether a particular value is enabled (using `ENABLED_FLAG`, `START_DATE_ACTIVE`, and `END_DATE_ACTIVE` columns). These value sets normally allow you to query disabled or outdated values but not enter them in new data. For Standard Request Submission, this means that a user would not normally be allowed to enter disabled values as report parameter values when submitting a report, even if the report is a query-only type report.

Run Alone

Indicate whether your program should run alone relative to all other programs in the same logical database. If the execution of your program interferes with the execution of all other programs in the same logical database (in other words, if your program is incompatible with all programs in its logical database, including itself), it should run alone.

You can enter any specific incompatible programs in the Incompatible Programs windows.

Enable Trace

Turns on SQL tracing when program runs.

Restart on System Failure

Use this option to indicate that this concurrent program should automatically be restarted when the concurrent manager is restored after a system failure.

NLS Compliant

This box is checked if the program allows for a user to submit a request of this program that will reflect a language and territory that are different from the language and territory that the users are operating in.

For example, users can enter orders in English in the United Kingdom, using the date and number formats appropriate in the United Kingdom, then generate invoices in German using the date and number formats appropriate to their German customers.

If this box is left blank then a user can associate any installed language with the request, but the territory will default to the territory of the concurrent manager environment.

Note that this option should be set only by the developer of the program. The program must be written as NLS Compliant to utilize this feature. See: the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

Note that this option should be set only by the developer of the program. The program must be written as NLS Compliant to utilize this feature.

Output**Format**

Select the output format from the following:

- HTML
- PCL (HP's Printer Control Language)
- PDF
- PS (Post Script)
- Text

Important: If you choose HTML or PDF as the output type with Oracle Report programs, you must use an appropriate printer driver that handles HTML or PDF files.

Save

Indicate whether to automatically save the output from this program to an operating system file when it is run. This value becomes the default for all requests submitted for this program. The output of programs with Save set to No is deleted after printing.

If this is a Standard Request Submission program, users can override this value from the Submit Requests window.

Print

If you enter No, your concurrent program's output is never sent to the printer.

Columns / Rows

Enter the minimum column and row length for this program's report output. Oracle Applications uses this information to determine which print styles can accommodate your report.

Style

The print style you select depends on your system and printer setup. Print styles include:

- 132 columns and 66 lines (Landscape)
- 180 columns and 66 lines (Landwide)
- 80 columns and 66 lines (Portrait)
- 132 columns and 62 lines (A4)

Your list is limited to those styles that meet your program's columns and row length requirements.

Style Required

If your program requires a specific print style (for example, a checkwriting report), use this check box to enforce that print style.

Printer

If you want to restrict your program's output to a single printer, enter the name of the printer to which you want to send your output. If your program has minimum or maximum columns or rows defined, your list of values is limited to those printers that can support your program's requirements.

Users cannot override your choice of printer from the Submit Requests or Requests windows.

Concurrent Programs Buttons

Copy to...

Choose this button to create another concurrent program using the same executable, request and report

	information. You can elect to copy the incompatibility and parameter details as well.
Session Control	Choose this window to specify options for the database session of the concurrent program when it is executed.
Incompatibilities	Choose this button to open the Incompatible Programs window.
Parameters	Choose this button to open the Concurrent Program Parameters window.

Copy to Window

Create another concurrent program using the same executable, request and report information as the current program. You can optionally copy the incompatibility and parameter details information as well.

Related Topics

See: Incompatible Programs Window, page 7-57

Concurrent Program Parameters Window, page 7-58

Concurrent Program Executables, page 7-48

Session Control Window

Use this window to specify options for the database session of the concurrent program when it is executed.

Consumer Group

Optionally specify the resource consumer group for the concurrent program.

See: *Resource Consumer Groups in Oracle Applications*, page 12-4

Rollback Segment

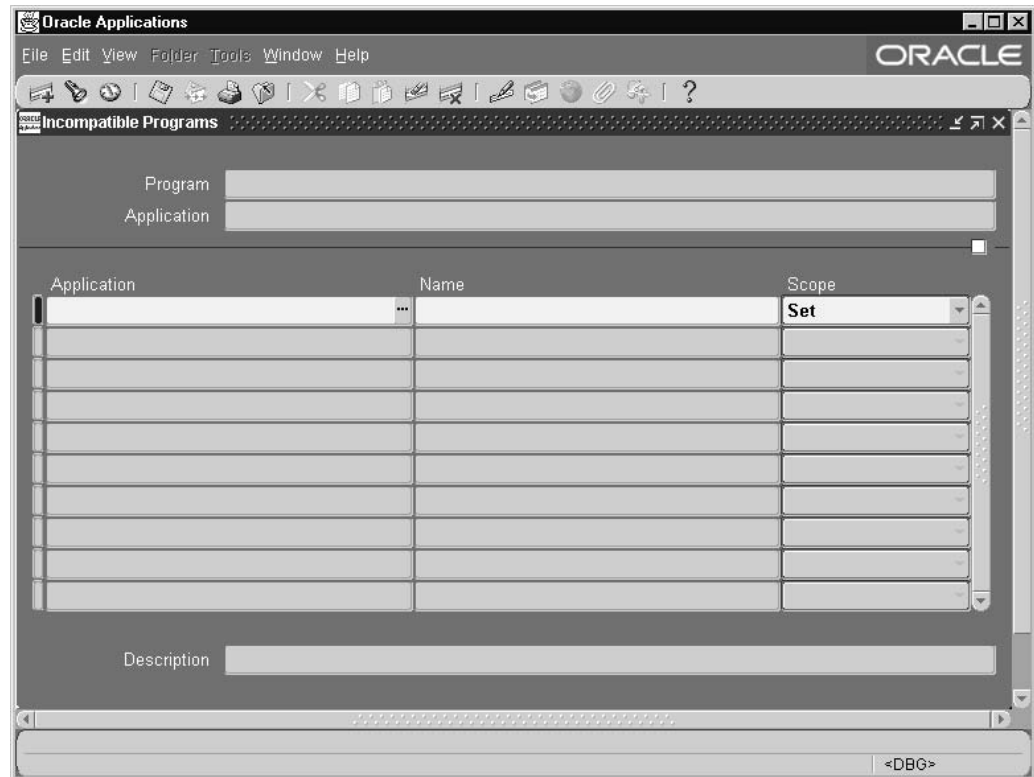
Optionally specify a rollback segment to be used with the concurrent program. This rollback segment will be used instead of the default and will be used up until the first commit.

Important: If you specify a rollback segment here, your concurrent program must use the APIs FND_CONCURRENT.AF_COMMIT and FND_CONCURRENT.AF_ROLLBACK to use the specified rollback segment. See: the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

Optimizer Mode

Optionally specify an optimizer mode. You can choose ALL_ROWS, FIRST_ROWS, Rules, or Choose. You would specify an optimizer mode only for a custom program that may not perform well with the default cost-based optimizer (CBO) and needs tuning. You can use a different optimizer mode until your program is tuned for CBO.

Incompatible Programs Window



Identify programs that should not run simultaneously with your concurrent program because they might interfere with its execution. You can specify your program as being incompatible with itself.

Application

Although the default for this field is the application of your concurrent program, you can enter any valid application name.

Name

The program name and application you specify must uniquely identify a concurrent program.

Your list displays the user-friendly name of the program, the short name, and the description of the program.

Scope

Enter Set or Program Only to specify whether your concurrent program is incompatible with this program and all its child requests (Set) or only with this program (Program Only).

Type

Enter Domain or Global. If you choose Domain, the incompatibility is resolved at a domain-specific level. If you choose Global, then this concurrent program will be considered globally incompatible with your concurrent program, regardless of which domain it is running in.

Related Topics

Concurrent Programs Window, page 7-51

Concurrent Program Parameters Window, page 7-58

Defining Program Incompatibility Rules, page 7-19

Modifying an Incompatible Programs List, page 7-38

Concurrent Program Parameters Window

Oracle Applications

File Edit View Folder Tools Window Help

ORACLE

Concurrent Program Parameters

Program

Application

Conflicts Domain

Security Group

Seq	Parameter	Description	Enabled
			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
			<input type="checkbox"/>
			<input type="checkbox"/>
			<input type="checkbox"/>

Validation

Value Set

Default Type

☐ Required ☐ Enable Security

Description

Default Value

Range

☒ Display

Display Size

Concatenated Description Size 25

Description Size 50

Prompt

Token

<DBG>

Enter and update the program parameters that you wish to pass to the program executable. Program parameters defined here should match the variables in your execution file.

Conflicts Domain Parameter

Enter the parameter which will hold the value of the conflict domain of the program. For information on conflict domain parameters, see *Concurrent Conflict Domains*, page 7-21.

Enter the parameter which will hold the value of the conflict domain of the program. .

Security Group

This field is for HRMS security only. See: *Customizing, Reporting, and System Administration in Oracle HRMS*.

Sequence

Choose the sequence numbers that specify the order in which your program receives parameter values from the concurrent manager.

Enabled

Disabled parameters do not display at request submission time and are not passed to your execution file.

Argument Detail

You specify information about your parameter almost exactly as you define a flexfield segment.

Validation Information**Value Set**

Enter the name of the value set you want your parameter to use for validation. You can only select from independent, table, and non-validated value sets.

The maximum size of your value set is 240 characters.

Important: If you are using a value set of dates, this value set should have a format type of either Standard Date or Standard DateTime if you are using the Multilingual Request feature.

Default Type

If you want to set a default value for this parameter, identify the type of value you need.

Valid types include:

Constant	The default value can be any literal value.
Profile	The default value is the current value in the user profile option defined in the Default Value field. Use the profile option name, not the end-user name. You do not need to include \$PROFILE\$.
SQL Statement	The default value is determined by the SQL statement you defined in the Default Value field.
Segment	The default value is the value entered in a prior segment of the same parameter window.

Default Value

You can enter a default value for the parameter. This default value for your parameter automatically appears when you enter your parameter window. You determine whether the default value is a constant or a context-dependent value by choosing the default type.

Your default value should be a valid value for your value set. Otherwise you see an error message when you enter your parameter window on the Run Request window and your default value does not appear.

Valid values for each default type include:

Constant	Enter any literal value for the default value.
Profile	The default value is the current value of the user profile option you specify here. Enter the profile option name, not the end-user name.
Segment	The default value is the value entered in a prior segment of the same flexfield window. Enter the name of the segment whose value you want to copy.

SQL Statement

The default value is determined by the SQL statement you enter here. Your SQL statement must return exactly one row and one column in all cases.

Required

If the program executable file requires an argument, you should require it for your concurrent program.

Enable Security

If the value set for this parameter does not allow security rules, then this field is display only. Otherwise you can elect to apply any security rules defined for this value set to affect your parameter list.

Range

Choose either Low or High if you want to validate your parameter value against the value of another parameter in this structure. Parameters with a range of Low must appear before parameters with a range of High (the low parameter must have a lower number than the high parameter). For example, if you plan two parameters named "Start Date" and "End Date," you may want to force users to enter an end date later than the start date. You could assign "Start Date" a range of Low and "End Date" a range of High. In this example, the parameter you name "Start Date" must appear before the parameter you name "End Date."

If you choose Low for one parameter, you must also choose High for another parameter in that structure (and vice versa). Otherwise you cannot commit your changes.

Window Information**Display**

Indicate whether to display this parameter in the Parameters window when a user submits a request to run the program from the Submit Requests window.

You should provide a default type and value for any non-displayed parameter.

Display Size

Enter the field length in characters for this parameter. The user sees and fills in the field in the Parameters window of the Submit Requests window.

You should ensure that the total of the value set maximum sizes (not the display sizes) for all of your parameters, plus the number of separators you need (number of parameters minus one), does not add up to more than 240. If your program values' concatenated length exceeds 240, you may experience truncation of your data in some forms.

Description Size

Enter the display length in characters for the parameter value description. Your window may show fewer characters of your description than you specify here if there is not enough room (determined by the sum of your longest prompt plus your display size for this parameter plus seven). However, your window does not display more characters of the description than you specify here.

Prompt

A user sees the prompt instead of the parameter name in the Parameters window of the Submit Requests window.

Concatenated Description Size

Enter the display length in characters for the parameter value description. The user sees the parameter value in the Parameter Description field of the Submit Requests and

View Requests forms. The Parameter Description field concatenates all the parameter values for the concurrent program.

Tip: We recommend that you set the Concatenated Description Size for each of your parameters so that the total Concatenated Description Size for your program is 80 or less, since most video screens are 80 characters wide.

Token

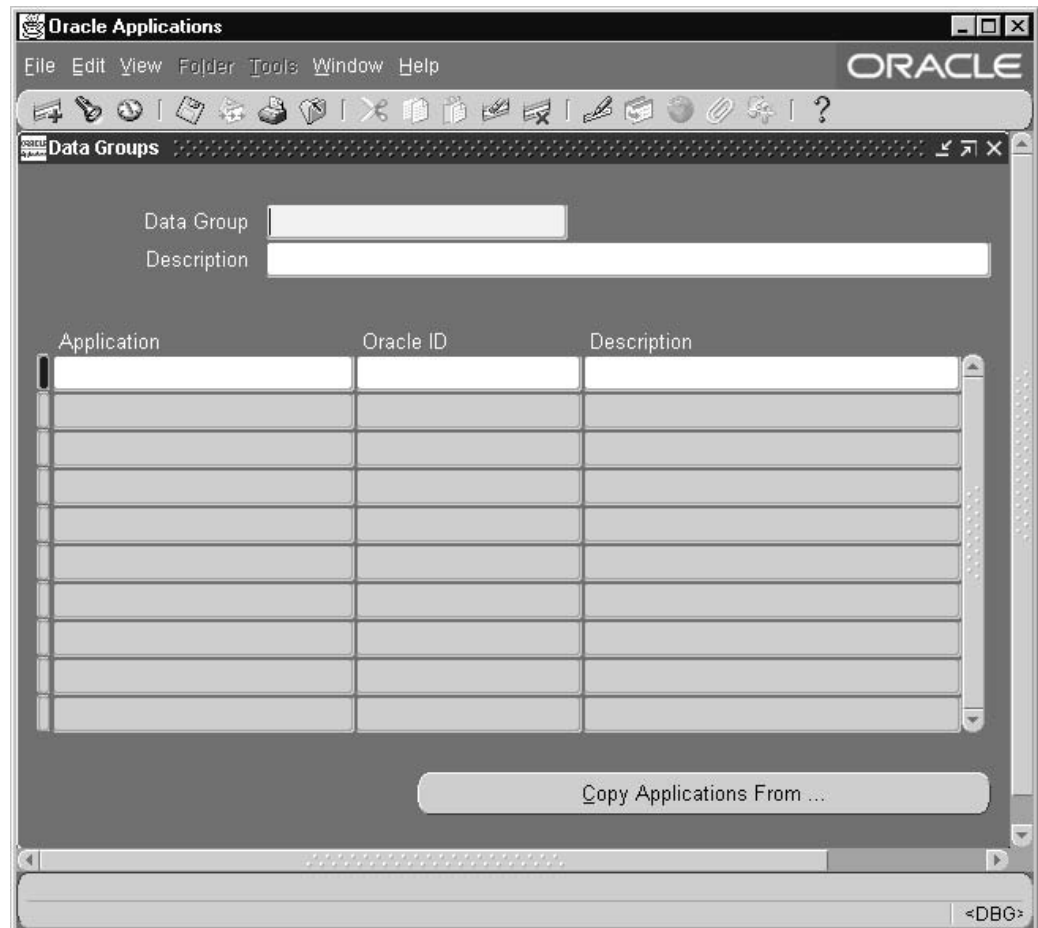
For a parameter in an Oracle Reports program, the keyword or parameter appears here. The value is case insensitive. For other types of programs, you can skip this field.

Related Topics

Concurrent Programs, page 7-51

See: Incompatible Programs Window, page 7-57

Data Groups Window



Use this window to define data groups. A data group is a list of Oracle Applications and the ORACLE usernames assigned to each application.

- If a custom application is developed with Oracle Application Object Library, it may be assigned an ORACLE username, registered with Oracle Applications, and included in a data group.

An ORACLE username allows access to an application's tables in an ORACLE database. All data groups automatically include an entry for Application Object Library.

- A concurrent manager running reports or programs under Oracle Applications refers to a data group to identify the ORACLE username it uses to access an application's tables in the database.
- Transaction managers running synchronous programs can only run programs submitted from responsibilities assigned the same data group as the transaction manager. If you create custom data groups, you should create new transaction managers for the applications that use transaction managers. Consult your product documentation to determine if your application uses transaction managers.

Each responsibility within Oracle Applications is assigned a data group.

During installation or upgrading of Oracle Applications, a standard data group is defined, pairing each installed application with an ORACLE username (note: a standard data group is defined for each set of books). You cannot change or delete the predefined values for *Application* or *ORACLE username* in a Standard data group. However, you may:

- Modify the Tool ORACLE username and description associated with an Application-ORACLE username pair.
- Add new Application-ORACLE username pairs to the group.

Data Groups Block

Create a new data group, or modify an existing data group.

You cannot change or delete the predefined values for *Application* or *ORACLE username* in a Standard data group. However, you may modify the Tool ORACLE username and description, or add new Application-ORACLE username pairs to a Standard group.

Data Group

A data group is uniquely identified by its name. You cannot create a data group with a name already in use.

Once saved, data group names cannot be edited.

Application-ORACLE ID Pairs Block

Pair applications with ORACLE usernames.

When you copy a data group, each application, its assigned ORACLE username, and, if present, its Tool ORACLE username and description, appear in this zone automatically. All data groups automatically include an entry for Application Object Library.

Application

Within each data group, an application can be listed only one time.

Oracle ID

Select the ORACLE ID you want to assign to an application. An application uses an ORACLE ID to access tables in the database. Each ORACLE ID allows access to a predefined set of tables in the database.

Copy Applications From...

Use this button to copy an existing data group, then add or delete application-ORACLE username pairs to create a new data group.

Related Topics

Overview of Concurrent Programs and Requests, page 7-1

Defining Data Groups, page 7-23

Using Data Groups, page 7-24

Modifying Data Groups, page 7-25

Concurrent Programs HTML UI

Search for Concurrent Programs

Use this page to search for defined concurrent programs.

From this page you can create a new concurrent program or update an existing one.

Create Concurrent Program

The following are prerequisites to defining a concurrent program:

- Build the execution file for your concurrent program.
- Define a concurrent program executable for your operating system program file.

The combination of application name plus program name uniquely identifies your concurrent program.

Enabled

Indicate whether users should be able to submit requests to run this program and the concurrent managers should be able to run your program.

Disabled programs do not show up in users' lists, and do not appear in any concurrent manager queues. You cannot delete a concurrent program because its information helps to provide an audit trail.

Program

You see this longer, more descriptive name when you view your requests in the Requests window. If this concurrent program runs through Standard Request Submission, you see this name in the Submit Requests window when you run this program.

Application

The program's application determines what ORACLE username your program runs in and where to place the log and output files.

Short Name

Enter a brief name that Oracle Applications can use to associate your concurrent program with a concurrent program executable.

Program Type

Available options are:

- Archive - reserved for future use only.
- Autoconfig Type
- Cloning - reserved for internal use only.
- Generic
- Purge - for concurrent programs listed in the Oracle Applications Manager dashboard used for purging data.
- Refresh
- Truncate

Executable

Name

Select the concurrent program executable that can run your program. You define the executable using the Concurrent Program Executables window. You can define multiple concurrent programs using the same concurrent program executable.

Parameters

Parameters for the concurrent program are listed here. To add a parameter, click on the **Create** button.

Incompatible Programs

Identify programs that should not run simultaneously with your concurrent program because they might interfere with its execution. You can specify your program as being incompatible with itself.

Conflict Domain Parameter

Enter the parameter which will hold the value of the conflict domain of the program.

For information on conflict domain parameters, see *Concurrent Conflict Domains*, page 7-21.

Run Alone

Indicate whether your program should run alone relative to all other programs in the same logical database. If the execution of your program interferes with the execution of all other programs in the same logical database (in other words, if your program is incompatible with all programs in its logical database, including itself), it should run alone.

You can enter any specific incompatible programs in the Incompatible Programs windows.

Application

Although the default for this field is the application of your concurrent program, you can enter any valid application name.

Name

The program name and application you specify must uniquely identify a concurrent program.

Your list displays the user-friendly name of the program, the short name, and the description of the program.

Scope

Enter Set or Program Only to specify whether your concurrent program is incompatible with this program and all its child requests (Set) or only with this program (Program Only).

Type

Choose the type of incompatibility, either Domain or Global.

For information on incompatibility types, see *Incompatible and Run Alone Programs*, page 7-19.

Request**Request Settings****Type**

If you want to associate your program with a predefined request type, enter the name of the request type here. The request type can limit which concurrent managers can run your concurrent program.

Incrementor

For use by Oracle Applications internal developers only. The incrementor function is shown here.

MLS Function

The MLS (Multi-Lingual Support) function, if any, used by the program.

The Multilingual Concurrent Request feature allows a user to submit a request once to be run multiple times, each time in a different language. If this program utilizes this feature the MLS function determines which installed languages are needed for the request. See the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide* for more information.

Activity Summarizer

For internal use only.

The Activity Summarizer is a PL/SQL subprogram summarizing about the purgable data in application tables for a concurrent program of type "Purge". It returns a list of table names and rows to be purged. Oracle developers register the PL/SQL procedure as summarizer procedure for the concurrent program.

Refresh Portlet

For internal use only.

Concurrent programs that produce data for a portlet can call a function to refresh the portlet's data. The value for Refresh Portlet indicates when the function should be called.

Allow Multiple Pending Requests

If this box is checked, multiple pending requests are allowed; otherwise, only one pending request is allowed.

Use in SRS

Check the SRS (Standard Request Submission) box to indicate that users can submit a request to run this program from a Standard Request Submission window.

If you check this box, you must register your program parameters, if any, in the Parameters window accessed from the button at the bottom of this window.

Allow Disabled Values

If you check the Use in SRS box, you can also check this box to allow a user to enter disabled or outdated values as parameter values.

Many value sets use special table columns that indicate whether a particular value is enabled (using `ENABLED_FLAG`, `START_DATE_ACTIVE`, and `END_DATE_ACTIVE` columns). These value sets normally allow you to query disabled or outdated values but not enter them in new data. For Standard Request Submission, this means that a user would not normally be allowed to enter disabled values as report parameter values when submitting a report, even if the report is a query-only type report.

Restart on System Failure

Use this option to indicate that this concurrent program should automatically be restarted when the concurrent manager is restored after a system failure.

NLS Compliant

The NLS (National Language Support) box is checked if the program allows for a user to submit a request of this program that will reflect a language and territory that are different from the language and territory that the users are operating in.

For example, users can enter orders in English in the United Kingdom, using the date and number formats appropriate in the United Kingdom, then generate invoices in German using the date and number formats appropriate to their German customers.

If this box is left blank then a user can associate any installed language with the request, but the territory will default to the territory of the concurrent manager environment.

Note that this option should be set only by the developer of the program. The program must be written as NLS Compliant to utilize this feature. See: *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

Output Preferences**Save**

Indicate whether to automatically save the output from this program to an operating system file when it is run. This value becomes the default for all requests submitted for this program. The output of programs with Save set to No is deleted after printing.

If this is a Standard Request Submission program, users can override this value from the Submit Requests window.

Print

If you enter No, your concurrent program's output is never sent to the printer.

Format

Select the output format from the following:

The format that you select here is used by the concurrent manager to determine how to display your report output. You must ensure that the output format you choose matches the format generated by your report, unless the report is an Oracle Reports report in which case the format you select, determines the output generated.

- HTML
- PCL (HP's Printer Control Language)
- PDF
- PS (Post Script)
- Text

Important: If you choose HTML or PDF as the output type with Oracle Report programs, you must use an appropriate printer driver that handles HTML or PDF files.

Columns / Rows

Enter the minimum column and row length for this program's report output. Oracle Applications uses this information to determine which print styles can accommodate your report.

Style

The print style you select depends on your system and printer setup. Print styles include:

- 132 columns and 66 lines (Landscape)
- 180 columns and 66 lines (Landwide)
- 80 columns and 66 lines (Portrait)
- 132 columns and 62 lines (A4)

Your list is limited to those styles that meet your program's columns and row length requirements.

Style Required

If your program requires a specific print style (for example, a checkwriting report), use this check box to enforce that print style.

Onsite Setting

General

Priority

You can assign this program its own priority. The concurrent managers process requests for this program at the priority you assign here.

If you do not assign a priority, the user's profile option Concurrent:Priority sets the request's priority at submission time.

Printer

If you want to restrict your program's output to a single printer, enter the name of the printer to which you want to send your output. If your program has minimum or maximum columns or rows defined, your list of values is limited to those printers that can support your program's requirements.

Users cannot override your choice of printer from the Submit Requests or Requests windows.

Security Group

This field is for HRMS security only. See: *Customizing, Reporting, and System Administration in Oracle HRMS*.

Enable Trace

Turns on SQL tracing when program runs.

Enable Time Statistics

Enables the collection of timed statistics, such as CPU and elapsed times, by the SQL trace facility, as well as the collection of various statistics in the dynamic performance tables.

Delete Log File

By default, a log file is created for each concurrent request. If such log files are not necessary for requests for this concurrent program, you can specify that the log file is automatically deleted for each request of this program.

Session Controls

Use this region to specify options for the database session of the concurrent program when it is executed.

Consumer Group

Optionally specify the resource consumer group for the concurrent program. See: *Resource Consumer Groups in Oracle Applications*, page 12-4

Rollback Segment

Optionally specify a rollback segment to be used with the concurrent program. This rollback segment will be used instead of the default and will be used up until the first commit.

Important: If you specify a rollback segment here, your concurrent program must use the APIs FND_CONCURRENT.AF_COMMIT and FND_CONCURRENT.AF_ROLLBACK to use the specified rollback segment. See: *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

Optimizer Mode

Optionally specify an optimizer mode. You can choose ALL_ROWS, FIRST_ROWS, Rules, or Choose. You would specify an optimizer mode only for a custom program that may not perform well with the default cost-based optimizer (CBO) and needs tuning. You can use a different optimizer mode until your program is tuned for CBO.

Statistics

This region provides statistics on earlier requests for a defined concurrent program.

Summary information is collected when a request is completed, and stored in the table fnd_conc_prog_on-site_info.

Concurrent Program - Add Parameter

Enter and update the program parameters that you wish to pass to the program executable. Program parameters defined here should match the variables in your execution file.

General

Enabled

Disabled parameters do not display at request submission time and are not passed to your execution file.

Sequence

Choose the sequence numbers that specify the order in which your program receives parameter values from the concurrent manager.

Parameter

Enter the parameter name. The value is case insensitive.

Validation

Value Set

Enter the name of the value set you want your parameter to use for validation. You can only select from independent, table, and non-validated value sets.

The maximum size of your value set is 240 characters.

Important: If you are using a value set of dates, this value set should have a format type of either Standard Date or Standard DateTime if you are using the Multilingual Request feature.

Default Type

If you want to set a default value for this parameter, identify the type of value you need.

Valid types include:

Constant	The default value can be any literal value.
Profile	The default value is the current value in the user profile option defined in the Default Value field. Use the profile option name, not the end-user name. You do not need to include \$PROFILE\$.
SQL Statement	The default value is determined by the SQL statement you defined in the Default Value field.
Segment	The default value is the value entered in a prior segment of the same parameter window.

Default Value

You can enter a default value for the parameter. This default value for your parameter automatically appears when you enter your parameter window. You determine whether the default value is a constant or a context-dependent value by choosing the default type.

Your default value should be a valid value for your value set. Otherwise you see an error message when you enter your parameter window on the Run Request window and your default value does not appear.

Valid values for each default type include:

Constant	Enter any literal value for the default value.
Profile	The default value is the current value of the user profile option you specify here. Enter the profile option name, not the end-user name.
Segment	The default value is the value entered in a prior segment of the same flexfield window. Enter the name of the segment whose value you want to copy.
SQL Statement	The default value is determined by the SQL statement you enter here. Your SQL statement must return exactly one row and one column in all cases.

Required

If the program executable file requires an argument, you should require it for your concurrent program.

Enable Security

If the value set for this parameter does not allow security rules, then this field is display only. Otherwise you can elect to apply any security rules defined for this value set to affect your parameter list.

Range

Choose either Low or High if you want to validate your parameter value against the value of another parameter in this structure. Parameters with a range of Low must appear before parameters with a range of High (the low parameter must have a lower number than the high parameter). For example, if you plan two parameters named "Start Date" and "End Date", you may want to force users to enter an end date later than the start date. You could assign "Start Date" a range of Low and "End Date" a range of High. In this example, the parameter you name "Start Date" must appear before the parameter you name "End Date".

If you choose Low for one parameter, you must also choose High for another parameter in that structure (and vice versa). Otherwise you cannot commit your changes.

If your value set is of the type Pair, this field is display only. The value defaults to Pair.

Display

Display

Indicate whether to display this parameter in the Parameters window when a user submits a request to run the program from the Submit Requests window.

You should provide a default type and value for any non-displayed parameter.

Token

For a parameter in an Oracle Reports program, the keyword or parameter appears here. The value is case insensitive. For other types of programs, you can skip this field.

Description Size

Enter the display length in characters for the parameter value description. Your window may show fewer characters of your description than you specify here if there is not enough room (determined by the sum of your longest prompt plus your display size for this parameter plus seven). However, your window does not display more characters of the description than you specify here.

Display Size

Enter the field length in characters for this parameter. The user sees and fills in the field in the Parameters window of the Submit Requests window.

You should ensure that the total of the value set maximum sizes (not the display sizes) for all of your parameters, plus the number of separators you need (number of parameters minus one), does not add up to more than 240. If your program values' concatenated length exceeds 240, you may experience truncation of your data in some forms.

The default is the name of the parameter.

Prompt

A user sees the prompt instead of the parameter name in the Parameters window of the Submit Requests window.

Concatenated Description Size

Enter the display length in characters for the parameter value description. The user sees the parameter value in the Parameter Description field of the Submit Requests and View Requests forms. The Parameter Description field concatenates all the parameter values for the concurrent program.

Tip: We recommend that you set the Concatenated Description Size for each of your parameters so that the total Concatenated Description Size for your program is 80 or less, since most video screens are 80 characters wide.

Defining Concurrent Managers

Defining Managers and their Work Shifts in the Oracle Forms UI

This essay explains how you can define concurrent managers and specify when a manager is enabled.

A concurrent manager is itself a concurrent program that starts other concurrent programs running. When an application user submits a request to run a program, the request is entered into a database table that lists all of the requests. Concurrent managers read requests from the table and start programs running. See: Concurrent Managers, page 8-46.

In this essay, we explain how to specify when a manager is enabled, how to use managers to balance your applications processing workload across different time periods, and how to associate a library of immediate concurrent programs to be called by your manager.

Defining new managers

You can define as many concurrent managers as you want. When you define a manager, you:

- Assign a predefined library of *immediate* concurrent programs to your manager.
Immediate concurrent programs are subroutines associated with concurrent managers. All other concurrent programs are spawned as independent processes at run time.
- Assign work shifts to your manager, which determines what days and times the manager works.
- For each work shift, you define the maximum number of operating system processes the manager can run concurrently to read requests (start programs) during the work shift.
- Specialize your manager to read only certain kinds of requests.

Program Libraries

For a program that is spawned, a concurrent manager initiates or spawns another operating system process. A program that is immediate runs as part of the concurrent manager's operating system process.

A program library contains immediate concurrent programs that can be called by your manager.

An immediate concurrent program must be registered with a program library. Application developers using Oracle Application Object Library can register concurrent programs with a program library.

The Oracle Application Object Library FNDLIBR program library contains Oracle Applications immediate concurrent programs, and is assigned to the Standard concurrent manager. In most cases, you will include the FNDLIBR library with your manager's definition.

The Internal and the Standard concurrent managers

Oracle System Administration predefines two managers for you:

- The Internal Concurrent Manager, which functions as the "boss" of all the other managers. The Internal Concurrent Manager starts up, verifies the status of, resets, and shuts down the individual managers.

You cannot alter the definition of the Internal Concurrent Manager.

- A manager named Standard. The Standard manager accepts any and all requests; it has *no specialization*. The Standard manager is active all the time; it works 365 days a year, 24 hours a day.

Warning: You should not alter the definition of the Standard concurrent manager. If you do, and you have not defined additional managers to accept your requests, some programs may not run. Use the Standard manager as a safety net, a manager who is always available to run any request. Define additional managers to handle your installation site's specific needs.

Transaction Managers

While conventional concurrent managers let you execute long-running, data-intensive application programs *asynchronously*, transaction managers support *synchronous* processing of particular requests from client machines. A request from a client program to run a server-side program synchronously causes a transaction manager to run it immediately, and then to return a status to the client program.

Transaction managers are implemented as immediate concurrent programs. At runtime, concurrent processing starts a number of these managers. Rather than polling the concurrent requests table to determine what to do, a transaction manager waits to be signalled by a client program. The execution of the requested transaction program takes place on the server, transparent to the client and with minimal time delay. At the end of program execution, the client program is notified of the outcome by a completion message and a set of return values.

Communication with a transaction manager is automatic. The transaction manager mechanism does not establish an ongoing connection between the client and the transaction manager processes. The intent of the mechanism is for a small pool of server processes to service a large number of clients with real-time response.

Each transaction manager can process only the programs contained in its program library. Oracle Applications developers using Oracle Application Object Library can register transaction programs with a program library.

A transaction manager is associated with a particular data group, and uses that data group to connect to the database. Transaction managers can only process requests submitted from responsibilities associated with the same data group.

If you create custom data groups, you should define new transaction managers (using the predefined program libraries associated with the seeded transaction managers) for each application in your data group that uses transaction managers.

Related Topics

Administer Concurrent Managers, page 8-39
Concurrent Managers, page 8-46
Work Shift Definitions, page 8-3
Using Work Shifts to Balance Processing Workload, page 8-5
Using Time-Based Queues, page 8-6
Work Shift by Manager Report, page 8-13
Work Shifts Report, page 8-13
Work Shifts, page 8-51

Work Shift Definitions

When you define a concurrent manager, you assign one or more work shifts to it. Work shifts determine when the manager operates. You define work shifts using the Work Shifts form.

Disabling a work shift

If you define a period of time as a work shift, but do not necessarily want to use the work shift, you can:

- Not assign the work shift to a concurrent manager
- Assign the number of target processes for the work shift as zero (0), on the Define Manager form.
- Delete a work shift assignment using the Define Manager form.

Work Shifts and Hours of the Day

Work shifts can run twenty-four hours a day, from midnight till the next midnight. In military time this is defined as:

- 12:00am 00:00:00
- 11:59:59pm 23:59:59

Using work shifts to run through midnight

The military time clock for a twenty-four period starts and stops at midnight.

If you do not want a work shift to run twenty-four hours a day, but you do want to run programs continuously past 12:00 am, you must define two work shifts:

- The first work shift stops at 23:59 (11:59pm).

- The second work shift starts at 00:00 (12:00 am).

For example, you want to run some data-intensive programs during the night, when most of your employees are away from the job site. You define two work shifts which you assign to this manager.

- The first work shift starts at 20:00 (8:00pm) and stops at 23:59 (11:59pm).
- The second work shift starts at 00:00 (12:00am) and stops at 05:00 (5:00am).

Overlapping Work Shifts - Priority Levels

If you assign overlapping work shifts to a concurrent manager, the work shift with the **more specific time period** takes effect for the overlapping time period. For example, a work shift for July 4 overrides a work shift from 9:00 am to 5:00 pm on Monday through Friday.

The following table presents a descending list of priority levels for overlapping work shifts. A work shift with a specific date and range of times has the highest priority. The "Standard" work shift has the lowest priority.

Priority	Work Shift Definition	Example
1	Specific date and range of times	April 15, 2000 8:00am-5:00pm
2	Specific date and no range of times	April 15, 2000
3	Range of days and range of times	Monday-Friday 8:00am-5:00pm
4	Range of days and no range of times	Monday-Friday
5	Range of times and no date and no range of days	8:00am-5:00pm
6	Standard work shift. No date, days, or time defined.	Standard work shift is 365 days a year, 24 hours a day.

Overlapping Work Shifts with the same priority

When you have overlapping work shifts that have the same level of priority, the work shift with the **largest target processes** takes effect.

For example, you have two work shifts with a range of days and a range of times. You have a "Weekday" work shift from 9:00 am to 5:00 pm on Monday through Friday with 4 target processes.

You also have a "Lunch" work shift from 11:00 am to 1:00 pm on Monday through Friday with 8 target processes.

The "Lunch" work shift takes effect from 11:00 am to 1:00 pm (Mon.-Fri.) because it has the larger number of target processes.

Related Topics

Defining Managers and their Work Shifts, page 8-1

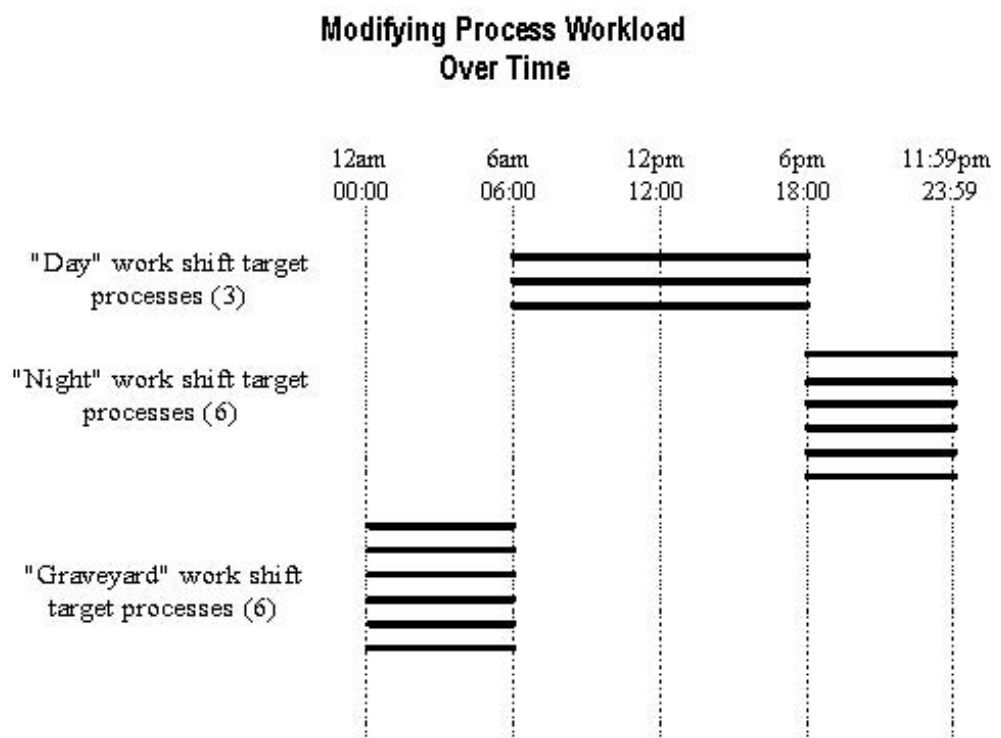
Using Work Shifts to Balance Processing Workload

Part of a manager's definition is how many operating system processes it can devote to reading requests. For each of these processes, referred to as a *target process*, a manager can start one concurrent program.

For each work shift you assign to a manager, you define a number of target processes.

By using work shifts with different numbers of target processes, you can modify your concurrent processing workload according to the day, time of day, and even specific dates.

The figure below illustrates how, by using three work shifts, a manager can be defined to run three programs concurrently from 6:00am-6:00pm, and six programs concurrently from 6:00pm-6:00am.



Related Topics

Defining Managers and their Work Shifts, page 8-1

Work Shift Definitions, page 8-3

Using Time-Based Queues, page 8-6

Work Shift by Manager Report, page 8-13

Work Shifts Report, page 8-13

Work Shifts, page 8-51

Using Time-Based Queues

You can create several time-based queues by defining managers to run programs based on how long those programs have typically run in the past. That is, you can specialize managers to segregate requests according to how long those requests take to run.

To do this, use the Completed Concurrent Requests Report in the System Administrator's report security group. This report lists the actual start date and time and actual completion date and time for concurrent programs that completed running. See: Completed Concurrent Requests Report, page 8-12.

Tip: Run your concurrent programs at different times, perhaps, late at night and then again during the midafternoon, to determine processing time during different workload periods.

For example, based on actual time-to-completion, you can specialize different managers to run the following types of programs:

- inventory pick lists
- payable check runs
- postings
- invoice imports

Augment this approach by defining an "overflow" manager, for example, a manager who can accommodate programs directed to one (or more) of the managers above, but whose work shift is restricted to say, 2:00am-4:00am (02:00-04:00). If some of your long-running programs have not started running before the "overflow" work shift begins, then an additional manager is enabled to accommodate those programs.

Further augment this approach with an "exception" manager defined for *must have* requests. For example, a manager that can run:

- certain programs that must complete by a certain time. The "must-have" manager can be specialized to only read requests for certain programs.
- programs submitted by a particular user, for example, the Company Controller. You can specialize a manager to only read requests from a single application user. You can even define a second, higher-priority, username for a user to sign on with.

Related Topics

Overview of Concurrent Processing, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*

Defining Managers and their Work Shifts, page 8-1

Work Shift Definitions, page 8-3

Using Work Shifts to Balance Processing Workload, page 8-5

Work Shift by Manager Report, page 8-13

Work Shifts Report, page 8-13

Specializing Managers to run only certain programs, page 8-14

Grouping Programs by Request Type, page 8-28

Administer Concurrent Managers, page 8-39

Creating Services within Oracle Applications Manager

Creating and Editing a Concurrent Manager

Use this page to create a new concurrent manager.

Navigation: Site Map > Request Processing Managers (under Application Services) > (B) Create New or (B) Edit

You can define when a manager runs and how many programs the manager can start simultaneously when you assign work shifts to the manager. Specify which programs a manager can start by defining specialization rules.

General

Enter the following information:

Enabled

Check this box if the manager is enabled.

Manager

The name of the manager.

Short Name

The short name of the manager.

Application

The application name does not prevent a manager from starting programs associated with other applications. To restrict a manager to only running programs associated with certain applications, go to the Rules section.

The combination of an application and the name you define for your manager uniquely identifies the manager.

Cache Size

Enter the number of requests your manager remembers each time it reads which requests to run. For example, if a manager's work shift has 1 target process and a cache value of 3, it will read three requests, and try to run those three requests before reading any new requests.

Tip: Enter a value of 1 when defining a manager that runs long, time-consuming jobs, and a value of 3 or 4 for managers that run small, quick jobs.

Program Library

Select a library of immediate concurrent programs to make available to your manager. Your manager can only run immediate concurrent programs that are registered in the selected program library. Concurrent managers can run only those immediate

concurrent programs listed in their program library. They can also run concurrent programs that use any other type of concurrent program executable.

Resources Group

Optionally enter the resource consumer group for this manager.

Rules

Use the Rules section to specialize your manager to run only certain kinds of requests. Without specialization rules, a manager accepts requests to start any concurrent program.

A listing of available rules is displayed. Check the **Include** check box for a rule to include it.

The following information is also given for each rule:

- Type
- Application
- Name
- Description

To edit any of this information, use the **Edit** button. Use the **Remove** button to remove a rule from the list. To create a new rule, use the **Create New** dropdown list and click **Go**.

Work Shifts

Use the Work Shifts section to assign work shifts to your manager. A work shift defines the dates and times the manager is enabled, as well as the number of processes the manager can start running during the work shift.

To add a work shift, use the **Add from Available Shifts** button.

For each work shift listed, the following is displayed:

Sleep Seconds

The sleep time for your manager during this work shift. Sleep time is the number of seconds your manager waits between checking the list of pending concurrent requests (concurrent requests waiting to be started).

Tip: Set the sleep time to be very brief during periods when the number of requests submitted is expected to be high.

Processes

The number of operating system processes you want your work shift to run simultaneously. Each process can run a concurrent request.

For example, if a work shift is defined with three (3) target processes, the manager can run up to three requests simultaneously.

Nodes

If you are operating in a parallel concurrent processing environment and you want your manager to operate on a specific node, select the name of the node.

The primary node, if available, is the node your concurrent manager operates on. If the primary node or the database instance on it goes down, your concurrent manager migrates to its secondary node. Your concurrent manager migrates back to its primary node when that node becomes available.

Nodes must be previously registered with Oracle Applications, using the Nodes form in Oracle Applications.

Creating and Editing a Transaction Manager

Use this page to create a new Transaction Manager. Transaction Managers handle synchronous requests from client machines.

Navigation: Site Map > Transaction Managers (under Application Services) > (B) Create New or (B) Edit

General

Enter the following information:

Enabled

Check this box if this transaction manager is enabled.

Manager

The name of the transaction manager.

Short Name

The short name for your transaction manager.

Application

The application associated with the transaction manager.

The combination of an application and the short name you specify here uniquely defines the transaction manager.

Program Library

Select a library of immediate transaction programs to make available to your manager. Your manager can only run immediate transaction programs that are registered in the selected program library. Transaction managers can run only those immediate transaction programs listed in their program library. They can also run transaction programs that use any other type of transaction program executable.

Work Shifts

Use the Work Shifts section to assign work shifts to your manager. A work shift defines the dates and times the manager is enabled, as well as the number of processes the manager can start running during the work shift.

To add a work shift, use the **Add from Available Shifts** button.

For each work shift listed, the following is displayed:

Sleep Seconds

The sleep time for a transaction manager determines how often a manager will check to see if it should shut down.

Tip: Set the sleep time to be very brief during periods when the number of requests submitted is expected to be high.

Processes

The number of operating system processes you want your work shift to run simultaneously. Each process can run a concurrent request.

For example, if a work shift is defined with three (3) target processes, the manager can run up to three requests simultaneously.

Nodes

If you are operating in a parallel concurrent processing environment and you want your manager to operate on a specific node, select the name of the node.

The primary node, if available, is the node your concurrent manager operates on. If the primary node or the database instance on it goes down, your concurrent manager migrates to its secondary node. Your concurrent manager migrates back to its primary node when that node becomes available.

Nodes must be previously registered with Oracle Applications, using the Nodes form in Oracle Applications.

Creating and Editing an Internal Monitor

Use this page to create a new Internal Monitor.

Internal Monitors monitor the Internal Concurrent Manager in a parallel concurrent processing environment. If the Internal Concurrent Manager exits abnormally (for example, because its node or its database instance goes down), an Internal Monitor restarts it on another node.

General

Enter the following information:

Enabled

Check this box if this internal monitor is enabled.

Manager

The name of the internal monitor.

Short Name

The short name for your internal monitor.

Application

The application associated with the internal monitor.

The combination of an application and the short name you define for your internal monitor uniquely identifies the monitor.

Program Library

For an Internal Monitor, the program library is FNDIMON.

Work Shifts

Use the Work Shifts section to assign work shifts. A work shift defines the dates and times the manager is enabled, as well as the number of processes the manager can start running during the work shift.

To add a work shift, use the **Add from Available Shifts** button.

For each work shift listed, the following is displayed:

Sleep Seconds

The sleep time for your manager during this work shift. Sleep time is the number of seconds your manager waits between checking the list of pending concurrent requests (concurrent requests waiting to be started).

Tip: Set the sleep time to be very brief during periods when the number of requests submitted is expected to be high.

Processes

The number of operating system processes you want your work shift to run simultaneously. Each process can run a concurrent request.

For example, if a work shift is defined with three (3) target processes, the manager can run up to three requests simultaneously.

Nodes

If you are operating in a parallel concurrent processing environment and you want your manager to operate on a specific node, select the name of the node.

The primary node, if available, is the node your concurrent manager operates on. If the primary node or the database instance on it goes down, your concurrent manager migrates to its secondary node. Your concurrent manager migrates back to its primary node when that node becomes available.

Nodes must be previously registered with Oracle Applications, using the Nodes form in Oracle Applications.

Create a New Work Shift

Use this page to define work shifts for your services. Define work shifts to specify when your services can work.

Navigation: Site Map - Administration > [Service Instance type] (under Application Services) > Create [Service] > Workshifts region, (B) Add from Available Shifts > (B) Create New Site Map > Work Shift Library (under Application Services) > Create New

- **Name** - The name of your work shift should be intuitive, for instance "Week Days", "Weeknights" or "Weekends".
- **Description** - Add a description for your work shift.
- **Schedule** - For each work shift, specify a time period covering a range of days or a particular date. Specify if you are scheduling by day or by date.
- **Day** - Enter the first and last days of this shift. For instance, if your shift name is "Week Days", you could enter "Monday" in the "Days of Week From" field and "Friday" in the "Days of Week To" field. If you enter a value in the "Days of Week From" field, you must enter a value in the "Days of Week To field".

- **Date** - Enter a date here to create a date-specific work shift. Date-specific work shifts override work shifts that do not specify a specific date. If you want to enter a value in this field (specify a date), you may not enter values for the Days of Week fields for this row.
- **Time** - Enter the times of day at which your concurrent shift begins/ends. The time format is HH24:MM. For example, if your work shift name is "Week Days", you could enter "09:00" (9:00 am) as the start time and "17:00" (5:00 pm) as the end time. Note that Oracle Applications uses a 24-hour clock.

List of Work Shifts

This page displays the available work shifts.

Navigation: Site Map - Administration > Request Processing Managers (under Applications Systems) > Create New or Edit [Service] > Workshifts region, (B) Add from Available Shifts

The following columns are shown: Name, Start Day, End Day, Start Time, End Time, Date, and Description.

You can use the buttons to edit or delete an existing work shift, or create a new one.

Completed Concurrent Requests Report

This report displays how long concurrent programs actually run. Use this report to segregate requests, based on their typical time-to-complete, by specializing concurrent managers to only read requests for certain programs.

Use this report to record parameters and error messages associated with concurrent programs that have been run.

Report Parameters

If you do not enter any parameters, the report returns values for all completed concurrent requests.

Program Application Name

Choose the application name associated with the program whose completed concurrent requests you wish to report on.

Choose only an application name, without a program name, if you wish to run a report on all completed concurrent requests associated with an application.

Program Name

Choose the name of a program whose completed concurrent requests you wish to report on. You must enter a value for Program Application Name before entering a value for Program Name.

User Name

Choose the name of an application user whose completed concurrent requests you wish to report on.

Start Date/End Date

Enter the start date and end date for your report.

Report Headings

The report headings list the specified parameters and provide you with general information about the contents of the report.

Related Topics

Overview of Concurrent Processing, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*

Reviewing Requests, Request Log Files, and Report Output Files, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*

Managing Concurrent Processing Files and Tables, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*

Using Time-Based Queues, page 8-6

Specializing Managers to run only certain programs, page 8-14

Grouping Programs by Request Type, page 8-28

Work Shift by Manager Report

This report documents the work shifts assigned to each concurrent manager. Use the report when defining or editing concurrent managers.

Report Parameters

None.

Report Headings

The report headings provide you with general information about the contents of the report.

Related Topics

Defining Managers and their Work Shifts, page 8-1

Work Shifts Report, page 8-13

Work Shifts Report

This report documents all of your work shift definitions. Use this report when defining or editing concurrent manager work shifts.

Report Parameters

None.

Report Headings

The report headings provide you with general information about the contents of the report.

Related Topics

Defining Managers and their Work Shifts, page 8-1

Work Shift Definitions, page 8-3

Work Shifts Report, page 8-13

Work Shift by Manager Report, page 8-13

Work Shifts field help, page 8-51

Specializing Managers to Run Only Certain Programs

This essay explains how you can specialize managers to run only certain programs.

Introduction to Specialization Rules

Every time your users request a concurrent program to be run, their request is inserted into a database table. Concurrent managers read requests from this table, and start running programs if the manager is defined to read the particular request.

Without specialization rules, a manager reads requests to start *any* concurrent program.

Using specialization rules, you can specialize a manager to read only certain kinds of requests to start concurrent programs, for example, only requests to start Oracle General Ledger programs, or only requests to start programs requested by the user "Fred". See: Concurrent Managers, page 8-46.

A special type of specialization rule is the *combined* specialization rule, that can combine more than one action to define a single rule. See: Combined Specialization Rules, page 8-52.

Related Topics

Defining Specialization Rules, page 8-14

Examples - Using Specialization Rules, page 8-19

Defining Combined Specialization Rules, page 8-22

Controlling Concurrent Managers, page 8-29

Concurrent Managers field help, page 8-46

Defining Specialization Rules

A specialization rule associates an action with a type of request. There are two kinds of actions: Include and Exclude.

- Include defines a manager to only read requests of the type specified.
- Exclude defines a manager to read all requests except the type specified.

Requests to run concurrent programs may be allowed or disallowed on the basis of:

- the ORACLE ID of the request's Set of Books (for multiple installs) or Organization if you are using multiple organizations.
- the program itself or the program's application
- the request type of the program
- the user who submitted the request
- a combined rule, which combines more than one action to generate a single rule. The combined rule applies its actions to one or more types of request.

For example, a combined rule can exclude an action from an Oracle ID and exclude another action from a specific program.

Using more than one rule

Each rule performs one action. When using more than one rule, the rules are evaluated as follows:

- Include rules are evaluated together using 'OR' statements as the binding logic.

For example, If you use the rules:

- Include X
- Include Y

The result of the rules allows the manager to run either X 'OR' Y but does not require that both programs be run.

- Exclude rules are evaluated together using 'AND' statements as the binding logic.

For example, If you use the rules:

- Exclude 1
- Exclude 2

The result of the rules prohibits the manager from running programs 1 'AND' 2 together or separately.

- Include rules are evaluated first, then Exclude rules are evaluated. Include rule(s) and Exclude rule(s) are evaluated together as an AND statement. For example, (Include X OR Y) AND (Exclude 1 AND 2).
- An Exclude rule overrides an Include rule.

Specialization rule actions, their binding logic, and examples are presented in the following two tables. See: Specialization Rule Logic - Examples, page 8-16.

Specialization Rule Logic - Examples

Include Rules	Result
Include X	Run only program X
Include X	Run program X
OR	...or
Include <i>User Sam</i>	Run requests by User Sam
	Net result: Run everyone's requests for program X, and run all of Sam's requests.
Exclude Rules	Result
Exclude 37	Do not run program 37
Exclude 37	Do not run program 37
AND	...and
Exclude <i>User Sam</i>	Do not run requests by User Sam
	Net result: Do not run anyone's requests for program 37, and do not run any of Sam's requests.

Include and Exclude Rules	Result
Include <i>User Sam</i>	Run only requests by User Sam
AND	...and
Exclude 37	Do not run program 37
	Net result: Run all of Sam's requests except requests to run program 37.
Include X	(Run program X
OR	...or
Include <i>User Sam</i>	Run requests by User Sam)
----- AND	...and
Exclude 37	(Do not run program 37
AND	...and
Exclude <i>User Mary</i>	Do not run requests by User Mary)
	Net result: Run program X except when requested by Mary, and run all of Sam's requests except requests to run program 37.

The following table gives examples of the action types associated with specialization rules.

Rule Action	Type	Example	Explanation
INCLUDE	Combined Rule	Oracle Project Accounting - Tim's Budgets	Manager <i>only</i> reads requests to start programs defined by the Combined Rule "Tim's Budgets".
INCLUDE	ORACLE ID	APPS2	Manager <i>only</i> reads requests to start programs that connect to the APPS2 (a single install in a multiple install schema) Oracle ID.
INCLUDE	Program	Oracle Project Accounting - Sales Forecast	Manager <i>only</i> reads requests to start the concurrent program named "Sales Forecast".

Rule Action	Type	Example	Explanation
INCLUDE	Request Type	Oracle Inventory - Overnight Reports	Manager <i>only</i> reads requests to start programs belonging to the request type "Overnight Reports".
INCLUDE	User	Tim	Manager <i>only</i> reads requests to start programs submitted by the application user "Tim".
EXCLUDE	Combined Rule	Oracle General Ledger - Month End Reports	Manager reads <i>all</i> requests to start programs <i>except</i> those defined by the Combined Rule "Month End Reports".
EXCLUDE	ORACLE ID	APPS2	Manager reads <i>all</i> requests to start programs <i>except</i> those that connect to the APPS2 Oracle ID.
EXCLUDE	Program	Application Object Library - Purge Audit Tables	Manager reads <i>all</i> requests to start programs <i>except</i> requests for the program named "Purge Audit Tables".
EXCLUDE	Request Type	Oracle Purchasing - Weekend Programs	Manager reads <i>all</i> requests to start programs <i>except</i> those belonging to the request type "Weekend Programs".
EXCLUDE	User	Margaret	Manager reads <i>all</i> requests to start programs <i>except</i> those submitted by the application user "Margaret".

Related Topics

Specializing Managers to run only certain programs, page 8-14

Examples - Using Specialization Rules, page 8-19

Defining Combined Specialization Rules, page 8-22

Using Combined Rules, page 8-24

Differences Between Specialization and Combined Rules, page 8-27

Concurrent Managers field help, page 8-46

Examples - Using Specialization Rules

Following are examples of using specialization rules to define what requests a concurrent manager can read. When multiple rules are used to specialize a manager, the words OR and AND appear between each rule to clarify the relationship among multiple specialization rules.

Using Include and Exclude actions

Include	Program - Oracle Assets, <i>No entry for Name field.</i>
Result	The manager only reads requests to run concurrent programs for the application "Oracle Assets".
Include	Program - Oracle Assets, <i>No entry for Name field.</i>
OR	
Include	Program - Oracle Payables, <i>No entry for Name field.</i>
Net Result	The manager only reads requests to run concurrent programs for the application "Oracle Assets", or for the application "Oracle Payables". The use of multiple Include actions expands the manager's ability to read requests beyond that of a single Program (single Include action).
Exclude	Oracle ID - APPS2
Result	The manager reads requests to run concurrent programs that connect to any Oracle ID, except those programs that connect to Oracle ID "APPS2".
Exclude	Oracle ID - APPS2
AND	
Exclude	Program - Oracle Payables, <i>No entry for Name field.</i>
Net Result	The manager reads requests to run concurrent programs that connect to any Oracle ID, except programs that connect to Oracle ID "APPS2", and programs for the application "Oracle Payables".

Simplify your work

Multiple rules may not always be necessary, or the number or complexity of rules can be simplified. Consider the example below.

Include	Program - Oracle Sales and Marketing, <i>No entry for Name field.</i>
OR	
Include	Request Type - Sales Forecasts
Net Result	The manager only reads requests to run concurrent programs for the application "Oracle Sales and

Marketing", or programs whose request type is "Sales Forecasts".

In this example, both rules are not necessary when programs belonging to the request type "Sales Forecasts" all connect to the Oracle ID "OSM". There is no need for the second Type Include rule.

Exclude rules override Include rules

Include	Program - Oracle Payables, <i>No entry for Name field.</i>
AND	
Exclude	Program - Oracle Payables Invoice Aging Report
Net Result	The manager reads all requests for concurrent programs for the application "Oracle Payables", but does not read requests to run the Oracle Payables program "Invoice Aging Report".
Include	Program - Signon Audit Forms
AND	
Exclude	Request Type - Signon Audit Reports
Net Result	If the System Administrator program Signon Audit Forms belongs to the Request Type "Signon Audit Reports", the manager will not read requests to run the program, even though it has been specifically identified by an Include rule. The Exclude rule overrides the Include rule.

Specializing to only run a Program against specific Oracle IDs

In the following example, a manager can be specialized to only run a program against a specific Oracle ID. This is useful when there are multiple installations of an Oracle Application.

Include	Program - Oracle Payables Invoice Aging Report
AND	
Exclude	Oracle ID - APPS2
Net Result	<p>The manager only reads requests to run the Oracle Payables program "Invoice Aging Report" when the program does not connect to the Oracle ID "APPS2". The Exclude action overrides the Include action.</p> <p>However, when the Invoice Aging Report runs against another Oracle ID, for example, "APPS", then this manager will read requests to run the program. This is useful when working with multiple installations of an application and data groups.</p>

Distinguishing a Program from a Request Type

You can specialize a manager to read requests to run all the programs belonging to a Request Type, except for individual programs you wish to identify.

Include	Request Type - Oracle General Ledger Reports
AND	
Exclude	Program - Oracle General Ledger Account Analysis
Net Result	If the Account Analysis program belongs to the request type Oracle General Ledger "Reports", then this manager will run every program in the request type Oracle General Ledger Reports, except the program Account Analysis.

Preventing specific programs from running

You can use an Exclude action more than once. For example, suppose your manager reads all requests to run concurrent programs for a particular application, but you want to prevent your manager from running two specific programs. You can:

Include	Program - Oracle General Ledger, <i>No entry for Name field.</i>
AND	
Exclude	Program - Oracle General Ledger Consolidation Audit
AND	
Exclude	Program - Oracle General Ledger Consolidation Rules
Net Result	The manager reads requests for any concurrent programs for the application "Oracle General Ledger", except for the programs "Consolidation Audit" and "Consolidation Rules".

Specializing to run only specific programs at certain times

Using multiple Include rules, you can specialize a manager to run only specific programs. Then, when you define the manager's work shift, you can control when the manager reads requests to run the specific programs.

Include	Program - Oracle Payables Invoice Aging Report
OR	
Include	Program - Oracle Purchasing Receipt Accruals
Net Result	The manager only reads requests to run the Oracle Payables Invoice Aging Report, or the Oracle Purchasing Receipt Accruals program.

Tip: If you only wanted these two reports run during the night you can define the manager's work shift to run from 2:00am-6:00am (02:00-06:00).

Tip: When you first submit the requests to run the programs, you can define a resubmission interval, for example, 1 month, to resubmit the programs to run every month.

Specializing according to Application User

You can specialize managers to only read requests from specific users.

Include	User - Markus Kalkin
Net Result	The manager only reads requests submitted by the application user "Markus Kalkin".

Include	User - Markus Kalkin
OR	
Include	Program - Oracle Inventory Process Demand Interface
OR	
Include	Program - Oracle Inventory Summarize Demand Histories
Net Result	The manager reads both requests submitted by user Markus Kalkin and requests to run the Oracle Inventory programs "Process Demand Interface" and "Summarize Demand Histories".

Tip: If you want specific programs submitted by a specific user to "jump ahead" of other requests waiting to be run, you can define and specialize a manager as in the example above, and set the user profile option Concurrent:Priority for the user to a high priority (Concurrent:Priority sets the priority of requests submitted by the user).

- Define a manager and give it a descriptive name.
- Specialize the manager as in the example above.
- Set the user profile option Concurrent:Priority for user Markus to 10.

Related Topics

Specializing Managers to run only certain programs, page 8-14

Defining Specialization Rules, page 8-14

Defining Combined Specialization Rules, page 8-22

Concurrent Managers field help, page 8-46

Defining Combined Specialization Rules

A combined specialization rule combines more than one action to generate a single rule. The actions are combined as AND statements so that the rule is defined as:

Action 1 AND . . .

Action 2 AND . . .

Action 3 AND . . . so on.

You can create combined rules and use them with several managers, instead of duplicating a complex rule each time.

There are two kinds of Actions you may use to build a combined rule; Exclude and Include. Each action is defined by one line within the rule. Combining the specialization lines or individual actions defines the overall combined rule.

An Exclude action overrides a Include action.

For example, you can define an Exclude *application program x* action and a Include *user Yvonne Jones* action. Combining these two actions generates the combined rule "read all requests from user Yvonne Jones except requests to run program x". See: Combined Specialization Rules, page 8-52.

Combined specialization rule actions, their binding logic, and examples are presented in the following table.

Combination Rule Include Lines	Result
Include <i>Program X</i>	Run only program X
Include <i>Program X</i>	Run program X
AND	...and
Include <i>User Sam</i>	Run requests by User Sam
	Net result: Run only Sam's requests for program X.
Combination Rule Exclude Lines	Result
Exclude <i>Program 37</i>	Do not run program 37
Exclude <i>Program 37</i>	Do not run program 37
AND	...and
Exclude <i>User Sam</i>	Do not run requests by User Sam
	Net result: Do not run anyone's requests for program 37, and do not run Sam's requests.

Combination Rule Include and Exclude Lines	Result
Include <i>User Sam</i>	Run requests by User Sam
AND	...and
Exclude <i>Program 37</i>	Do not run program 37
	Net result: Run all of Sam's requests except requests to run program 37.
Include <i>Program Application General Ledger</i>	(Run General Ledger Programs
AND	...and
Include <i>User Sam</i>	Run requests by User Sam)
----- AND	...and
Exclude <i>Program 37</i>	(Do not run program 37
AND	...and
Exclude <i>Program 38</i>	Do not run program 38)
	Net result: Run Sam's requests for programs from the application General Ledger, except programs 37 and 38.

Related Topics

Specializing Managers to run only certain programs, page 8-14

Defining Specialization Rules, page 8-14

Using Combined Rules, page 8-24

Differences Between Specialization and Combined Rules, page 8-27

Concurrent Managers field help, page 8-46

Combined Specialization Rules field help, page 8-52

Using Combined Rules

Using combined rules you can precisely specialize a manager.

A combined rule combines more than one action to generate a single rule. Each action is defined by one line within the rule. Combining the lines or individual actions defines the overall combined rule.

Tip: You can use a combined specialization rule as one of many rules to specialize a manager.

Using single Exclude and Include actions

A single Exclude action within a combined rule acts the same way as a single Exclude action that defines a specialization rule. Both instruct a manager to read *all* requests to run concurrent programs *except* those identified by the action.

Exclude Oracle ID - APPS

Result The manager reads requests to run concurrent programs that connect to any Oracle ID, except those programs that connect to Oracle ID "APPS".

A single Include action within a combined rule acts the same way as a single Include action that defines a specialization rule. Both actions instruct a manager to read *only* the requests that satisfy the action.

Include Oracle ID - APPS2

Result The manager only reads requests to run concurrent programs that connect to Oracle ID "APPS2".

Using multiple Exclude actions

Using multiple Exclude actions as multiple lines within a combined rule is equivalent to using multiple Exclude actions as multiple specialization rules.

You can exclude more kinds of requests by adding more Exclude lines to your combined rule.

Exclude Program - Oracle Sales & Marketing, *No entry for Name field.*

AND

Exclude Program - Oracle Inventory, *No entry for Name field.*

Net Result The manager reads all requests to run concurrent programs *except requests for* programs for the application "Oracle Sales & Marketing", *and requests for* programs for the application "Oracle Inventory".

Using multiple Include actions

Using multiple Include actions adds more requirements to a combined rule, and excludes more kinds of requests.

You cannot use two Include actions for the same action type. Each Include action is an exclusive statement for a particular type of action. For example, you cannot require a request to be for a program that connects to two different Oracle IDs.

Include Program - Oracle Payables, *No entry for Name field.*

AND

Include Program - Oracle Payables Confirm Receipt Batch

Net Result The manager only reads requests to run a single program, *Confirm Receipt Batch*, and only if that program is from the application "Oracle Payables".

Using Exclude and Include actions

You cannot use Exclude and Include actions for the same type of action. Each Include action is an exclusive statement for a particular type of action.

For example, it does not make sense to *require* a request to be for a program that connects to the Oracle ID "APPS" and disallow a request to connect to another Oracle ID.

Exclude overrides Include

When using multiple lines within a Combined Rule, the Exclude action always overrides a Include action.

Include	Program - Oracle Payables Invoice Import
AND	
Exclude	Oracle ID - APPS2
Net Result	The manager reads requests to run the Oracle Payables Invoice Import program, but will not run the program when it connects to the Oracle ID "APPS2". The Exclude action overrides the Include action.

Specializing a manager to run one program submitted by one user

You can define a combined rule that instructs a manager to only read requests to run a single program when submitted by a specific user.

Include	User - Sheryl
AND	
Include	Program - Oracle Project Accounting Distribute Usage Costs
Net Result	The manager only reads requests submitted by Sheryl to run the Distribute Usage Costs program.

Restricting the programs a manager will run for a specific user

You can define a combined rule that instructs a manager to ignore requests to run a certain programs when submitted by a specific user.

Include	User - Sheryl
AND	
Exclude	Program - Oracle Project Accounting Expenditure Status
Net Result	The manager only reads requests submitted by Sheryl, excluding requests to run the Oracle Project Accounting program <i>Accounting Expenditure Status</i> .

Specifying Oracle ID and excluding a program from a request type

Include	Request Type - Oracle Project Accounting Expenditure Reports
AND	
Include	Oracle ID - APPS2
AND	
Exclude	Program - Oracle Project Accounting Expenditure Status
Net Result	The manager only reads requests to run programs belonging to the Oracle Project Accounting request type

“Reports”, run against the Oracle ID “APPS2”, excluding the program *Expenditure Reports*.

Related Topics

Specializing Managers to run only certain programs, page 8-14
Defining Combined Specialization Rules, page 8-22
Differences Between Specialization and Combined Rules, page 8-27
Concurrent Managers field help, page 8-46
Combined Specialization Rules field help, page 8-52

Differences Between Specialization and Combined Rules

The primary difference between a specialization rule and a combined specialization rule is in how the use of multiple actions affects the outcome of the rule, as described in the following table:

Rule	Action	Effect of Multiple Actions	Relationship to Other Rules
Specialization Rule	INCLUDE	With each additional Include rule, the manager can read MORE REQUESTS.	Each rule establishes an OR condition. <i>OR.. INCLUDE...</i>
Specialization Rule	EXCLUDE	With each additional Exclude rule, the manager is excluded from, and reads, FEWER REQUESTS.	Each rule establishes an AND condition. <i>AND... EXCLUDE...</i>
Combined Rule Specialization Line	EXCLUDE	With each additional Exclude line, the manager is excluded from, and reads, FEWER REQUESTS.	Each line within a rule establishes an AND condition. <i>AND... EXCLUDE...</i>
Combined Rule Specialization Line	INCLUDE	With each additional Include line or additional requirement, the manager reads FEWER REQUESTS.	Each line within a rule establishes an AND condition. <i>AND... INCLUDE...</i>

Related Topics

Specializing Managers to run only certain programs, page 8-14
Examples - Using Specialization Rules, page 8-19
Defining Combined Specialization Rules, page 8-22
Using Combined Rules, page 8-24
Concurrent Managers field help, page 8-46
Combined Specialization Rules field help, page 8-52

Grouping Programs by Request Type

As System Administrator, you may want to group similar programs together. You do this by defining request types and assigning them to the programs that users request in Oracle Applications. You can define concurrent managers that only run programs that belong to a particular request type.

Using request types to specialize concurrent managers can help optimize the processing of Oracle Applications, by letting certain types of programs run without having to wait for other types of programs to finish processing. Using request types saves you time when you create a concurrent manager's specialization rules.

Using Request Types

Specializing a concurrent manager by request type involves three steps:

1. Define a Request Type using the Concurrent Request Types form.
2. Assign the Request Type to each concurrent program you want to identify as a member of this request type using the Concurrent Programs form.
3. Select the Request Type when you specialize a concurrent manager using the Concurrent Managers form.

Examples of using Request Types

Some example request types you may want to define are:

Quick	For concurrent programs that take a relatively short time to run.
Overnight	For concurrent programs that take a long time to run, which you typically schedule to run during the late night or early morning hours.
Month-End Reports	<p>For concurrent programs that generate reports you run at the end of each month.</p> <p>For example, if you run ten report programs at the end of each month, you could define a request type called "Month-End Reports" and assign it to your ten report programs.</p> <p>Then you can use specialization rules to define a concurrent manager that only runs requests of type "Month-End Reports". This way, you do not have to specify your ten different report programs when you define your concurrent manager. You can also easily assign the ten programs to more than one manager.</p>

Related Topics

Overview of Concurrent Processing, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*

Using Time-Based Queues, page 8-6

Completed Concurrent Requests Report, page 8-12

Specializing Managers to run only certain programs, page 8-14

Controlling Concurrent Managers

This essay explains how to control your concurrent managers.

Manager States

Individual managers read requests to start concurrent programs and actually start programs running when certain conditions are satisfied, such as the manager's work shift definition, number of target processes, and specialization rules.

You can start, shut down, or reset the concurrent managers at any time. Oracle Applications provides an Internal Concurrent Manager that processes these commands. You can issue commands either to individual managers, or, by altering the state of the Internal Concurrent Manager, you can control every manager at once.

Starting Individual Managers

You can restart or activate managers on an individual basis. Restarting a concurrent manager forces the Internal Concurrent Manager to reread the definition for that concurrent manager. Activating a manager cancels a previous command to deactivate it, and allows the Internal Concurrent Manager to start that manager when its work shift starts.

You should restart an individual manager when you:

- modify its work shift assignments
- modify a work shift's target number of processes
- modify its specialization rules
- change a concurrent program's incompatibility rules

Deactivating Individual Managers

When you shut down an individual manager, you can choose whether to abort all requests and deactivate the manager immediately, or to allow it to finish processing its current requests before deactivating.

If you choose to Deactivate the manager, requests that are currently running are allowed to complete.

When you terminate requests and deactivate an individual manager, requests that are currently running are immediately stopped and marked for resubmission (when the manager is activated).

Oracle Applications concurrent programs are designed so that no data is lost or duplicated when a terminated request is resumed after a shut down. This applies for shutdowns that are normal (e.g., using the "Deactivate concurrent manager" request) or abnormal (e.g., after a hardware failure).

Important: When a manager is selected and explicitly deactivated, it remains that way until you select and explicitly activate that manager. As a prerequisite, the Internal manager must be activated beforehand.

Controlling the Internal Concurrent Manager

When you activate the Internal Concurrent Manager, you activate all other managers as well, except those managers that were deactivated on an individual basis.

When you deactivate the Internal Concurrent Manager, it issues commands to deactivate all active managers. Managers that were deactivated on an individual basis are not affected.

If you terminate requests and deactivate the Internal Concurrent Manager, it issues commands to all other managers to terminate their requests and deactivate. Requests that are currently running are immediately stopped and marked for resubmission when the managers are activated.

Verify Concurrent Manager Status

The Internal Concurrent Manager continuously monitors each concurrent manager's operating system process. This process monitoring is referred to as the Internal Concurrent Manager's PMON cycle. The length of the PMON cycle is one of the arguments passed by the STARTMGR command, which starts up the Internal Concurrent Manager.

You can instruct the Internal Concurrent Manager to immediately verify the operating status of your individual concurrent managers, or to perform a PMON check.

Controlling Managers from the Administer Managers form

Use the Administer Concurrent Managers form to issue commands to your concurrent managers.

You can also have the Internal Concurrent Manager "manually" verify the status of your individual managers, and restart individual managers. See: Administer Concurrent Managers, page 8-39.

The following table describes control functions for the Internal Manager.

Control Function	Description
Activate concurrent manager	Activates the Internal manager and all other managers, except managers that were deactivated individually using "Deactivate concurrent manager".
Verify concurrent manager status	Manually executes the process monitoring (PMON) cycle.
Deactivate concurrent manager	Deactivates the Internal manager and all other managers.
Terminate requests and deactivate manager	All running requests (running concurrent programs) are terminated, and all managers are deactivated.

The following table describes control functions for any other manager.

Control Function	Description
Activate concurrent manager	If the manager is defined to work in the current work shift, it starts immediately. Cancels "Deactivate concurrent manager" and "Terminate requests and deactivate manager".
Restart concurrent manager	Internal manager rereads the manager's definition, and the rules for concurrent program incompatibilities. You should restart a manager when you: - Change work shift assignments - Modify the number of target processes - Modify specialization rules - Change concurrent program incompatibilities
Deactivate concurrent manager	Deactivates the manager. All requests (concurrent programs) currently running are allowed to complete before the manager shuts down. A manager will not restart until you select the manager and choose "Activate concurrent manager".
Terminate requests and deactivate manager	All running requests (running concurrent programs) handled by the manager are terminated. Once deactivated, a manager will not restart until you select the manager and choose "Activate concurrent manager".

Controlling the Internal Concurrent Manager from the Operating System

There are two commands you may use from the operating system to control the Internal Concurrent Manager: STARTMGR, which starts the Internal Concurrent Manager; and CONCSUB, which can be used to deactivate or abort the Internal Concurrent Manager, or to instruct the Internal Concurrent Manager to verify the operating system process for each individual manager.

The following table compares the Internal manager control states displayed by the Administer Concurrent Managers form with their corresponding operating system command. Not all arguments are shown.

From the Administer Concurrent Managers Form	From the Operating System (not all arguments shown)
Activate concurrent manager	STARTMGR (syntax may vary with platform)
Verify concurrent manager status	CONCSUB FND VERIFY
Deactivate concurrent manager	CONCSUB FND DEACTIVATE
Terminate requests and deactivate manager	CONCSUB FND ABORT

Starting the Internal Concurrent Manager from the Operating System

To start the concurrent managers, you can invoke the STARTMGR command from your operating system prompt. This command starts the Internal Concurrent Manager, which in turn starts any concurrent managers you have defined.

You must have write privileges to the "out" and "log" directories of every application so that the concurrent managers can write to these directories. You can start the concurrent managers with many different options. An option on some operating systems is to send an electronic mail note to a given user when the concurrent managers shut down. See your installation guide for a discussion of this command.

Use the STARTMGR command:

- during installation of Oracle Applications
- after you shut down the concurrent managers
- after MIS restarts the operating system
- after the database administrator restarts the database

The STARTMGR command takes up to ten optional parameters.

- Each parameter except PRINTER has a default.
- You can modify the STARTMGR command and your environment to set your own defaults.

Enter the following command at your system prompt to start the Internal Concurrent Manager:

```
$ startmgr <optional parameters>
```

You can pass the parameters in any order. For example:

```
$ startmgr sysmgr="applsys/fnd" mgrname="std"
printer="hqseq1" mailto="jsmith" restart="N"
logfile="mgrlog" sleep="90" pmon="5" quesiz="10"
```

See: Setting Up Concurrent Managers, page 9-1

Viewing the Internal Concurrent Manager startup parameters

The Internal Concurrent Manager's log file displays startup parameter values executed by the STARTMGR command. An example is shown below. You cannot change the parameter values.

```
logfile=/fnddev/fnd/6.0/log/FND60.mgr (path is port-specific)
PRINTER=hqunx138
mailto=appldev
restart=N
diag=N
sleep=60 (default)
pmon=20 (default)
quesiz=1 (default)
```

Shutting down the Internal Concurrent Manager from the Operating System

From the operating system prompt, you can use the CONCSUB utility to submit a concurrent request, under the SYSADMIN username and the System Administrator responsibility.

The CONCSUB utility submits a concurrent request and returns you to the operating system prompt. You must wait until the concurrent request completes.

To check on the status of your concurrent request, use the Concurrent Requests form.

```
CONCSUB applsys/pwd 'Responsibility application shortname'
'Responsibility name' 'Username' [WAIT={Y|N|n}] CONCURRENT
'Program application shortname' PROGRAM
```

Parameters

<i>applsys/pwd</i>	The ORACLE username and password that connects to Oracle Application Object Library data.
<i>Responsibility application shortname</i>	The application shortname of the responsibility. For the System Administrator responsibility, the application shortname is SYSADMIN.
<i>Responsibility name</i>	The name of the responsibility. For the System Administrator responsibility, the responsibility name is <i>System Administrator</i> .
<i>Username</i>	The application username of the person who submits the request. For example, SYSADMIN is the username of the System Administrator.
<i>WAIT={Y N n}</i>	Set WAIT to Y if you want CONCSUB to wait until the request you submitted completes before CONCSUB returns you to the operating system prompt. Set WAIT to N (the default value) if you do not want CONCSUB to wait. You can also enter an integer value of <i>n</i> seconds for CONCSUB to wait before it exits. When used, WAIT must be entered before CONCURRENT.
<i>Program application shortname</i>	The application shortname of the program. For the DEACTIVATE, ABORT, and VERIFY programs, the application shortname is FND.
<i>PROGRAM</i>	To submit the Shutdown All Managers concurrent request, use the program DEACTIVATE. To submit the Shutdown Abort Managers concurrent request, use the program ABORT. To submit the Verify All Managers Status concurrent request, use the program VERIFY.

Example Syntax using CONCSUB

```
CONCSUB <Username/Password> SYSADMIN 'System Administrator'
SYSADMIN CONCURRENT FND DEACTIVATE

CONCSUB <Username/Password> SYSADMIN 'System Administrator'
SYSADMIN CONCURRENT FND ABORT

CONCSUB <Username/Password> SYSADMIN 'System Administrator'
SYSADMIN CONCURRENT FND VERIFY
```

Using CONCSUB to shut down your managers

Use CONCSUB to shut down the concurrent managers:

- before MIS shuts down the operating system
- before the database administrator shuts down the database
- when you want concurrent manager and concurrent program definitions to take effect

Then, use the STARTMGR command to restart the Internal Concurrent Manager, which starts the concurrent managers.

Example - nightly shutdown using CONCSUB

You can use the token WAIT with value Y (WAIT=Y) if you want to use CONCSUB to issue a concurrent request from within a shell script containing a sequence of steps. Using the token WAIT insures the managers deactivate, abort, or verify status before the shell script proceeds to the next step.

See: Controlling the Internal Concurrent Manager from the Operating System, page 8-31

1. Shell script customized for specific operating system starts.
2. CONCSUB *applsys/pwd* SYSADMIN 'System Administrator' SYSADMIN WAIT=Y CONCURRENT FND DEACTIVATE

When the shell script passes control to CONCSUB, CONCSUB waits until the program DEACTIVATE is complete before it returns control to the shell script.

3. Script issues the command to shut down the database.
4. Script issues the command to backup the database.
5. Script issues the command to startup the database.
6. \$ startmgr sysmgr="applsys/fnd" mgrname="std" printer="hqseq1" mailto="jsmith" restart="N" logfile="mgrlog" sleep="90" pmon="5" quesiz="10"

The shell script passes control to STARTMGR, which starts up the Internal manager (and all the other managers).

7. Shell script completes.

Hiding the password using CONCSUB

If username/password are still supplied, the CONCSUB utility will work as usual.

If username only is supplied (no '/pwd' in the first argument), it will prompt you for the password:

ORACLE Password:

The echo is turned off. For example, the command below does not include the ORACLE Password.

```
CONCSUB applsys SYSADMIN 'System Administrator' SYSADMIN
CONCURRENT FND
FNDMNRMT Y 0 20221
ORACLE Password:
Submitted request 32157 for CONCURRENT FND FNDMNRMT Y 0 20221
```

Now, the first argument has to be the application username as usual (for example, SYSADMIN).

The user can put the password in a file, and then redirect it to standard input (stdin). In UNIX the command would be executed as follows:

```
CONCSUB applsys SYSADMIN 'System Administrator' SYSADMIN  
CONCURRENT FND  
FNDMNRMT Y 0 20221 < password.file
```

where password.file is an ASCII file that contains the password. This method is recommended for use in shell scripts or batch processes.

Overview of Parallel Concurrent Processing

This essay explains what parallel concurrent processing is, describes the environments it runs in, and explains how it works.

What is Parallel Concurrent Processing?

Parallel concurrent processing allows you to distribute concurrent managers across multiple nodes in a cluster, massively parallel, or networked environment. Instead of operating concurrent processing on a single node while other nodes are idle, you can spread concurrent processing across all available nodes, fully utilizing hardware resources.

Benefits of Parallel Concurrent Processing

Parallel concurrent processing provides Oracle Applications users with the following benefits:

- High performance - the ability to run concurrent processes on multiple nodes to improve concurrent processing throughput.
- Fault Tolerance - the ability to continue running concurrent processes on available nodes even when one or more nodes fails.
- Adaptability - the ability to integrate with platform-specific batch queue and load-balancing systems to maximize concurrent processing performance on a particular platform.
- Single Point of Control - the ability to administer concurrent managers running on multiple nodes from any node in a cluster, massively parallel, or networked environment.

Parallel Concurrent Processing Environments

Parallel concurrent processing runs in multi-node environments, such as cluster, massively parallel, and networked environments. In these environments, each node consists of one or more processors (CPUs) and their associated memory. Each node has its own memory that is not shared with other nodes. And each node operates independently of other nodes, except when sharing a resource such as a disk.

With parallel concurrent processing, one or more concurrent managers run on one or more nodes in a multi-node environment. You decide where concurrent managers run when configuring your system.

You can define any set of concurrent manager specialization rules, and apply them across nodes in any way desired. For example, three "Oracle General Ledger" concurrent managers could be spread across three nodes. Or an "Oracle Payables" concurrent

manager and an "Oracle General Ledger" concurrent manager could run simultaneously on the same node.

The following are examples of environments in which parallel concurrent processing can run:

Cluster Environments

In a cluster environment, multiple computers, each representing a single node, share a common pool of disks.

With parallel concurrent processing in a cluster environment, a single ORACLE database resides in the common disk pool, while multiple instances of Real Application Clusters (RAC) run simultaneously on multiple nodes in the cluster. Multiple concurrent managers are also distributed across the nodes in the cluster.

Massively Parallel Environments

In a massively parallel environment, multiple nodes are housed in a single computer. All nodes share access to a common pool of disks. The IBM SP/2, for example, is a massively parallel computer.

With parallel concurrent processing in a massively parallel environment, separate RAC instances run simultaneously on multiple nodes, with multiple concurrent managers also distributed across nodes.

Networked Environments

In networked environments, multiple computers of the same type are connected via a local area network (LAN) to a single database server, or alternatively, to a cluster of database servers.

For example, a simple networked environment could consist of multiple Sun SPARCstations connected via a LAN to a single Sequent server. In a more complex networked environment, multiple Sun SPARCstations could connect to a cluster of Sequent servers.

With parallel concurrent processing in a networked environment, concurrent managers run on multiple workstations. A single database server runs a single instance of ORACLE; or, a cluster of database servers runs multiple ORACLE instances using RAC.

How Parallel Concurrent Processing Works

Concurrent Managers

With parallel concurrent processing, each node with concurrent managers may or may not be running an ORACLE instance. On a node that is not running ORACLE, the concurrent manager(s) connect via Net8 to a node that is running ORACLE.

To each concurrent manager, you assign a primary and a secondary node. Initially, a concurrent manager is started on its primary node. In case of node or ORACLE instance failure, all concurrent managers on that node migrate to their respective secondary nodes.

A concurrent manager on its secondary node migrates back to its primary node once that node becomes available. During migration, the processes of a single concurrent manager may be spread across its primary and secondary nodes.

Internal Concurrent Manager

The Internal Concurrent Manager can run on any node, and can activate and deactivate concurrent managers on all nodes. Since the Internal Concurrent Manager must be active at all times, it needs high fault tolerance. To provide this fault tolerance, parallel concurrent processing uses Internal Monitor Processes.

Internal Monitor Processes

The sole job of an Internal Monitor Process is to monitor the Internal Concurrent Manager and to restart that manager should it fail. The first Internal Monitor Process to detect that the Internal Concurrent Manager has failed restarts that manager on its own node.

Only one Internal Monitor Process can be active on a single node. You decide which nodes have an Internal Monitor Process when you configure your system. You can also assign each Internal Monitor Process a primary and a secondary node to ensure fail over protection.

Internal Monitor Processes, like concurrent managers, can have assigned work shifts, and are activated and deactivated by the Internal Concurrent Manager.

Log and Output File Access

The concurrent log and output files from requests that run on any node are accessible online from any other node. Users need not log onto a node to view the log and output files from requests run on that node. .

This capability relies on setup steps taken at install time. For more information, refer to the installation documentation for your platform.

Integration with Platform-Specific Queuing and Load-Balancing Systems

Some cluster or massively parallel systems have their own mechanisms for queuing batch processes or distributing process loads; for example, IBM LoadLeveler. Because users may wish to manage all processing, not just Oracle Applications processing, using these mechanisms, parallel concurrent processing is designed to integrate with them. Thus, you can match your concurrent process management to the specific capabilities of your operating platform.

For more information on integrating with platform-specific queuing and load-balancing systems, refer to the installation documentation for your platform.

Managing Parallel Concurrent Processing

This essay describes how to manage parallel concurrent processing (PCP) from System Administration forms. It presents the following topics, each in the context of parallel concurrent processing:

Defining Concurrent Managers

You define concurrent managers using the Concurrent Managers window. When you define a manager, you specify the manager type, which may be either Concurrent Manager, Internal Monitor, or Transaction Manager.

There are three other types of managers that Oracle Applications predefines for you: the Internal Concurrent Manager, which describes the Internal Concurrent Manager process, the Conflict Resolution Manager, and the Scheduler. For the Conflict Resolution

Manager and Scheduler you can assign the primary and secondary nodes. For the Internal Concurrent Manager you assign the primary node only.

To each concurrent manager and each Internal Monitor Process, you may assign a primary and a secondary node. You may also assign primary and secondary system queue names, if a platform-specific queue management system is available on your platform. See: Concurrent Managers, page 8-46.

Administering Concurrent Managers

Target Nodes

Using the Administer Concurrent Managers form, you can view the target node for each concurrent manager in a parallel concurrent processing environment. The target node is the node on which the processes associated with a concurrent manager should run.

When a manager's primary node and ORACLE instance are available, the target node is set to the primary node. Otherwise, the target node is set to the manager's secondary node (if that node and its ORACLE instance are available.) During process migration, processes migrate from their current node to the target node.

Control Across Nodes

Using the Administer Concurrent Managers form, you can start up, shut down, restart, and monitor concurrent managers and Internal Monitor Processes running on multiple nodes from any node in your parallel concurrent processing environment. You do not need to log onto a node to control concurrent processing on it. You can also terminate the Internal Concurrent Manager or any other concurrent manager from any node in your parallel concurrent processing environment.

In an environment enabled with parallel concurrent processing, primary node assignment is optional for the Internal Concurrent Manager. The Internal Concurrent Manager can be started from any of the nodes (host machines) identified as concurrent processing server enabled. In the absence of a primary node assignment for the Internal Concurrent Manager, the Internal Concurrent Manager will stay on the node (host machine) where it was started. If a primary node is assigned, the Internal Concurrent Manager will migrate to that node if it was started on a different node.

If the node on which the Internal Concurrent Manager is currently running becomes unavailable or the database instance to which it is connected to becomes unavailable, the Internal Concurrent Manager will be restarted on an alternate concurrent processing node. If no primary node is assigned, the Internal Concurrent Manager will continue to operate on the node on which it was restarted. If a primary node has been assigned to the Internal Concurrent Manager, then it will be migrated back to that node whenever both the node and the instance to which the Internal Concurrent Manager connects to from that node becomes available.

Starting Up Managers

You start up parallel concurrent processing by invoking the STARTMGR command from the operating system prompt. Regardless of the node from which you activate the Internal Concurrent Manager, it starts up on its assigned node (assuming that you operate from a node whose platform supports remote process startup.)

After the Internal Concurrent Manager starts up, it starts all the Internal Monitor Processes and all the concurrent managers. It attempts to start Internal Monitor

Processes and concurrent managers on their primary nodes, and resorts to a secondary node only if a primary node is unavailable.

Shutting Down Managers

You shut down parallel concurrent processing by issuing a "Deactivate" command against the Internal Concurrent Manager from the Administer Concurrent Managers form. All concurrent managers and Internal Monitor processes are shut down before the Internal Concurrent Manager shuts down.

Terminating a Concurrent Process

You can terminate a running concurrent process on the local node or on remote nodes by issuing a "Terminate" command from the Administer Concurrent Managers form.

Migrating Managers

Most process migration occurs automatically in response to the failure or subsequent availability of a primary node. However, you may migrate processes manually by changing the node assignments for a concurrent manager or Internal Monitor Process using the Concurrent Managers form. To effect your changes, you issue a "Verify" command against the Internal Concurrent Manager from the Administer Concurrent Managers form.

Related Topics

Controlling the Internal Manager from the Operating System, page 8-31

Concurrent Managers, page 8-46

Administer Concurrent Managers Window

Name	Node	Actual	Target	Running	Pending	Status
Internal Manager	ap283sun	1	1		0	
Conflict Resolution Manager		1	1		3	
Receivables Tax Manager		6	6			
CRP Inquiry Manager		4	4			
Scheduler/Prereleaser Manager		1	1			
Inventory Manager		5	5	0	1	
INV Remote Procedure Manager		6	6			
MRP Manager		1	1	0	0	
Shipping Transaction Manager		4	4			
PA Streamline Manager		1	1	0	0	
PO Document Approval Manager		6	6			
Receiving Transaction Manager		6	6			

Terminate Deactivate Verify Processes Requests

<DBG>

View the status of your concurrent managers (including any transaction managers) and, if you wish, change the status of any manager by issuing a control command. For example, you can deactivate a manager that is currently active, then view its new status after the change takes effect.

Use the Refresh button to refresh the data shown.

Administer Concurrent Managers Block

Node

In a parallel concurrent processing environment, a manager's processes are targeted to run on this node.

If a concurrent manager is defined to use a platform-specific system queue, this field displays the name of the queue which the manager submits its processes to.

Processes Actual

Each manager process can run one concurrent request (start one concurrent program). Typically, the number of actual processes equals the number of target processes (the maximum number of requests a manager can run).

However, the number of actual processes may be less than the number of target processes due to manager deactivation or manager migration.

Processes Target

This field displays the maximum number of manager processes that can be active for this manager.

Requests Running/Requests Pending

Typically, when there are requests pending, this number should be the same as the number of actual processes. However, if there are no pending requests, or requests were just submitted, the number of requests running may be less than the number of actual processes.

Moreover, if a concurrent program is incompatible with another program currently running, it does not start until the incompatible program has completed. In this case, the number of requests running may be less than number of actual processes even when there are requests pending.

Controlling a Specific Manager

Status

This field displays the status of a manager after you have chosen a specific action for it using the top row of buttons near the bottom of the window.

You can control concurrent managers individually or collectively by controlling the Internal Concurrent Manager. This field is blank when managers have been activated by the Internal Concurrent Manager.

In a parallel processing environment, this field displays *Target node/queue unavailable* when the primary and secondary nodes (or system queues) are not available.

The actions you can choose for controlling a manager are:

Terminate

When you terminate requests and deactivate the Internal Concurrent Manager, all running requests (running concurrent programs) are terminated, and all managers are deactivated.

	<p>Managers previously deactivated on an individual basis are not affected.</p> <p>You can terminate requests and deactivate individual managers. All running requests (running concurrent programs) handled by the manager are terminated.</p> <p>Once deactivated, a manager does not restart until you select the manager and choose the Activate button.</p>
Deactivate	<p>When you deactivate the Internal Concurrent Manager, all other managers are deactivated as well. Managers previously deactivated on an individual basis are not affected.</p> <p>You can deactivate individual managers. Once deactivated, a manager does not restart until you select the manager and choose the Activate button.</p> <p>When you deactivate a manager, including the Internal Concurrent Manager, all requests (concurrent programs) currently running are allowed to complete before the manager(s) shut down.</p>
Verify	<p>This choice appears only when you select the Internal Concurrent Manager.</p> <p>The Internal Concurrent Manager periodically monitors the processes of each concurrent manager. You can force this process monitoring or PMON activity to occur by choosing the Verify button.</p> <p>Another result of selecting this choice is that the Internal Concurrent Manager rereads concurrent program incompatibility rules.</p>
Restart	<p>This choice appears only when you select an individual manager.</p> <p>When you restart a concurrent manager, the manager rereads its definition.</p> <p>You should restart a manager when you have made the following changes using the Define Concurrent Manager form, and you wish those changes to take effect:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change work shift assignments • Modify the number of Target Processes • In a parallel concurrent processing environment, change node or system queue information
Activate	<p>When you activate the Internal Concurrent Manager, you activate all other managers as well, except those managers that were deactivated on an individual basis.</p> <p>You cannot activate the Internal Concurrent Manager from the PC client. The Internal Concurrent Manager is only activated from the server.</p>

You can also activate an individual concurrent manager that is currently deactivated, so long as the Internal manager is active. If the manager is defined to work in the current work shift, then the Internal manager starts it immediately.

Reviewing a Specific Manager

View details of a concurrent manager's operation.

Processes

You can view the details of the processes of a given concurrent manager. Processes that are currently active, migrating, or terminating, as well as processes that have been terminated or deactivated, are displayed.

Requests

For a selected manager you can view all running and pending requests handled by the manager.

The following actions are available only for certain services managed Generic Service Management. These services must be defined to accept commands to suspend their operations.

Suspend

Suspend the operations of the service.

Resume

Resume the operations of the service.

Related Topics

Concurrent Processing Window, page 8-43

Overview of Concurrent Processing, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*

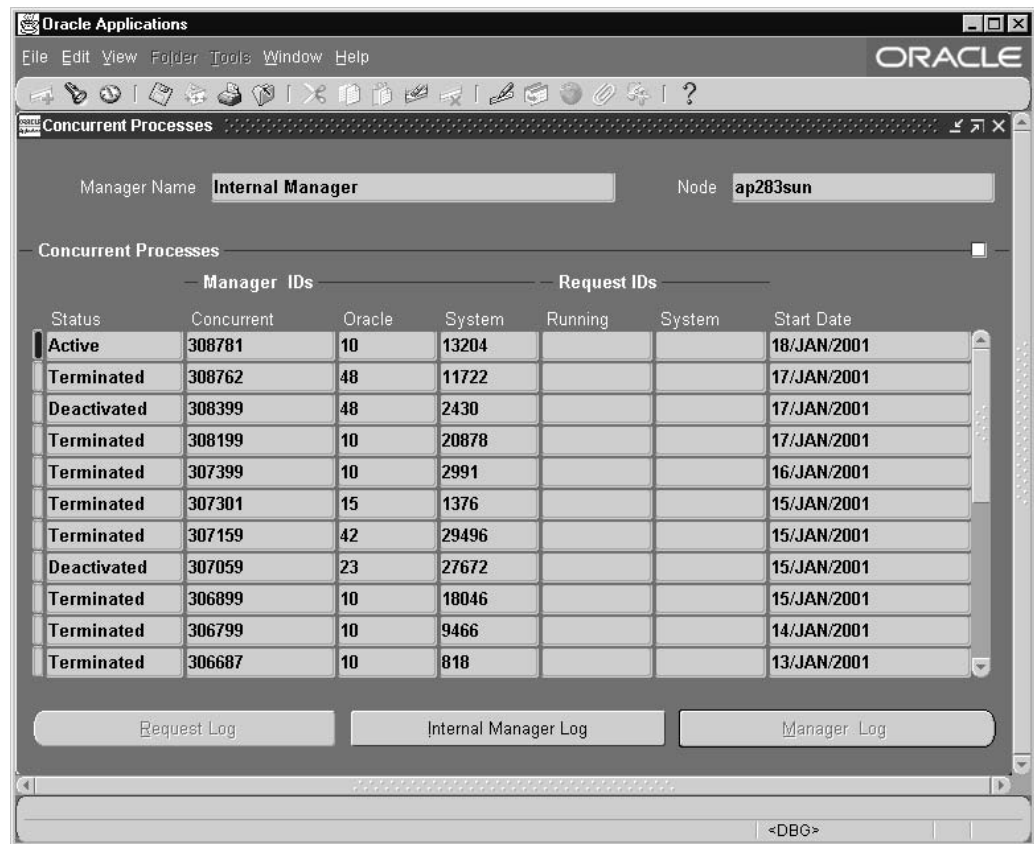
Life cycle of a concurrent request, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*

Defining Managers and their Work Shifts, page 8-1

Controlling Concurrent Managers, page 8-29

Overview of Parallel Concurrent Processing, page 8-35

Concurrent Processes Window



View status information about the processes of a specific concurrent manager, whose name and node are identified near the top of the window.

Displaying this window automatically queries all processes that are currently active, migrating, or terminating, as well as processes that have been terminated or deactivated.

Display order is by status value (Active, Migrating, Terminating, Terminated, Deactivated) and within status, by the order in which processes were started.

If you wish to reduce the number of displayed processes, you can delete records by submitting the "Purge Concurrent Request and Managers" report from the Run Requests form. You can delete records according to the number of days since the processes were started. However, you cannot delete the records of currently active managers.

Status

This field cannot be updated. The following are valid status values:

Active Currently running manager processes display as "Active".

Deactivated Manager processes that are no longer running display as "Deactivated".

These processes were deactivated by you choosing the Deactivate button in the Administer Concurrent Managers block, or by the Internal Concurrent Manager deactivating a concurrent manager at the end of that manager's work shift.

Migrating	<p>Managers that are migrating between primary and secondary nodes display as "Migrating".</p> <p>In a parallel concurrent processing environment, concurrent managers run on either the primary or secondary node assigned to them. Managers migrate to the secondary node if the primary node or the database instance on the primary node is unavailable. Managers migrate back to the primary node once it becomes available.</p>
Terminating	<p>Manager processes that are being terminated display as "Terminating".</p> <p>These processes were terminated by you choosing the Terminate button in the Administer Concurrent Managers block, or by a user selecting "Terminate" in the Concurrent Requests form.</p>
Terminated	<p>Manager processes that have been terminated display as "Terminated".</p> <p>These processes were terminated by you choosing the Terminate button in the Administer Concurrent Managers block, or by a user selecting "Terminate" in the Concurrent Requests form.</p>

Manager Identifiers Concurrent

This field displays a number generated by the individual concurrent manager that identifies the process. This field cannot be updated.

This number may be referenced if an operating system process ID is not available.

You can use this number to view the log file associated with the process. (This is the same log file you view when you select Manager Log from the View field of the Concurrent Requests form):

- At the operating system level, locate yourself in the log directory \$FND_TOP/APPLLOG.
- For concurrent managers, use W<number>.mgr.
- For Internal Monitor processes, use I<number>.mgr.

Manager Identifiers Oracle

This field displays the ORACLE process ID associated with the manager process. This field cannot be updated.

Manager Identifiers System

This field displays the operating system process ID associated with the manager process. This field cannot be updated.

Request Identifiers Running

Please note the following about this field:

- Normally this field is blank, as the run-time of a request is typically very short.
- For a terminated manager, the ID of the request being processed at the time of termination is displayed.

Request Identifiers System

This field displays the operating system process ID for a spawned concurrent process.

Viewing Log Files

Use the three buttons near the bottom of the window to view log files. Log files record information that may be helpful when diagnosing problems.

Request Log

Choose this button to view the log file of the process associated with the running request.

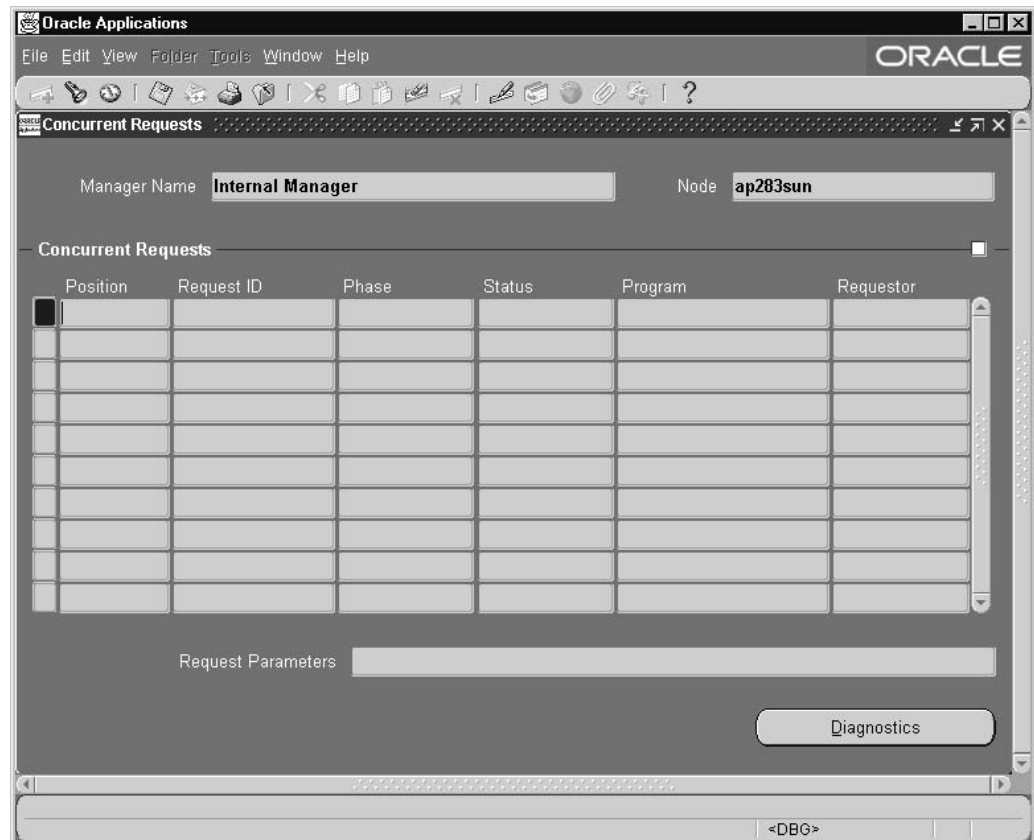
Internal Manager Log

Choose this button to view the Internal Concurrent Manager's log file.

Manager Log

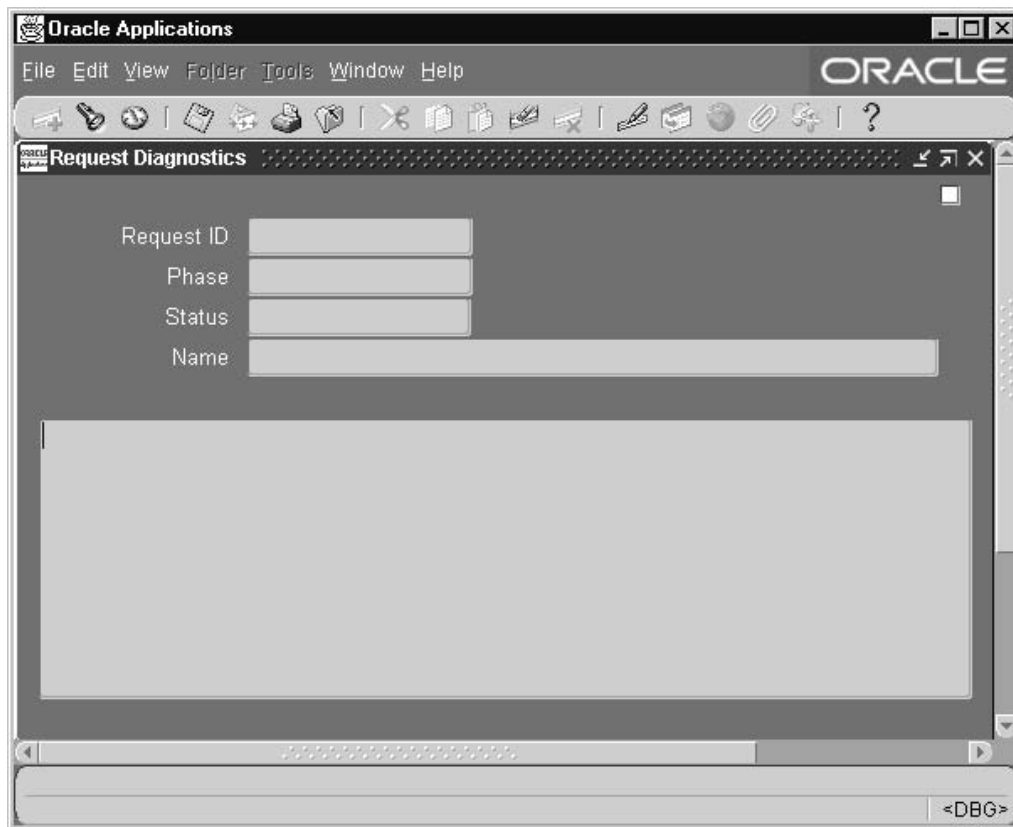
Choose this button to view the log file of the concurrent manager who started running the request.

Concurrent Requests Window



View all running and pending requests for a selected manager, whose name and node are identified near the top of the window.

Request Diagnostics Window



This window informs you when the request completed or if it did not complete, shows you a diagnostic message indicating why.

Related Topics

Concurrent Manager field help, page 8-46

Defining Managers and their Work Shifts, page 8-1

Controlling Concurrent Managers, page 8-29

Overview of Parallel Concurrent Processing, page 8-35

Concurrent Managers Window

Use this window to define your concurrent managers. You can determine when a manager runs and how many programs a manager can start simultaneously when you assign workshifts to the manager. Determine which programs a manager can start by defining specialization rules.

Concurrent Managers Block

The combination of an application and the name you define for your manager uniquely identifies the manager.

Application

The application name does not prevent a manager from starting programs associated with other applications. To restrict a manager to only running programs associated with certain applications, go to the Specialization Rules window.

Type

Once you define a concurrent manager, you cannot update this field. There are several types of managers:

Concurrent Manager	Concurrent Managers start concurrent programs running.
Internal Monitor	Internal Monitors monitor the Internal concurrent manager in a parallel concurrent processing environment. If the Internal Concurrent Manager exits abnormally (for example, because its node or its database instance goes down), an Internal Monitor restarts it on another node.
Transaction Manager	Transaction managers handle synchronous requests from client machines.

Cache Size (Concurrent Manager only)

Enter the number of requests your manager remembers each time it reads which requests to run. For example, if a manager's workshift has 1 target process and a cache value of 3, it will read three requests,, and will wait until these three requests have been run before reading new requests.

In reading requests, the manager will only put requests it is allowed to run into its cache. For example, if you have defined your manager to run only Order Entry reports then the manager will put only Order Entry requests into its cache.

If you enter 1, the concurrent manager must look at its requests list each time it is ready to process another request.

By setting the cache size at a higher number, the concurrent manager does not have to read its requests list each time it runs a request. However, the manager does not recognize any priority changes you make for a particular request if it has already read that request into its cache. Further, even if you give a higher priority to a new request, that new request must wait until the buffer is empty and the manager returns to look at the requests list. That request may have to wait a long time if you set the buffer size to a high number.

You should use cache size to tune your concurrent managers to work most efficiently for you site's needs. If your organization tends to reprioritize jobs going to a certain manager, that manager should have its buffer size set fairly low.

Tip: Enter a value of 1 when defining a manager that runs long, time-consuming jobs, and a value of 3 or 4 for managers that run small, quick jobs.

Data Group (Transaction Manager only)

The data group the transaction manager uses to connect to the database. Transaction managers only run programs submitted from responsibilities that use the same data group as the transaction manager.

Resource Consumer Group

The resource consumer group for the manager. For more information on resource consumer groups, see: Resource Consumer Groups in Oracle Applications, page 12-4.

Parallel Concurrent Processing Details

Node

If you are operating in a parallel concurrent processing environment and you want your manager to operate on a specific node, select the name of the node.

The primary node, if available, is the node your concurrent manager operates on. If the primary node or the database instance on it goes down, your concurrent manager migrates to its secondary node. Your concurrent manager migrates back to its primary node when that node becomes available.

Nodes must be previously registered with Oracle Applications, using the Nodes form. See: Nodes, page 8-57.

System Queue

If you are operating in a parallel concurrent processing environment and you want your manager to use a platform-specific queue management system instead of generic concurrent processing queue management, specify the queue or class name of that system. For example, you may choose a system queue name from a platform-specific queue management system like NQS or IBM Load Leveler.

The primary system queue is the queue you associate with the primary node. The secondary system queue is the queue you associate with the secondary node.

Important: To ensure that your manager uses your platform-specific queue management system, you should start the concurrent managers in the proper mode (set APPLDCP = OSQ). Refer to platform-specific documentation to determine if your platform supports interfacing with system queues. For Unix platforms, refer to the appropriate Oracle Applications Installation Update. For all other platforms, refer to the appropriate Oracle Applications Installation Guide.

Immediate concurrent programs must be registered in a program library by an applications developer using Oracle Application Object Library.

Program Library

Program Library

Concurrent managers can run only those immediate concurrent programs listed in their program library. They can also run concurrent programs that use any other type of concurrent program executable as long as the specialization rules include them.

Immediate concurrent programs must be registered in a program library by an applications developer using Oracle Application Object Library.

Transaction Managers can only run programs listed in their program library.

Defining Manager Operations

The two buttons near the bottom of the window display additional windows for defining when your manager operates, and, if you wish, specializing your manager to run only certain kinds of programs.

Specialization Rules	You define what kinds of requests the manager reads by defining specialization rules for your manager.
Work Shifts	You define when the manager operates by assigning one or more work shifts to your manager. With each work

shift, you can vary the number of programs the manager can run simultaneously.

Work Shifts Window

Work Shift	Description	Processes	Sleep Seconds
...			60

Assign work shifts to a concurrent manager. A work shift defines the dates and times the manager is enabled. For each work shift you define the number of processes the manager starts running.

Work shifts are defined using the Work Shifts form. See: Work Shifts, page 8-51.

Processes

Enter the number of operating system processes you want your work shift to run simultaneously. Each process can run a concurrent request.

For example, if a work shift is defined with three (3) target processes, the manager can run up to three requests simultaneously.

Parameter

Enter the parameter string for a service under Generic Service Management. The value of this field is dependent on the service type definition.

Sleep Seconds

Enter the sleep time for your manager during this work shift. Sleep time is the number of seconds your manager waits between checking the list of pending concurrent requests (concurrent requests waiting to be started).

Tip: Set the sleep time to be very brief during periods when the number of requests submitted is expected to be high.

Specialization Rules Window

Include / Exclude	Type	Application	Name
Include	Program		

Specialize your manager to run only certain kinds of requests. Without specialization rules, a manager accepts requests to start *any* concurrent program.

Include/Exclude

Select from the poplist whether or not to include or exclude those requests that are based on the rule to run.

Type

Select the type of specialization rule you want to assign to your manager. Based on the rule's action you selected, allow or disallow, requests can be run by your manager according to a:

- Combined Rule

For example, only requests that satisfy the combined rule you select are allowed to be run by your manager. Or conversely, requests that satisfy a certain combined rule are excluded from running.

Combined specialization rules, which combine more than one logical statement, are defined using the Combined Specialization Rules form. See: Combined Specialization Rules, page 8-52.

- ORACLE ID

For example, programs with a certain ORACLE ID are excluded from running. Or conversely, a concurrent manager only includes programs with a specific ORACLE ID.

- Program

- For example, all programs submitted by a certain user are excluded from running. Or conversely, a concurrent manager includes only programs submitted by the user you select.

"09:00" (9:00 am) as the start time and "17:00" (5:00 pm) as the end time. Note that Oracle Applications uses a 24-hour clock.

Days of Week From/Days of Week To

Enter the first and last days of this shift. For instance, if your shift name is "Week Days", you could enter "Monday" in the "Days of Week From" field and "Friday" in the "Days of Week To" field. If you enter a value in the "Days of Week From" field, you must enter a value in the "Days of Week To field". You may not use the Date field for this row.

Date

Enter a date here to create a date-specific workshift. For instance, you can name a workshift "Memorial Day", and enter the date in this field to enable this workshift only on the Memorial Day holiday.

Date-specific workshifts override workshifts that do not specify a specific date. If you want to enter a value in this field (specify a date), you may not enter values for the Days of Week fields for this row. See: Overlapping Work Shifts - Priority Levels, page 8-4.

Related Topics

Defining Managers and their Work Shifts, page 8-1

Work Shift by Manager Report, page 8-13

Work Shifts Report, page 8-13

Administer Concurrent Managers field help, page 8-39

Concurrent Managers field help, page 8-46

Combined Specialization Rules Window

Oracle Applications

File Edit View Folder Tools Window Help

Combined Specialization Rules

Combined Rule

Application

Description

Specialization Rules

Include/ Exclude	Type	Application	Name

Description

<DBG>

Define rules identifying which requests a concurrent manager can read. With the rules you define here, you may specialize the function of a concurrent manager.

Using this window, you can define several Include and Exclude statements, each referred to as a specialization line, and combine the lines into a single specialization rule referred to as a *Combined Rule*.

Unlike the individual rules you define using the Specialization Rules window from within the Concurrent Managers window, the combined rules you define here differ in two ways:

- You can combine Include and Exclude statements. This enables you to identify very specific requests for running concurrent programs.
- Within a combined rule, using multiple Include statements restricts a concurrent manager more.

With individual rules you define using the Specialization Rules window (within the Concurrent Managers window), the more "Include" rules you define, the less restricted a manager becomes.

See: Concurrent Managers, page 8-46

Combined Specialization Rules Block

Together, the application name and the name you define for your combined specialization rule uniquely identifies the rule.

Application

The application name does not prevent a concurrent manager from starting programs associated with other applications.

Specialization Rules Block

Define the individual rules (statements) that make up your combined specialization rule.

- Each rule in this block defines one statement.
- The sum of all the specialization rules defines your combined specialization rule.

Include/Exclude

Select from the poplist whether to include or exclude those requests that are based on the rule to run.

Type

Select the type of specialization rule you want to enforce on a concurrent manager.

You cannot combine two Include rules of the same type.

- For example, you cannot include programs to be associated with an ORACLE ID, then, on another line, include programs to be associated with a second, different ORACLE ID.

Based on a rule's action, exclude or include, programs can be run by your manager according to a:

- ORACLE ID

For example, programs with a certain ORACLE ID are excluded from running. Or conversely, a concurrent manager only includes programs with a specific ORACLE ID.

- **Program**
For example, only the program you select is excluded from running. Or conversely, a concurrent manager only includes the programs you select. You can also include or exclude all programs belonging to a specific application using the Program type by entering the application in the Application field and leaving the Name field empty.
- **Request Type (of the program)**
For example, programs of a certain request type are excluded from running. Or conversely, a concurrent manager only includes programs with the request type you select.
- **User (application username at sign on)**
For example, all programs submitted by a certain user are excluded from running. Or conversely, a concurrent manager includes only programs submitted by the user you select.

Related Topics

Specializing Managers to run only certain programs, page 8-14

Defining Specialization Rules, page 8-14

Defining Combined Specialization Rules, page 8-22

Using Combined Rules, page 8-24

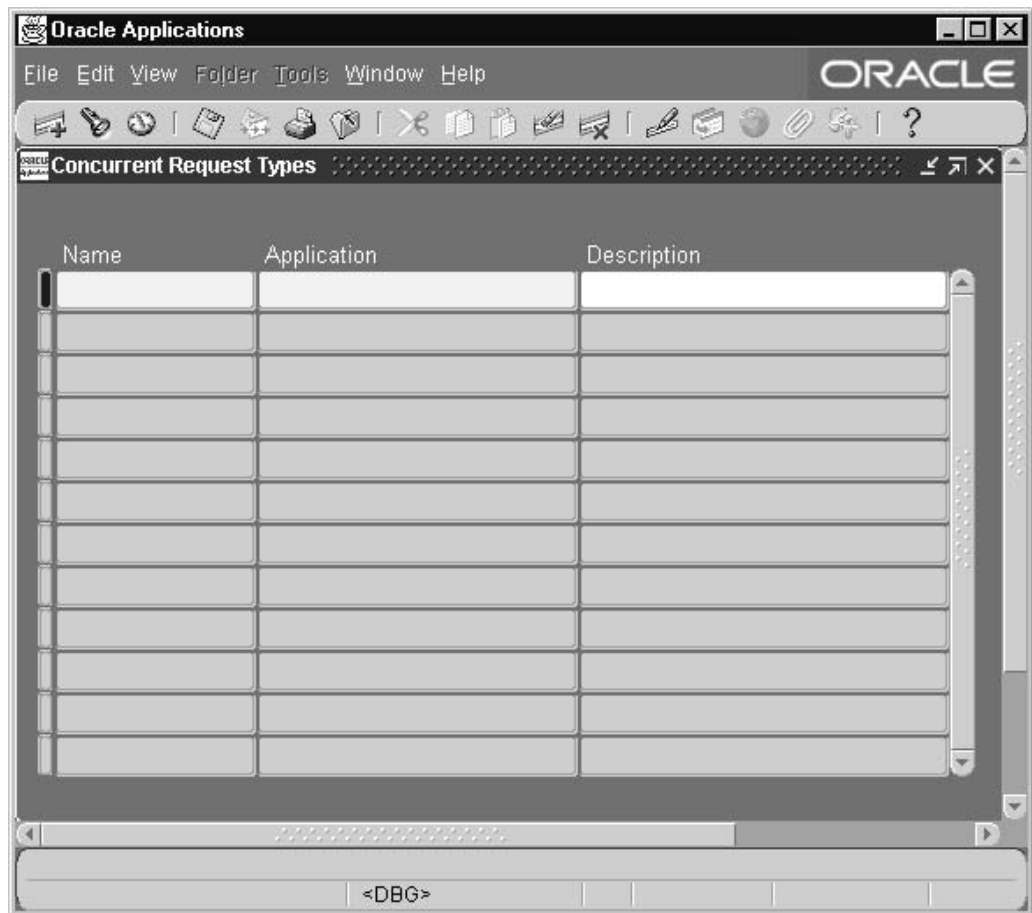
Differences Between Specialization and Combined Rules, page 8-27

Grouping Programs by Request Type, page 8-28

Administer Concurrent Managers field help, page 8-39

Concurrent Managers field help, page 8-46

Concurrent Request Types Window



Use this window to identify several concurrent programs as a group by assigning each program a common *request type*.

You assign a request type defined here to a concurrent program using the Concurrent Programs window. Then, when you define a concurrent manager using the Define Concurrent Manager window, you can define the manager to run (Allow) or not run concurrent programs based on their request type.

For example, you could define a request type as "end-of-month reports", assign that request type to several concurrent programs, then define a concurrent manager to only run "end-of-month" requests.

Concurrent Request Types Block

Name and describe each type of concurrent request you want to define. The combination of application name plus request type uniquely identifies your concurrent request type.

This application name does not prevent you from assigning this request type to concurrent programs associated with other application names.

Related Topics

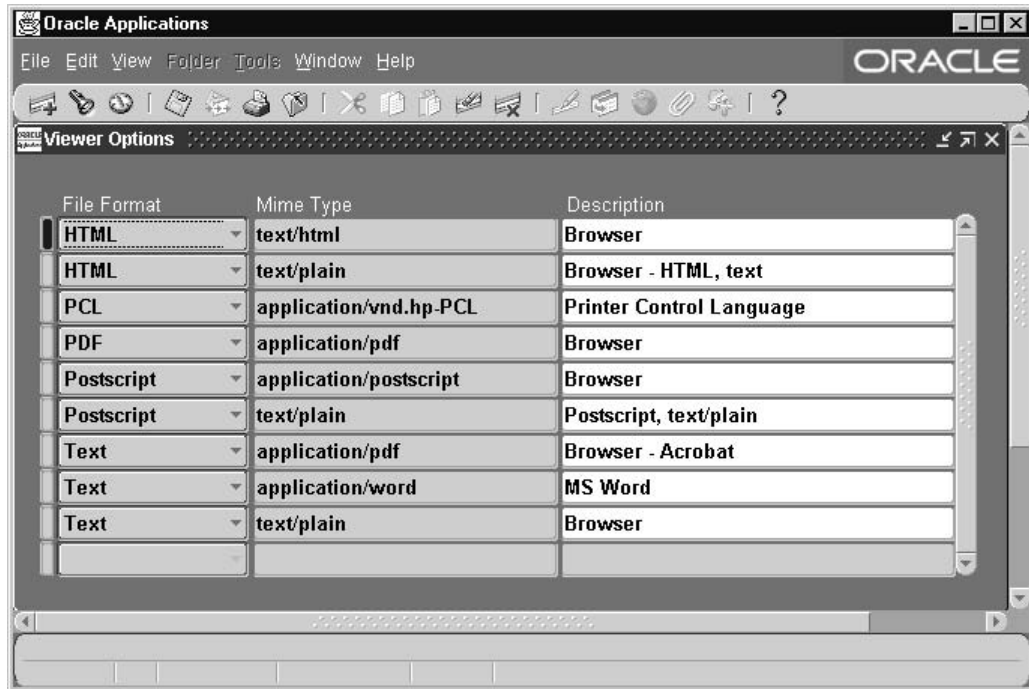
Specializing Managers to run only certain programs, page 8-14

Grouping Programs by Request Type, page 8-28

Concurrent Managers field help, page 8-46

Combined Specialization Rules field help, page 8-52

Viewer Options Window



Use this form to define the MIME types for the output formats of your concurrent requests. These MIME types are used in viewing reports.

For each file format, you can associate one or more MIME types.

A user can use one MIME type to view reports of a certain format. For example, a user can view all text format reports in Microsoft Word. The MIME types for supported formats for a particular user are set by several profile options. They are:

- Viewer: Application for HTML
- Viewer: Application for PCL
- Viewer: Application for PDF
- Viewer: Application for PostScript
- Viewer: Application for Text

This MIME type is sent to a browser window when the user views a report of that file format.

Viewer Options Block

Associate one or more MIME types with each supported file format. By defining viewer options, you can specify the application or applications that are available for displaying files of each format.

File Format

The file format.

MIME Type

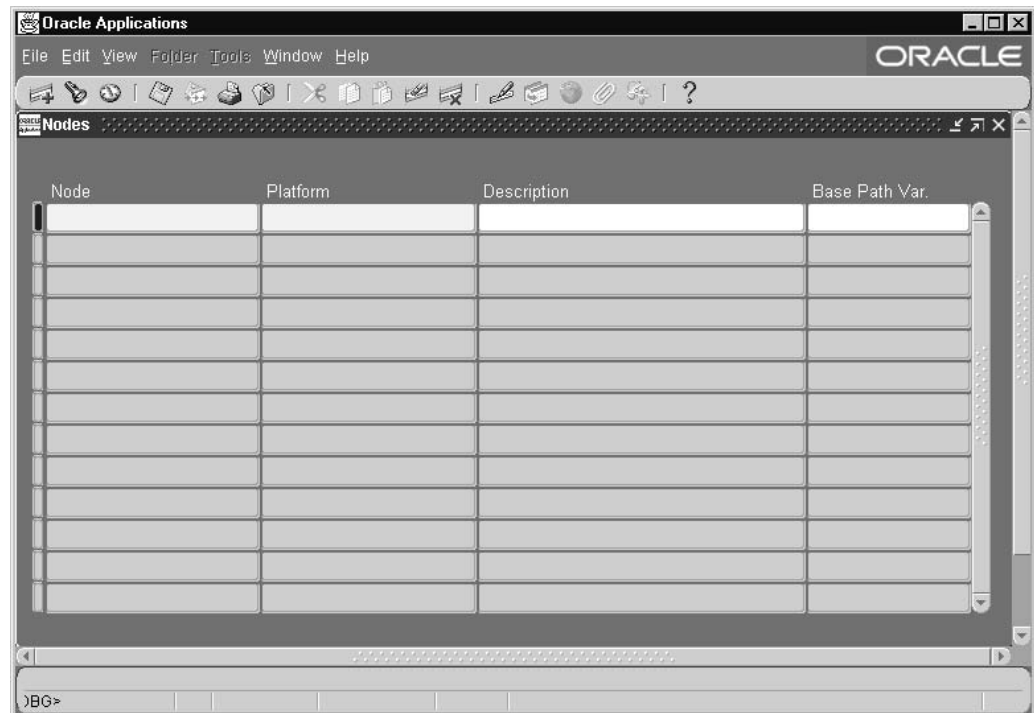
The MIME type to use for the file output.

Related Topics

Defining the Reports Viewer, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*

Reviewing Requests, Request Log Files, and Report Output Files, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*

Nodes Window



A node consists of one or more processors and their associated memory. In parallel concurrent processing environments (such as cluster, massively parallel, and homogeneous networked environments) each node operates independently of other nodes except when sharing resources, such as a disk.

You can assign concurrent managers to different nodes to spread your concurrent processing workload and increase throughput. A concurrent manager runs its processes on the nodes to which it is assigned.

Nodes Block

Node

Enter the operating system name of a node.

Platform

Select the operating system platform that your node resides on.

Base Path Var.

Consult your installation manual to determine the correct base path variable for your platform to determine the location of the concurrent managers' log and out files for this node.

Related Topics

Overview of Parallel Concurrent Processing, page 8-35

Concurrent Managers field help, page 8-46

Setting Up and Starting Concurrent Managers

Concurrent Managers

Oracle Applications concurrent managers run processes in the background on a server machine. You must set up and start the concurrent managers for each product group before you can use your Oracle Applications products. Refer to the *AD Procedures Guide* for details on the `adcmctl` script for starting and stopping concurrent managers. The instructions in this section apply whether you are installing or upgrading.

Setting Up Concurrent Managers

For UNIX

Keep the following in mind when you start the concurrent managers:

- Concurrent managers inherit directory privileges from the user who starts them. If you plan to start the managers from a login other than the main applications login, `applmgr`, ensure that the login has the appropriate directory privileges.

For more information on directory privileges, see *Oracle Applications Concepts*.

Parameter values set in `startmgr` override any other values. Command line values override environment and default values, and so on. Another section in this manual contains more information on editing the `startmgr` script.

You can change directory privileges while the managers are running, and the changes will be effective immediately. You can change environment variables and startup parameters while the managers are running, but your changes will not take effect until the concurrent managers are restarted. To put changes into effect, shut down the managers, make the necessary modifications, and restart the managers.

For Windows

On Windows platforms, the `OracleConcMgr<SID>` service (where `<SID>` is the database `<SID>` and the value of the `LOCAL` variable) spawns the concurrent manager programs. The `OracleConcMgr<SID>` service is initially created by the Rapid Install program. If you need to recreate the service, use one of the following two methods:

Method 1

From the command prompt:

```
C:\> cd %COMMON_TOP%\admin\install
C:\> adsvcm.cmd <NT User> <NT Password>
```

where NT User is the user that runs the concurrent manager service, and NT Password is the password of the user that runs the service.

Method 2

Invoke the GUI program ccmsetup.exe (located in %FND_TOP%\bin), and choose the option to create the service.

Parameters

The following entries describe the concurrent manager startup parameters, which are read by the concurrent manager service and passed to the concurrent manager programs. The GUI program ccmsetup.exe (located in %FND_TOP%\bin) should be used to create and set these parameters in the Windows registry. Note that the registry settings override defaults. These parameters can also be used by the adcmctl.cmd script (see the *AD Procedures Guide* for more information).

Database Connection

Schema Name	The APPS schema name should be set to the APPS user ID.
Password	This is the password to the Oracle Applications account in the database.
TNS Aliasname	This is the database <SID>.

Server Startup

Use this Account	Check the "Use this Account box" to specify the OS account (<NT User> and <NT Password>) that runs the CCM service. If you do not check this box, the system account launching the service will not have permission to access network resources.
-------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Startup Options

Sleep	Number of seconds (integer) the internal concurrent manager waits between times it looks for new concurrent requests. The default value is 60.
Restart	Number of minutes (integer) the internal concurrent manager waits before attempting to restart after abnormal termination. The default value prevents the manager from restarting after abnormal termination. The default value is N.
Queue Size	Number of pmon cycles (integer) the internal concurrent manager waits between times it checks for normal changes in concurrent manager operation. Normal changes include the start or end of a work shift and changes to concurrent manager definitions entered in the Concurrent Managers form. The default value is 1.
PMON cycle	Number of sleep cycles (integer) the internal concurrent manager waits between times it checks for concurrent

managers that have failed while running a concurrent request. The default value is 20.

Printer Name	Name of the printer to which the concurrent managers send request output, where the requests are submitted from within a concurrent program if the submitting program (parent request) does not have a printer associated with it.
Enable Distributed Concurrent Processing	Check this box to enable distributed concurrent processing.

Shutdown

Deactivate/ Normal	Shuts down the concurrent managers using normal shutdown methods.
Terminate/Abort Processes	When shutting down the concurrent managers, aborts the concurrent managers.

Note: This option is currently disabled. Checking this box will have no effect.

File Logging

Activation Log	The name of the log file generated upon startup of the Internal Concurrent Manager. Defaults to CM_<SID>.log.
Deactivation Log	The name of the log file generated upon shutdown of the Internal Concurrent Manager. Defaults to CS_<SID>.log.
Record Diagnostic Messages	Checking this box will cause concurrent managers to produce diagnostic output regularly. Note that leaving this box unchecked prevents large log files.
Save Log History	Checking this box prevents log files from being overwritten when the concurrent manager is started.

Additional setup is required to enable printing and reporting through the concurrent manager service. Please refer to the instructions in the Enable Printing section of the "Oracle Applications Installation Update Notes Release 11i for Windows NT/2000" available on [OracleMetaLink](#) for details.

Starting the Concurrent Managers

Before starting the concurrent managers, you must start the Oracle Applications TNS listener on all nodes. The TNS listener must be started by the applmgr user.

For UNIX

You can start the concurrent managers from by running the script startmgr from the operating system command line. To start the concurrent manager from the operating system prompt, use the following syntax:

```
$ startmgr \
sysmgr="<APPS username>/<APPS password>" \
mgrname="<name>" \
PRINTER="<printer>" \
mailto="<userid1 userid2...>" \
restart="N|<minutes>" \
logfile="<filename>" \
sleep="<seconds>" \
pmon="<cycles>" \
quesiz="<cycles>" \
diag="Y|N"
```

All parameters are optional. You can pass parameters to the script in any order. These parameters can also be used by the `adcmctl.sh` script (see the *AD Procedures Guide* for more information).

Parameters

The following entries describe the concurrent manager startup parameters. The default values apply if you do not specify different values in the `startmgr` script, on the command line when you run `startmgr`, or in your environment.

sysmgr	APPS schema name should be set to the APPS schema user ID and password. You will be prompted for the password if you omit the parameter and use the default value. The default value is <code>\$FNDNAM</code> .
mgrname	Name of the internal concurrent manager (alphanumeric characters only). The default value is <code>std</code> .
PRINTER	Name of the printer to which the concurrent managers send request output, where the requests are submitted from within a concurrent program if the submitting program (parent request) does not have a printer associated with it.
mailto	List of users who receive mail when the internal concurrent manager stops running. The default value is the user who starts managers.
restart	Number of minutes (integer) the internal concurrent manager waits before attempting to restart after abnormal termination. The default value is <code>N</code> . The default value prevents the manager from restarting after abnormal termination.
logfile	The name of the internal concurrent manager's log file. The default value is <code><mgrname.mgr></code> .
sleep	Number of seconds (integer) the internal concurrent manager waits between times it looks for new concurrent requests. The default value is <code>60</code> .
pmon	Number of sleep cycles (integer) the internal concurrent manager waits between times it checks for concurrent managers that have failed while running a concurrent request. The default value is <code>20</code> .
quesiz	Number of pmon cycles (integer) the internal concurrent manager waits between times it checks for normal changes

in concurrent manager operation. Normal changes include the start or end of a work shift and changes to concurrent manager definitions entered in the Concurrent Managers form. The default value is 1.

diag

diag=Y tells all concurrent managers to produce diagnostic output regularly. The default value diag=N prevents large log files.

Example

```
$ startmgr sysmgr="apps/apps" \  
mgrname="std" \  
PRINTER="hqseq1" \  
mailto="jsmith" \  
restart="N" \  
logfile="mgrlog" \  
sleep="30" \  
pmon="5" \  
quesiz="2"
```

For Windows

The OracleConcMgr<SID> service is launched from the Control Panel Services applet. It can also be launched from the command line using the following command:

```
C:\> net start OracleConcMgr<SID>
```

- Concurrent managers inherit directory privileges from the user who installs and starts them. If you plan to install and start the managers from a login other than the main applications login (applmgr) ensure that the login has the appropriate directory privileges. The Windows account that starts the concurrent manager service must be the same one that installed it.
- Startup parameter values apply in this order:
 - Values set in the registry (through the use of ccmsetup)
 - Default values

This means that values set in the registry override the default values.

You cannot change startup parameters while the managers are running. To put changes into effect, shut down the managers, make the necessary modifications, and restart the managers.

Restarting the Concurrent Managers

You must restart the concurrent managers whenever you start the Oracle8i Server database or change the concurrent manager startup parameters.

On UNIX platforms, concurrent managers append to their own log file if the log files exist when they restart. Therefore, the user who restarts the concurrent managers must either own the existing files, have write privilege for them, or delete them before restarting.

On Windows, the concurrent manager logs are overwritten when the concurrent managers are restarted. Checking the "Save Log History" option in the ccmsetup GUI tool saves the previous log files.

The concurrent managers delete temporary files when each concurrent process finishes. If the concurrent managers stop abnormally, however, they may not delete these files.

Tip: Delete temporary files only if they have not been accessed more recently than a few days ago. This helps to prevent the loss of files required by the operating system or the concurrent managers.

Ideally, delete temporary files during maintenance windows when the database is down and no applications programs are active.

Shutting Down the Concurrent Manager Service (Windows)

The OracleConcMgr<SID> service may be shut down from the Control Panel Services applet. It can also be stopped from the command line using the following command:

```
C:\> net stop OracleConcMgr<SID>
```

Although you can shut down concurrent managers from Oracle Applications System Administrator's responsibility, this does not stop the concurrent manager service. You must still stop the concurrent manager service from the Windows Control Panel Services applet before you can restart the concurrent managers.

Note: The OracleConcMgr<SID> service may take several minutes to shut down because it needs to finish processing currently running requests.

Warning: Do not use the Task Manager to stop the concurrent manager service or other Applications processes unless you are advised to do so by Oracle Worldwide Support.

Removing the Concurrent Manager Service (Windows)

If you need to remove the concurrent manager service, ensure that it is not running.

To remove or delete the OracleConcMgr<SID> service, use one of the following 2 methods:

Method 1

At the command prompt, type:

```
C:\> cd %COMMON_TOP%\admin\install
C:\> adsvcm.cmd -deinstall
```

Method 2

Invoke the GUI program ccmsetup.exe, and choose the option to remove the service.

Once you have done this, you will need to reinstall the concurrent manager service in order to process concurrent requests.

File Conventions

The following tables list the locations and file naming conventions for log, output, and temporary files. The location of product log and output files depends on whether you have set up a common directory.

For UNIX

File Type	Location	Filename
Internal Concurrent Manager Log	\$FND_TOP/\$APPLLOG with Common Directory: \$APPLCSF/\$APPLLOG	<mgrname>.mgr
Concurrent Manager Log	\$FND_TOP/\$APPLLOG with Common Directory: \$APPLCSF/\$APPLLOG	W<nnn>.mgr
Request Log	Default: \$<PROD>_TOP/\$APPLLOG with Common Directory: \$APPLCSF/\$APPLLOG	l<request ID>.req
Request Output	Default: \$<PROD>_TOP/\$APPLOUT with Common Directory: \$APPLCSF/\$APPLOUT	O<request ID>.out
Temporary	\$APPLTMP or \$REPORTS60_TMP	OF<abcd12345>.t where <abcd12345> is a random OS-generated string

Parameters

The variable parameters have the following values:

mgrname	For UNIX, the name specified with the mgrname parameter in the startmgr command. If no name is specified, the filename is std.mgr. For Windows, the name specified with the mgrname parameter in the ccmsetup.exe program. If no name is specified, the filename is std.mgr.
nnn	A sequence number between 1 and 999 is generated by the concurrent processing facility.
<PROD>_TOP	The product's top environment variable, such as GL_TOP.
request ID	The number that identifies the concurrent request.
USERNAME	Up to eight characters (uppercase) of the application username of the user that requested the concurrent process.
<abcd12345>	Naming convention in which <abcd> are random letters and <12345> designate the operating system process ID of the concurrent process that generated the file.

Directory Privileges

Oracle recommends that you start the managers from the applmgr login to ensure that they inherit the correct directory privileges. The user who starts the concurrent managers then owns the log and output files that the concurrent managers create.

Oracle recommends that you start the managers from the applmgr login to ensure that they inherit the correct directory privileges.

For UNIX, any user who runs an environment file and has access to the startmgr script can start the concurrent managers.

Warning: Always start the concurrent managers from the applmgr login if you are using parallel concurrent processing on multiple nodes.

For UNIX

This section describes directory privileges for UNIX.

Setting the startmgr User ID with setuid in UNIX

To ensure that startmgr inherits the applmgr directory privileges, you can use the UNIX setuid facility to set startmgr to the applmgr login's UNIX user ID. The concurrent managers then inherit the applmgr privileges no matter which login runs startmgr. This allows you to start or restart concurrent managers using the Administer Concurrent Managers form, regardless of the originating UNIX login. Note that you must reset the user ID with setuid if you modify or copy startmgr. Refer to your online UNIX documentation for information on setuid.

Note: The use of the setuid command may cause unexpected behavior on certain platforms that employ dynamic linking of libraries. Please refer to the Oracle Applications Installation Update for your platform for any information regarding this problem.

Directory Privileges for Logins other than applmgr

If you do not set the startmgr script to the applmgr user ID and you start the managers from a login other than applmgr, that login needs to have these privileges:

- Read and execute privileges on all Oracle Applications directories
- Write privilege for all directories defined by the following variables:
 - APPLLOG (typically log directory or directories)
 - APPLOUT (typically out directory or directories)
 - APPLCSF (common directory for log and output files)
 - APPLTMP (temporary directory)
 - REPORTS60_TMP (temporary directory for Oracle Reports files)
- Write privilege for these directories: /tmp and /usr/tmp

You can verify that a login has the necessary privileges on a certain directory with this command:

```
$ ls -ld < directory>
```

Here is an example:

```
$ ls -ld /usr/tmp
drwxrwxrwx 3 root 22880 Mar 10 11:05 /usr/tmp
    ^^^
```

The three letters marked in the sample response indicate that all users have read, write, and execute privilege for the directory.

Printing (UNIX)

This section contains printer reference material specific to the UNIX operating system, including information on how to create and register executable printing programs.

To register printers in the Printers form of Oracle Applications, your Oracle Applications System Administrator needs to know each printer's operating system name. Your installation update tells you where to find the printer names for your platform.

For additional information, see: Operating System Names for Printers, *Oracle Applications Installation Update* for your platform.

Standard Print Subroutine

The standard printing subroutine that you can select in the Printer Drivers form uses Oracle Application Object Library routines to print reports. This requires fewer machine resources than printing through a customized executable program or a shell command such as lp or lpr.

When you use the subroutine, there may be options available through the descriptive flexfield at the bottom of the form. These options vary by platform and may include the following: mail Notify user by electronic mail when report finishes printing.

- Mail: Notify user by electronic mail when report finishes printing.
- Priority: Set the priority for reports in the print queue.

Check your installation update for any additional options available on your platform.

Executable Printing Programs

Oracle Applications supports the use of executable programs for printing. However, we recommend that you use executable programs only to provide features unavailable through Oracle Applications printer drivers, such as:

- Interpreting special characters in the text passed to the printer. For example, you need a program to interpret 8-bit characters sent to a 7-bit compatible printer
- Interpreting arguments passed by Oracle Applications. For example, you need a program to perform different actions based on different output filenames.

If you do not need to support special features such as these, print through the standard printing subroutine and printer drivers defined in the Oracle Applications database. This makes the most efficient use of machine resources.

Upgrading to Existing Executable Programs

Because printing through the standard printer subroutine uses machine resources more effectively than printing through executable programs, we recommend the following if you used executable printing programs in the previous release of Oracle Applications:

- If predefined printer drivers can replace the executable program, simply register the drivers along with the printer types in the Printer Types form.

For example, Oracle Applications provides a print style Landscape and the printer driver LANDSCAPESUB. They perform the same function as the program land, which enables DEC LN03 printers to print 132 characters per line.

- If no predefined drivers will work, you may be able to create a customized driver that can replace the executable. You create drivers with the Printer Drivers form.

- If you cannot replace the executable with a simple printer driver definition, you can continue to use the executable by registering it or the shell script that calls it with Oracle Applications.

Writing an Executable Program

Executable printing programs can format report output through escape sequences or a printer programming language. Creating them requires a thorough knowledge of both printer operation and a computer programming language. Follow the guidelines in this section if you need to create an executable printing program.

Printer Styles

An executable program should be able to format report output for various print styles, including these:

- Portrait: 80 columns wide, 66 lines per page
- Landscape 132 characters wide, 66 lines per page (62 lines per page on A4 style paper)
- Landwide 180 characters wide, 66 lines per page (62 lines per page on A4 style paper)

Formatting Arguments

If the program handles formatting for various print styles internally, you can pass arguments from the printer drivers to the program to determine which print style to use.

If the program does not contain print style formatting commands, you can define the commands in a shell script that calls the program. You then define the shell script as the printing program in a printer driver and pass arguments that determine the print style from the driver to the script.

The printer driver that calls the executable program or shell script must be able to pass the following arguments:

- Name of the destination printer
- Number of copies to print
- Banner on title page
- Filename

Initialization and Reset

You do not have to add printer initialization and reset strings to your program if you can define these strings in the Printer Drivers form.

Character Mode Oracle Reports Commands

We recommend that you design your executable programs to work with the standard Oracle Reports print drivers. The following standard drivers are located in the \$FND_TOP/\$APPLREP directory:

- P.prt - Portrait style
- L.prt - Landscape style
- W.prt - Landwide style
- A.prt - A4 style

The program should not misinterpret the commands for bold on, bold off, and page size that the standard drivers imbed in Oracle Applications reports. If necessary, you can create customized Oracle Reports drivers as described below.

Location of Program

When you have compiled and linked the source code or written a shell script, move the program to the \$APPLBIN subdirectory under the top directory of your custom development area. Keep copies of the source file in your custom development area as a backup.

Creating Customized Character Mode Oracle Reports Print Drivers

The Oracle Reports print drivers set the font styles for italics, underlining, and bolding. If your executable printing program cannot use the standard Oracle Reports drivers, create a customized driver for each print style you will use with the program.

To create a customized driver, copy L.prt, P.prt, A.prt, or W.prt from \$FND_TOP/\$APPLREP to your custom development area. Modify a standard driver as needed for your executable printing program. Give the customized driver a new filename but keep the .prt extension. Then copy the customized driver to \$FND_TOP/\$APPLREP.

Tip: Use the executable program name and print style letter as the driver name. For example, use HPLJ3P.prt for portrait style printing with the executable program HPLJ3. When you print in portrait style with this program, the concurrent managers pass the HPLJ3P.prt driver to Oracle Reports as DESFORMAT=HPLJ3P.

Registering Executable Programs

When you have created your executable programs and, optionally, your shell scripts and Oracle Reports drivers, register them in the Printer Drivers form.

1. Navigate to the Printer Drivers window and create a new printer driver name. Also add the user name, description, and platform.
2. In the SRW Driver field, enter the name (without the .prt extension) of a standard or customized Oracle Reports driver. All drivers must be in the directory \$FND_TOP/\$APPLREP.
3. Enter Program as the driver method.
4. Enter No in the Spool File field.
5. Enter No in the Standard Input field.
6. In the program name field, enter the name of the executable program or the shell script that calls it. Include the full path name if this file is not in the \$FND_TOP/bin directory.
7. Add the arguments that Oracle Applications passes to the program or shell script. The driver must pass the following to the executable program:
 - Name of the destination printer
 - Number of copies to print
 - Banner on title page
 - Filename
 - Add the initialization and reset strings to the appropriate fields if the program does not send these strings to the printer.

For Windows

This section contains printer reference material specific to the Windows operating system. It also explains how to create and register executable printing programs.

Additional setup is required to enable printing and reporting through the concurrent manager service. Please refer to the instructions in the Enable Printing section of the "Oracle Applications Installation Update Notes Release 11i for Windows NT/2000" available on *OracleMetaLink* for details.

Operating System Names for Printers

To register printers in the Printers window of Oracle Applications, your Oracle Applications system administrator needs to know each printer's operating system name. For Windows, you can obtain the printer's name from the Printers folder in My Computer. If you register an invalid printer, the operating system's default printer will be used instead.

Standard Print Subroutine

The standard printing subroutine that you can select in the Printer Drivers form uses Oracle Application Object Library routines to print reports. This requires fewer machine resources than printing through a customized executable program DOS command such as PRINT.

Executable Printing Programs

Oracle Applications supports the use of executable programs for printing. However, we recommend that you use executable programs only to provide features unavailable through Oracle Applications printer drivers, such as:

- Interpreting special characters in the text passed to the printer. For example, you need a program to interpret 8-bit characters sent to a 7-bit compatible printer.
- Interpreting arguments passed by Oracle Applications. For example, you need a program to perform different actions based on different output filenames.

If you do not need to support special features such as these, print through the standard printing subroutine and printer drivers defined in the Oracle Applications database. This makes the most efficient use of machine resources.

Upgrading Existing Executable Programs

Because printing through the standard printer subroutine uses machine resources more effectively than printing through executable programs, we recommend the following if you used executable printing programs in the previous release of Oracle Applications:

- If predefined printer drivers can replace the executable program, simply register the drivers along with the printer types in the Printer Types form.

For example, Oracle Applications provides a print style Landscape and the printer driver LANDSCAPESUB. They perform the same function as the program land, which enables DEC LN03 printers to print 132 characters per line.
- If no predefined drivers will work, you may be able to create a customized driver that can replace the executable. You create drivers with the Printer Drivers form.
- If you cannot replace the executable with a simple printer driver definition, you can continue to use the executable by registering it or the shell script that calls it with Oracle Applications.

Writing an Executable Program

Executable printing programs can format report output through escape sequences or a printer programming language. Creating them requires a thorough knowledge of both printer operation and a computer programming language. Follow the guidelines in this section if you need to create an executable printing program.

Printer Styles

An executable program should be able to format report output for various print styles, including these:

- Portrait: 80 columns wide, 66 lines per page
- Landscape 132 characters wide, 66 lines per page (62 lines per page on A4 style paper)
- Landwide 180 characters wide, 66 lines per page (62 lines per page on A4 style paper)

Formatting Arguments

If the program handles formatting for various print styles internally, you can pass arguments from the printer drivers to the program to determine which print style to use.

If the program does not contain print style formatting commands, you can define the commands in a command file that calls the program. You then define the .cmd file as the printing program in a printer driver and pass arguments that determine the print style from the driver to the script.

The printer driver that calls the executable program or .cmd file must be able to pass the following arguments:

- Name of the destination printer
- Number of copies to print
- Banner on title page
- Filename

Initialization and Reset

You do not have to add printer initialization and reset strings to your program if you can define these strings in the Printer Drivers form.

Character Mode Oracle Reports Commands

We recommend that you design your executable programs to work with the standard Oracle Reports print drivers. The following standard drivers are located in the %FND_TOP%\%APPLREP% directory:

- P.prt - Portrait style
- L.prt - Landscape style
- W.prt - Landwide style
- A.prt - A4 style

The program should not misinterpret the commands for bold on, bold off, and page size that the standard drivers imbed in Oracle Applications reports. If necessary, you can create customized Oracle Reports drivers as described in the next section.

Location of Program

When you have compiled and linked the source code or written a command file, move the program to the %APPLBIN% subdirectory under the top directory of your custom development area. Keep copies of the source file in your custom development area as a backup.

Creating Customized Character Mode Oracle Reports Print Drivers

The Oracle Reports print drivers set the font styles for italics, underlining, and bolding. If your executable printing program cannot use the standard Oracle Reports drivers, create a customized driver for each print style you will use with the program.

To create a customized driver, copy L.prt, P.prt, A.prt, or W.prt from %FND_TOP%\%APPLREP% to your custom development area. Modify a standard driver as needed for your executable printing program. Give the customized driver a new filename but keep the .prt extension. Then copy the customized driver to %FND_TOP%\%APPLREP%.

Tip: Use the executable program name and print style letter as the driver name. For example, use HPLJ3P.prt for portrait style printing with the executable program HPLJ3. When you print in portrait style with this program, the concurrent managers pass the HPLJ3P.prt driver to Oracle Reports as DESFORMAT=HPLJ3P.

For more information, see the Oracle Reports Developer documentation.

Registering Executable Programs

When you have created your executable programs and, optionally, your Oracle Reports drivers, register them in the Printer Drivers form.

Define a printer driver and corresponding print style for each print style that your executable program supports. Complete the following steps to register an executable program for a printer driver:

1. Navigate to the Printer Drivers form and create a new printer driver name. Also add the user name, description, and platform.
2. In the SRW Driver field, enter the name (without the .prt extension) of a standard or customized Oracle Reports driver. All drivers must be in the directory %FND_TOP%\%APPLREP%.
3. Enter Program as the driver method.
4. Enter No in the Spool File field.
5. Enter No in the Standard Input field.
6. In the Program Name field, enter the name of the executable program or the command file that calls it. Include the full path name if this file is not in the %FND_TOP%\bin directory.
7. Add the arguments that Oracle Applications passes to the program or command file. The driver must pass the following to the executable program:
 - Name of the destination printer
 - Number of copies to print
 - Banner on title page
 - Filename
 - Add the initialization and reset strings to the appropriate fields if the program does not send these strings to the printer.

Related Topics

Overview of Printers and Printing, page 10-1

Printer Drivers Window, page 10-43

Printers and Printing

Oracle Applications offers two printing solutions to handle all your printing requirements. For most printing needs, the Pasta Utility offers quick setup and easy maintenance. For additional flexibility, Oracle Applications allows you to define your own printer drivers and print styles.

- To set up your printers using Pasta, see *Printer Setup with Pasta*, page 10-8.

Note: Pasta is required to print using UTF8.

- To set up your printers using a custom solution, see *Customizing Printing Support* in Oracle Applications, page 10-26.

Note: For updates on printing in Oracle Applications, please refer to *OracleMetaLink*.

Overview

When you run an Oracle Applications report, Oracle Reports generates and formats the output. A completed report is sent to the operating system by the concurrent manager, which issues an operating system print command, or calls a custom print program or subroutine that issues an operating system print command.

Oracle Reports and Report Generation

Oracle Reports includes page break, carriage return, line feed, text bold on/off, and text underline on/off instructions within the output file. The values are retrieved from a SQL*ReportWriter (SRW) driver file.

When the report is generated for online viewing, Oracle Reports uses the SRW driver named by the print style in the Print Styles form.

When the report is to be printed, Oracle Reports uses the SRW driver named by the Oracle Applications printer driver in the Printer Drivers form.

The dimensions of a report are determined by the columns and rows values in the print style, defined using the Print Styles form. These values override the width and height values in an SRW driver file.

Concurrent Manager Issues or Calls a Print Command

When a report program finishes running, the concurrent manager prepends an initialization string, and appends a printer reset string to the output file. Both strings are defined using the Printer Drivers form.

An Oracle Applications printer driver is invoked by issuing a print command or by calling a print program or subroutine.

When the printer driver method is *Command*, the concurrent manager can issue an operating system print command and arguments, entered in the Arguments field of the Printer Drivers form.

When the printer driver method is *Program*, the concurrent manager can call a custom print program, named (along with its path) in the Name field of the Printer Drivers form. Arguments to the program may be entered in the form's Arguments field.

When the printer driver method is *Subroutine*, the concurrent manager calls a predefined Oracle Applications subroutine that passes a print command and arguments to the printer via the operating system. The subroutine name is entered in the Program Name field of the Printer Drivers form.

The concurrent manager may provide values for four arguments to an operating system print command or custom print program:

- the name of the file to be printed
- the operating system name of the target printer
- the title of the file, which appears on a header page if it is printed
- the number of copies to be printed

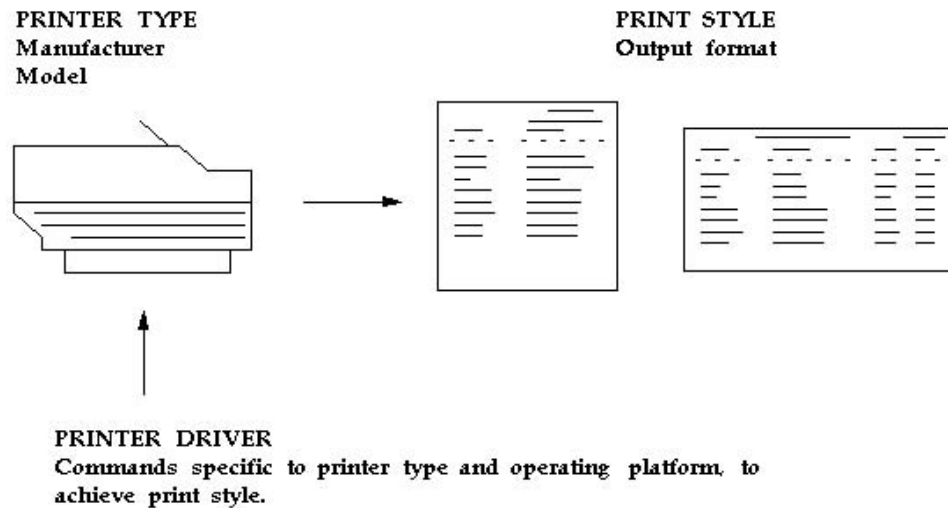
Printer Types, Print Styles, and Printer Drivers

The commands that a printer can understand vary from one type of printer to another. A *printer type* identifies a printer by manufacturer and model.

A *print style* tells the printer how a printed output should look. A *printer driver* delivers commands that tell the printer how to output the specified print style.

The ability to print a report in a particular print style depends on the type of printer the report file is sent to.

For each print style that a particular type of printer can print, a printer driver specific to the printer type and the operating system is required.



Printer Types

The printer type is the printer manufacturer and model. Two examples are a DEC LN03 printer and an HP Laserjet III printer.

Print Styles

A Print style defines the page format for a printer, such as the number of lines per page, the width of each line, and whether a header page should be printed.

Each printer type can have one or more associated print styles.

Print styles allow you to set up report dimensions on a variety of printers. You can tailor your page setups while providing consistent-looking reports from printer to printer.

For example, users may wish to print a menu report with a wider left margin to allow for hole punching the paper. As System Administrator, you register this new style, which users can then access if the printer type supports it.

At report submission time, users select the style in which to output the report.

- Only styles available on the destination printer are displayed.
- Some concurrent programs predefine either the printer or the print style, and these values cannot be changed.

Printer Drivers

To print in a particular style from a particular printer type, you define a printer driver. A printer driver is the mechanism that delivers a report's output along with its commands to the target printer.

Concurrent managers determine what drivers to use depending on what the print style is and what printer type the report is to be sent to.

You need to define a printer driver for each print style that you want to use with a specific printer type on a specific platform.

Sequence of Printing Events

The concurrent manager associates a print style and a printer driver with the destination printer's printer type. This combination of print style and printer driver is defined in the Printer Types form.

A printer driver tells the destination printer how to interpret the format. An SRW Driver formats text and sets page breaks within an Oracle Reports file.

Sequence of Printing Events - Example

The following is an example of the sequence of printing events.

1. A user submits a request to run a report from the Run Reports form.
2. A request to run the report is added to the requests table.
3. A concurrent manager reads the request.
4. The concurrent manager calls Oracle Reports to run the report, and passes the SRW Driver name. If Report Copies = 0 and the Printer field is blank, the Print Style's SRW Driver is used. If Report Copies > 0 and Printer is required, then the Printer Driver's SRW Driver is used.

The concurrent manager passes Print Style information (Columns and Rows) to Oracle Reports (overrides SRW Driver width and height if the report is to be printed).

5. A report is created using Oracle Reports. The concurrent manager attaches Printer Driver information to the file. It prepends the initialization string and appends the reset string.

The concurrent manager also passes suppress header option information from the Printer Styles form.

6. The concurrent manager issues an operating system print command with the arguments Destination Printer, Filename (including path), Number of Copies to print, and Filename for the Title on the banner page.

Related Topics

Overview of Printers and Printing, page 10-1

Printer Types, Print Styles, and Printer Drivers , page 10-2

Setting Character-Mode vs. Bitmap Printing, page 10-4

Setting up Your Printers, page 10-7

Fast-Track Printing with Pasta , page 10-8

Customizing Printing Support in Oracle Applications, page 10-26

Postscript Printing in UNIX, page 10-36

Setting Character-Mode vs. Bitmap Printing

Running Character mode Oracle Reports Concurrent Programs

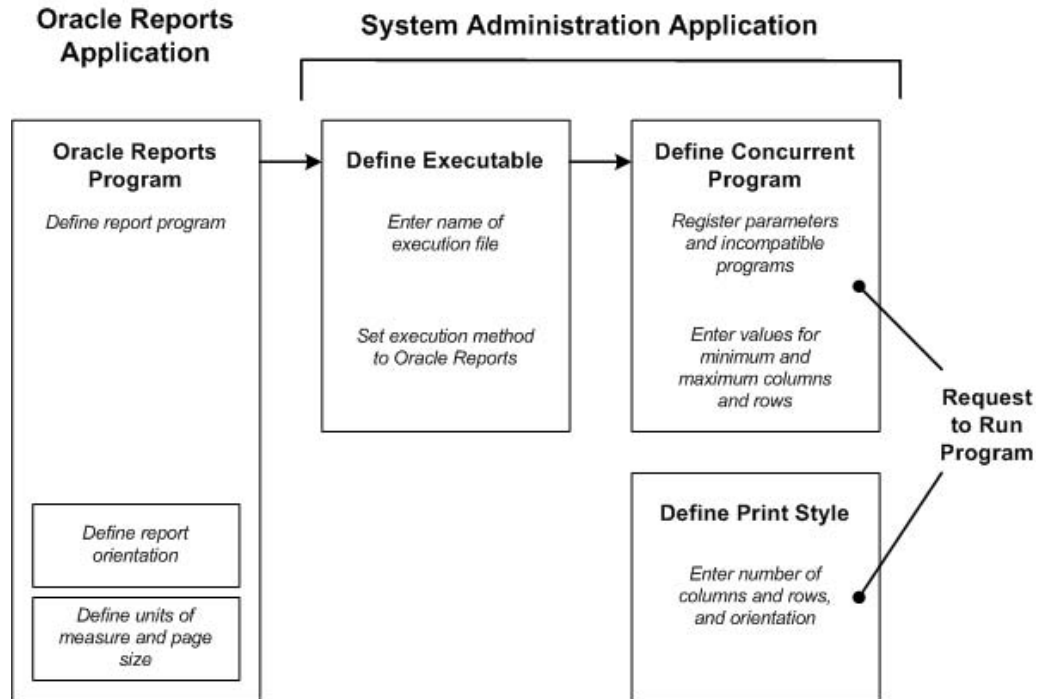
Character mode Oracle Reports programs take their page dimensions and orientation from the print style associated with the request to run the program.

Some print styles are predefined, and a System Administrator can define additional styles, if necessary.

After you create an Oracle Reports program, you create a corresponding concurrent program executable with the Oracle Reports execution method.

You then define a concurrent program for that executable, registering any parameters and incompatible programs. You also enter the minimum column and row length, orientation, and print style.

Running Character Mode Oracle Reports Programs



Running Bitmap Oracle Reports Concurrent Programs

Bitmap Oracle Reports programs are defined similarly in Oracle Reports and in the Concurrent Program Executable form.

To run an Oracle Reports program in bitmap mode, query the concurrent program's definition in the Concurrent Programs form, and choose PostScript in the Format field.

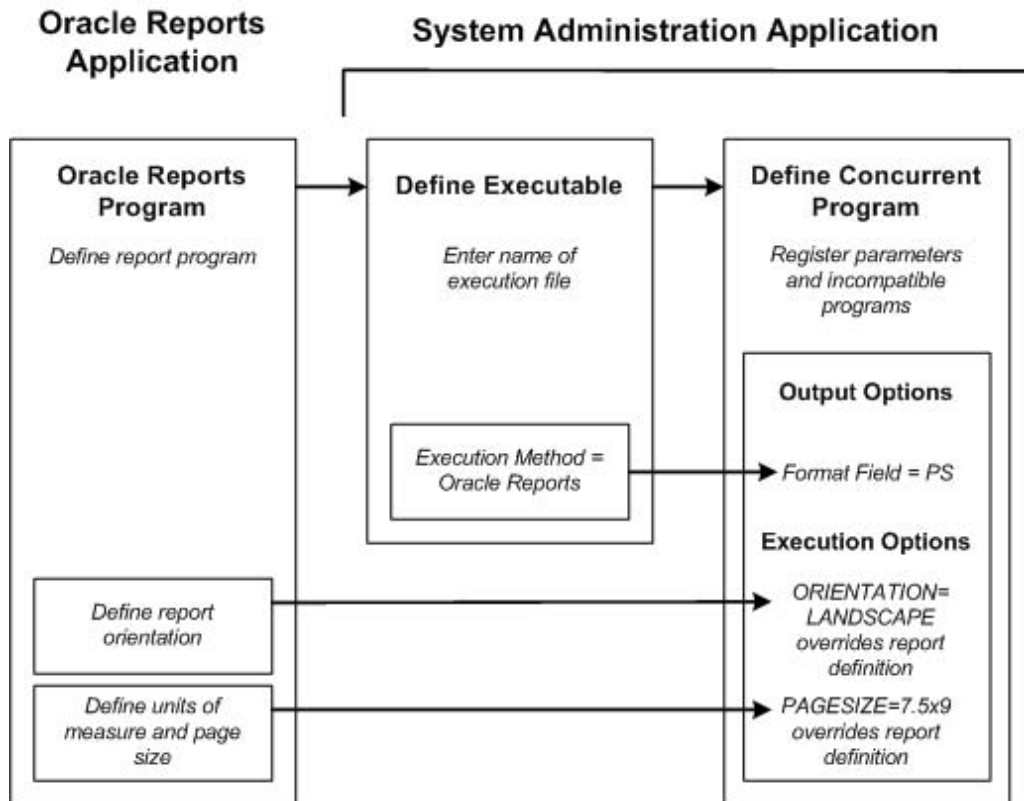
Bitmap Oracle Reports programs take their page dimensions and orientation from the program's definition (note: when printing a bitmap report, a print style is still required).

If you wish to override the program's definitions, you can enter values in the Execution Options field for ORIENTATION and PAGESIZE.

When entering more than one execution option, each option should be separated by a *single* space. There should be no spaces before or after the options. For example:

ORIENTATION=LANDSCAPE PAGESIZE=7.5x9

Running Bitmap Oracle Reports Programs



Notes about PAGESIZE in the Execution Options field

In Oracle Reports, when defining a report the units and size of the report are specified in the menu under Report->Global Properties->Unit of Measurement.

For bitmapped reports, <width>x<height> for PAGESIZE is usually in inches; however, this depends on the particular report definition.

You can enter the PAGESIZE parameter in the Execution Options field of the Concurrent Programs form (for bitmapped reports only) when you want to override the values specified in the report definition. For example:

PAGESIZE=7.5x9

If the dimensions specified with the PAGESIZE parameter are smaller than what the report was designed for, you will generate a "REP-1212" error.

Related Topics

Overview of Printers and Printing, page 10-1

Setting up Your Printers, page 10-7

Creating Custom Printer Drivers, page 10-27

Printer Drivers field help, page 10-43

Setting Up Your Printers

Oracle Applications provides you with predefined printer types, print styles, and printer drivers. Use the Printer Types form to query the combinations of print style and printer driver that support each type of printer you have. Customize the predefined components as necessary. See: Customizing Printing Support in Oracle Applications, page 10-26.

Important: Predefined printing components may have to be modified for different printer types and/or operating platforms.

Forms for Defining Printer Support

You use four forms to define printer support.

Printer Types

You must define any printer types used at your site that are not shipped with Oracle Applications. It is on this form that you associate the print style with a printer driver for the particular printer type.

Printers

You register a printer so that Oracle Applications recognizes the printer and can forward to it the output from a report program.

To register a printer you specify the printer's operating system name, which uniquely identifies the printer, and select the printer type. The printer type must already be defined.

For example, if you want users of Oracle Applications to be able to print to a newly purchased printer, you:

- Register the operating system name of the new printer (for example, printer39), and select the printer type (for example, LN03).
- If the correct printer type is not defined, you must define the new printer type before you can register the printer.

Print Styles

To generate a report, the print style values for columns and rows are passed by the concurrent manager to Oracle Reports. A print style determines the dimensions of your report, or the number of rows and columns per page.

Printer Drivers

A printer driver includes the initialization and reset strings that format and restart a printer. You need a defined printer driver for each print style that you plan to use with a specific printer type on a specific platform.

Printing Setup Interrelationships

- Many printers can be registered as the same printer type.
- A printer type can support multiple print styles.
- A printer driver must be assigned to a printer type for each print style.
- Many printer drivers can support the same print style.

- Many printer drivers can support the same printer type.

See: Overview of Printers and Printing, page 10-1

Printer Setup Information Is Cached On Demand

Printer setup information such as Printer Type definitions, Print Style definitions, and Printer Driver definitions, are read into memory (cached) the first time the information is required to print a program's output.

The cache area that holds printer setup information is private to the concurrent managers. Printer setup information remains cached in memory until the concurrent managers are restarted, when the values are erased and new values are cached.

Important: You should issue a *Restart concurrent manager* command for all currently active managers whenever you edit an existing Printer Type, Print Style, or Printer Driver (unless the type, style or driver has not been referred to or cached yet).

See: Controlling Concurrent Managers, page 8-29

Related Topics

Overview of Printers and Printing, page 10-1

Printer Types, Print Styles, and Printer Drivers, page 10-2

Customizing Printing Support in Oracle Applications, page 10-26

Creating Custom Printer Drivers, page 10-27

Printer Setup with Pasta

Overview

Pasta is an Oracle Applications utility that converts text report files to PostScript and also enables the printing of custom PostScript reports from Oracle Applications. The reports can then be directed to any PostScript printer.

Setting up your system to use Pasta is much simpler than the standard Oracle Applications printer setup procedure. The Printer Type, Printer Driver, and SRW driver files are provided. The only setup required to begin printing is the registration of the printer with Oracle E-Business Suite.

Many printing options can be defined using the Pasta configuration file (pasta.cfg). You no longer need to maintain multiple drivers and styles for each printer.

Pasta is provided as an executable named FNDPSTAX.

For updates and more details, see *OracleMetaLink*.

Setup for Basic Printing with Pasta, page 10-8

Setup for Basic Printing with Pasta

The following setup can be used to enable any PostScript printer to print text or PostScript reports in the following styles: Landscape, Landwide, Portrait, or Dynamic.

Use the Printers window to register your printer:

1. Enter your printer's name as defined in the operating system and applications.
2. Select "--Pasta Universal Printer" from the list of values for the printer Type.

You are now ready to print text and PostScript reports from your PostScript printer using the default Pasta configuration.

For more information on the Printers window, see *Printers Window*, page 10-40.

For more information on setting options in the Pasta configuration file, see: *Configuration File Options*, page 10-15.

Related Topics

Defining Configuration Files for Specific Printers, page 10-9

Modify/Add Printer Type to Use Pasta, page 10-10

Setting Margins, page 10-11

Printing a Report Using the noprint Option, page 10-12

Generating Other Formats Using the Preprocessing Option, page 10-12

Font Source, page 10-14

Language-Specific Font Support, page 10-14

Command Line Parameters, page 10-20

Defining Configuration Files for Specific Printers

The `pasta.cfg` file controls many printing options. You can use the default file for many printers for multiple languages. However, if you have printers that require special setup, you can customize these options by creating a configuration file for each printer.

Copy the `pasta.cfg` file to `pasta_<printer name>.cfg`. Make the necessary changes to the file. Pasta automatically looks for a printer-specific file name. If it does not find one, Pasta then uses the default file, `pasta.cfg`.

For example, suppose you have a printer named "hqprinter" for which you want to set the page height and width to letter size:

1. Copy `$FND_TOP/resource/pasta.cfg` to `$FND_TOP/resource/pasta_hqprinter.cfg` where `hqprinter` is the name of the printer as defined on the operating system.
2. In the `pasta_hqprinter.cfg` file, edit the paper size options:
Set `pagewidth=8.5`
Set `pageheight=11`

Pasta will now use the options as defined in the `pasta_hqprinter.cfg` file when printing to the `hqprinter`.

For more information on setting options in the Pasta configuration file, see: *Configuration File Options*, page 10-15.

Using a Different Configuration File as the Default

You can change the file that is defined as the default configuration file for Pasta by using the -F command line parameter.

For example, suppose you create a PCL print-specific configuration file named `pcl.cfg`. Set the FNDPSTAX command line option as follows:

-Fpcl.cfg

Pasta will look for `pcl_<printer>.cfg` first, and if it is not found, Pasta will use `pcl.cfg` as the default.

These files must be placed under the `$FND_TOP/resource` directory.

The -F command line parameter can be set in the Arguments field of the Printer Drivers window. See *Printer Drivers Window*, page 10-43.

Related Topics

Setup for Basic Printing with Pasta, page 10-8

Modify/Add Printer Type to Use Pasta, page 10-10

Setting Margins, page 10-11

Printing a Report Using the noprint Option, page 10-12

Generating Other Formats Using the Preprocessing Option, page 10-12

Font Source, page 10-14

Language-Specific Font Support, page 10-14

Configuration File Options, page 10-15

Command Line Parameters, page 10-20

Modify an Existing Printer Type to Use Pasta

If your printer is already assigned to a printer type that contains styles and drivers that you want to maintain, you can add Pasta to the existing printer type.

To add Pasta to an existing printer type, you must associate one of the Pasta printer drivers with a print style on the Printer Types window.

The seeded Pasta printer drivers are:

- PASTA_LANDSCAPE
- PASTA_PORTRAIT
- PASTA_LANDWIDE
- PASTA_DYNAMIC

You can associate a Pasta driver with an existing print style, or you can create a new print style. To create a new print style, use the Print Styles window. For more information on defining a print style, see *Print Styles Window*, page 10-41.

1. Query your existing printer type in the Printer Types window.
2. In the Style field, select the style to which you want to assign a Pasta driver.

Or, if you are assigning Pasta to a style already defined for the printer type, delete the driver in the Driver Name field currently associated with the style.

3. In the Driver Name field, select the appropriate Pasta driver.

For more information on the Printer Types window, see [Printer Types Window](#), page 10-38.

Add a New Printer Type to Use Pasta

If you want to add a new Printer Type, you can also add Pasta to your new printer type.

1. Navigate to the Printer Types window.
2. Enter the Type of printer.
3. In the Style field use the list of values to select the style to which you want to assign a Pasta driver.
4. In the Driver Name field, select the appropriate Pasta driver from the list of values:
5. PASTA_LANDSCAPE
6. PASTA_PORTRAIT
7. PASTA_LANDWIDE
8. PASTA_DYNAMIC

For more information on the Printer Types window, see [Printer Types Window](#), page 10-38.

Related Topics

[Setup for Basic Printing with Pasta](#), page 10-8

[Defining Configuration Files for Specific Printers](#), page 10-9

[Setting Margins](#), page 10-11

[Printing a Report Using the noprint Option](#), page 10-12

[Generating Other Formats Using the Preprocessing Option](#), page 10-12

[Font Source](#), page 10-14

[Language-Specific Font Support](#), page 10-14

[Configuration File Options](#), page 10-15

[Command Line Parameters](#), page 10-20

Setting Margins

The margins on your printed output are determined by the margin settings in the `pasta.cfg` file and the printable area defined by your printer. In order to set your margins properly you must know the printable area for your specific printer and adjust the margin parameter settings in the `pasta.cfg` file accordingly. The margin parameters are `leftMargin`, `rightMargin`, `topMargin`, and `bottomMargin`.

For example, suppose you want to set the left margin to one inch. If the printable area for your printer begins at .25 inches from the left, then you must set the `leftMargin` option to .75 in the `pasta.cfg` file.

For more information on setting options in the Pasta configuration file, see: [Configuration File Options](#), page 10-15.

Refer to your printer's documentation for information on its printable area.

Related Topics

Setup for Basic Printing with Pasta, page 10-8
Defining Configuration Files for Specific Printers, page 10-9
Modify/Add Printer Type to Use Pasta, page 10-10
Printing a Report Using the noprint Option, page 10-12
Generating Other Formats Using the Preprocessing Option, page 10-12
Font Source, page 10-14
Language-Specific Font Support, page 10-14
Command Line Parameters, page 10-20

Printing a Report Generated Using the noprint Option

When you use the "noprint" printer option to generate a report, you can still have the option of printing it later using Pasta.

Before running the report, associate the noprint printer with the "--Pasta Universal Printer Type" in the Printers form.

Note: You must restart the concurrent manager for this to take effect. See Printer Setup Information is Cached on Demand, page 10-8.

Related Topics

Setup for Basic Printing with Pasta, page 10-8
Defining Configuration Files for Specific Printers, page 10-9
Modify/Add Printer Type to Use Pasta, page 10-10
Setting Margins, page 10-11
Generating Other Formats Using the Preprocessing Option, page 10-12
Font Source, page 10-14
Language-Specific Font Support, page 10-14
Configuration File Options, page 10-15
Command Line Parameters, page 10-20

Generating Other Formats Using the Preprocessing Option

Pasta can use a preprocessing option to invoke any executable that supports an input file and an output file (filter program). Pasta will invoke the filter program to preprocess the Pasta output before passing it to the printing command. By using the preprocessing option, you can generate output formats other than the formats that Pasta currently supports. For example, by invoking products such as Adobe Acrobat Distiller Server or Ghostscript, you can generate PDF output or PCL output.

Important: Ensure that the executable for the preprocess program is placed in your path.

The preprocessing command is a configuration file (pasta.cfg) option. This option uses {infile} and {outfile}.

- {infile} is the file generated by Pasta to be used as input to the preprocessing command. It is a temporary file and will be deleted after it is passed to the preprocessing command.
- {outfile} is the output file generated by the preprocessing command. Pasta names it temporarily and it will be deleted after it is passed to the printing command.

If you want to keep the {outfile}, you can name it by using the "outFile" pasta configuration file option (see Configuration File Options, page 10-15), or the "-o" command line option (see Command Line Parameters, page 10-20). Pasta will copy {outfile} to the file you specify.

Example for Generating PCL Output

In this example, "gs" is Ghostscript and "pxlmono" is a device used with HP black and white PCL XL printers (Laserjet 5 and 6 family).

In the pasta.cfg file, enter the following for the preprocess option:

```
preprocess=gs -q -dNOPAUSE -dBATCH -sDEVICE=pxlmono -sOutputFile=
{outfile} {infile}
```

To get a list of output devices available in Ghostscript go to <http://www.gnu.org/software/ghostscript/devices.html>

Example for Generating PDF Output

In this example, "ps2pdf" is a shell script bundled with Ghostscript. The ps2pdf script can convert a PostScript file to a PDF file.

In most cases you cannot send a PDF file to the printer command because the printer command cannot understand PDF. Set the noPrint option to "y" or use the "-np" (no print) command line option if you do not want Pasta to send the PDF file to the printer.

Use the outFile option to define the destination on the middle tier for the output file. You can use {inputfile} in the outFile option. Pasta will replace it with the actual input file name (without the path) specified by the "-f" (input file) command line option.

1. Using the basic Pasta setup procedure, define a printer in the Printers window called "PDFfile". Assign the "--Pasta Universal Printer" type to the printer.

For more information about defining a printer, see: Setup for Basic Printing with Pasta, page 10-8.

2. Create a configuration file for the PDFfile printer called "pasta_PDFfile.cfg".

For more information about defining a configuration file, see: Defining Configuration Files for Specific Printers, page 10-9.

3. In the pasta_PDFfile.cfg file, enter the following for the preprocess option:

```
preprocess=ps2pdf {infile} {outfile}
noPrint=y
outFile=<APPLTMP>/{inputfile}.pdf
```

Related Topics

Modify/Add Printer Type to Use Pasta, page 10-10

Setting Margins, page 10-11

Printing a Report Using the noprint Option, page 10-12

Font Source, page 10-14

Language-Specific Font Support, page 10-14

Font Source

If your printer does not have the necessary fonts installed, Pasta embeds the required glyphs as a small font in your report from the font files.

If you do not want to use the fonts provided by Oracle you can specify the font you want by using the font name option in the pasta.cfg file. You can use any TrueType fonts on your middle tier; or, if your printer has a font installed suitable for the language of your report, you can utilize the printer font.

The form of the pasta.cfg option is:

```
Font.Default.<Style>=<TrueType font file name>  
or
```

```
Font.Default.<Style>=printer:<Printer font file name>  
Example using TrueType font file:
```

```
Font.Default.Plain=<FND_TOP>/<APPLRSC>/ADUO.ttf  
Font.Default.Bold=<FND_TOP>/<APPLRSC>/ADUOB.ttf
```

Example using Printer Font:

```
Font.Default.Plain=printer:Courier  
Font.Default.Bold=printer:Courier-Bold
```

Related Topics

Setup for Basic Printing with Pasta, page 10-8

Defining Configuration Files for Specific Printers, page 10-9

Modify/Add Printer Type to Use Pasta, page 10-10

Setting Margins, page 10-11

Printing a Report Using the noprint Option, page 10-12

Generating Other Formats Using the Preprocessing Option, page 10-12

Language-Specific Font Support, page 10-14

Configuration File Options, page 10-15

Command Line Parameters, page 10-20

Language-Specific Font Support

The default pasta.cfg file contains font settings for languages. You override the default setting in the language-specific section of the pasta.cfg file.

For example, if you want to override the default setting of Courier font for French language reports to use Helvetica instead, add the following to the end of the pasta.cfg file:

```
[FRENCH]  
Font.Default.Plain = printer:Helvetica
```

```
Font.Default.Bold = printer:Helvetica-Bold
```

Related Topics

Setup for Basic Printing with Pasta, page 10-8

Defining Configuration Files for Specific Printers, page 10-9

Modify/Add Printer Type to Use Pasta, page 10-10

Setting Margins, page 10-11

Printing a Report Using the noprint Option, page 10-12

Generating Other Formats Using the Preprocessing Option, page 10-12

Font Source, page 10-14

Configuration File Options, page 10-15

Command Line Parameters, page 10-20

Configuration File Options

The configuration file `pasta.cfg` governs many printing options. The file is a normal ASCII text file that has a simple format described below.

The options are listed in the following two tables. They are divided into Generic Options and Arabic, Hebrew, and Thai options. For each option are listed the Key Name, the Default Value (if applicable), the Description, and the Equivalent Command Line Option (if applicable).

Note: For options that also have command line equivalents, Oracle recommends that you set the value in the configuration file.

Generic Options

Key Name	Default Value	Description	Command Line Equivalent
outputFormat	ps	Two output formats are supported: PostScript ("ps") and text ("text"). When the output format is text, you can specify the output character set by the Oracle character set name (for example, text.WE8 ISO8859P1). If you use "auto" as the output character set (text.auto), Pasta uses the appropriate character set according to the NLS_LANGUAGE value in the FND_LANGUAGES table.	-x
textAutoCharset	The default value is taken from the FND_LANGUAGES table.	When the outputFormat is set to "text.auto", Pasta uses a default character set for each language based on the language and character set mappings in the FND_LANGUAGES table. To override the default setting for a language, use the textAutoCharset option in the Language-Specific section of the pasta.cfg file. For example, to override the default character set for Japanese to use JA16EUC instead, enter the following: [Japanese] textAutoCharset=JA16SJIS	N/A

Key Name	Default Value	Description	Command Line Equivalent
preprocess	N/A	Use this option to convert the output file. Enter a preprocessing command to invoke any executable that supports an input file and an output file (filter program). Pasta will invoke the filter program before passing the file to the printing command.	N/A
printCommand	N/A	Specific print command for Unix platform.	N/A
ntPrintCommand	N/A	Specific print command for Windows platform.	N/A
outFile	N/A	If you want to save the output file, use this option to define the output file name and its destination on the middle tier.	-o
noPrint	N/A	Set this option to "y" if you do not want Pasta to produce printed output.	-np
duplex	default	Specifies duplex printing. Options are "y", "n", or "default" (uses the printer-side setting).	N/A
embednumcopies	y	Set this option to "y" to embed the number of copies to be printed in a PostScript file. Using this option will eliminate the header page normally printed between reports.	N/A
copysort	y	If you set embednumcopies to "y", you can choose to have the copies collated, by setting this option to "y".	N/A
heightScaleRate	1.0	Adjusts the space between lines.	-h

Key Name	Default Value	Description	Command Line Equivalent
widthScaleRate	1.0	Adjusts the space between characters.	-w
pagewidth	8.27	Adjusts the page width.	-pw
pageheight	11.64	Adjusts the page height.	-ph
topMargin	.25	Adjusts the top margin.	N/A
bottomMargin	.25	Adjusts the bottom margin.	N/A
rightMargin	.25	Adjusts the right margin.	N/A
leftMargin	.25	Adjusts the left margin.	N/A
Font.<Face>.<Style>	N/A	Specify the TrueType font file name. The <Face> must be either "Default" or the actual font face name (such as Helvetica). The <Style> must be either "Plain", "Bold", "Italic", or "BoldItalic".	N/A
fontsize	7.8 (for landscape) 10.0 (for portrait)	Font size in points. If this is not set, the font size is calculated automatically.	-s
boldfontsize	Size in points (Default value from the fontsize parameter)	Font size for bold font in points. This option is used mostly when Font.Default.Bold is used for specifying a barcode font.	-bs
psEmbeddedFontType	type3 (default) type42	A type of font that will be embedded in PostScript.	
tabsize	8	Pasta replaces a tab with the number of spaces specified in this option.	N/A
errorlogfile	(standard error output)	Set this option to have Pasta create a log file.	-el

Arabic, Hebrew and Thai Options

Key Name	Default Value	Description	Equivalent Command Line Option
thai_space_compensation	n	In the Thai language, some characters are combined into one glyph. If this option is set to "y", Pasta will align your report by adding spaces at the end of any string that includes combined characters.	N/A
bidi_algorithm	oracle	If you set this option to "unicode", Pasta follows the Unicode BiDi algorithm. Setting the value to "oracle" will use Oracle's algorithm.	N/A
direction	default	Options are "ltr" (left-to-right), "rtl" (right-to-left), and "default" (depends on NLS_LANGUAGE setting).	N/A
dolayout	y	To layout the text, set this option to "y". If not, set it to "n".	N/A
doshaping	y	To shape the text, set this option to "y". If not, set it to "n". This option is for Arabic only.	N/A
numerals	context	Possible values are "arabic" for Arabic numerals, "hindi" for Hindi numerals, or "context" to use Arabic or Hindi depending on the context. Required for Arabic data only.	N/A

Related Topics

Setup for Basic Printing with Pasta, page 10-8

Defining Configuration Files for Specific Printers, page 10-9

Modify/Add Printer Type to Use Pasta, page 10-10

Setting Margins, page 10-11

Printing a Report Using the noprint Option, page 10-12

Generating Other Formats Using the Preprocessing Option, page 10-12

Font Source, page 10-14

Language-Specific Font Support, page 10-14

Command Line Parameters, page 10-20

Command Line Parameters

When using the Pasta utility from the command line, you can use the options below.

FNDPSTAX [**options**]

-c<number>	<number> specifies the number of copies to print.
-el<logfile>	Specifies the error log file's path and name. The path is the absolute path to the error log file.
-f<filename>	<filename> specifies the input file name. Example: -fmyfile.txt
-F<cfgfile>	Specifies the configuration file's path and name.
-h<rate>	Adjusts the space between lines. The default value is 1.0. If <rate> is larger than 1, the space between lines will be larger.
-w<rate>	Adjusts the space between characters. The default value is 1.0. If <rate> is larger than 1.0, the space between characters will be larger.
-l	Print in landscape mode. (The default is portrait).
-o<filename>	<filename> specifies the output file name.
-s<size>	Overrides the font size option in pasta.cfg.
-bs<size>	Overrides the font size in -s and fontsize for bold font.
-np	No print option.
-ph<height>	<height> specifies the paper height in inches.
-pw<width>	<width> specifies the paper width in inches.
-pform<psfile><pf file>	Converts a PostScript file <ps file> to a PrintForm file <pf file>.
-pf<pf file>	<pf file> specifies a PrintForm file to be merged in a Pasta output at runtime.
-pn<printrname>	<printrname> specifies the printer name.
-t<banner title>	Banner option for use with the Unix lp command.
-v	Displays the version number.
-x<ps text.[charset auto]>	Specifies the output format. Two output formats are supported: PostScript ("ps") and text ("text").

Related Topics

Defining Configuration Files for Specific Printers, page 10-9

Modify/Add Printer Type to Use Pasta, page 10-10
Setting Margins, page 10-11
Printing a Report Using the noprint Option, page 10-12
Generating Other Formats Using the Preprocessing Option, page 10-12
Font Source, page 10-14
Language-Specific Font Support, page 10-14
Configuration File Options, page 10-15

Using PrintForms

PrintForms is a feature of the E-Business Suite that allows you to create your own background template for a report and use it at print-time either as a background image (such as your company logo) or as a standard form (such as an invoice).

The PrintForm process combines the input report file and the background template file to generate one PostScript file, which is then passed to a PostScript printer.

Because this process is executed at print-time, the need to customize report definitions is eliminated, which also simplifies maintenance. Moreover, using the PrintForm as a standard form can replace printing solutions that require expensive preprinted stationery and specialized printers.

There are two phases to using PrintForms:

1. Create the PrintForm
2. Deploy the PrintForm to Oracle Applications

Note: The following instructions are general guidelines for creating and using PrintForms. For more detailed instructions see the "Pasta User's Guide Release 3.0" on [OracleMetaLink](#).

Create the PrintForm

Creating a PrintForm is a five-step process:

1. Create an image file using the supported editor of your choice.
2. Convert the image file to a PostScript file (.ps).
3. Convert the PostScript file to a PrintForm file (.pf) to use as your template.
4. Place the PrintForm file in the appropriate directory.
5. Update printer driver information (in the Printer Drivers window) to use the PrintForm.

Create an image file

The following editors can be used to create the image file that will become your PrintForm template.

- Oracle Reports
- Microsoft Word, Excel, or Powerpoint (with Adobe PDFMaker)
- Any Windows Application

- Any Application that generates PDF

When creating your image file ensure that the paper size, margin settings, and style of the document are appropriate for the report you are fitting the template to.

Note: Even if you need only one type of image (such as a company logo added to all your reports), you must create one PrintForm for each print style that you plan to use (such as portrait, landscape, and landwide) with the appropriate placement of the image for the style.

Convert the image file to a PostScript file

The PrintForm template file must be created from a PostScript file. The PostScript file can be generated in one of the following ways:

1. Generate a PostScript file from Oracle Reports.
2. Convert any Windows application file (such as Microsoft Word or PowerPoint) to PostScript using the Adobe Generic Printer Driver "save to file" option.
3. Convert any PDF file to PostScript using a third-party utility, such as Xpdf (available for Windows and Unix platforms).

Note: For information about downloading and using Xpdf see <http://www.foolabs.com/xpdf/>

Convert the PostScript file to a PrintForm file

Use a Pasta command line parameter to convert the PostScript file to a PrintForm (.pf) file. During this process comments are added to the PostScript file.

The syntax for the command line is as follows:

```
FNDPSTAX -pform <PostScript template file>.ps <PrintForm file>.pf
```

For more information about Pasta command line parameters, see Command Line Parameters, page 10-20.

Deploying the PrintForm to Oracle Applications consists of the following steps:

1. Place the PrintForm in the APPL_TOP.
2. Update the printer driver information.
3. Restart the Concurrent Manager.

Place the PrintForm in the appropriate directory

You can place the PrintForm file anywhere under APPL_TOP in the Concurrent Processing node, but Oracle recommends that you put the file under the FND_TOP/resource/<lang> directory, where <lang> is the language code (such as US for English or KO for Korean).

Update the printer driver information

1. Navigate to the Printer Drivers form.
2. Query up the printer driver to which you want to add the PrintForm option.
3. Edit the Arguments field for the printer driver to use the PrintForm in the appropriate directory.

For example, if you place a PrintForm called logo_ls.pf in the \$FND_TOP/resource/US directory and you want to apply the PrintForm to the PASTA_LANDSCAPE driver, edit the Arguments field as follows:

```
-pn$PROFILES$.PRINTER -f$PROFILES$.FILENAME -c$PROFILES$.CONC_COPYES -l -pf<FND_TOP>/resource/US/logo_ls.pf
```

where <FND_TOP> is the actual path for your \$FND_TOP.

For more information about this form, see Printer Drivers Window, page 10-43.

Restart the Concurrent Manager

You must restart the concurrent manager for this to take effect. See Printer Setup Information is Cached on Demand, page 10-8.

Common UNIX Printing System (CUPS) Integration

CUPS is a third-party product that provides printing service to most PostScript printers and raster printers. It is based on the Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) technology making it open to any system that supports IPP. CUPS can run on various kinds of Unix systems, such as Solaris, HP-UX, AIX, Tru64, and major Linux distributions. CUPS is provided under the GNU GPL license.

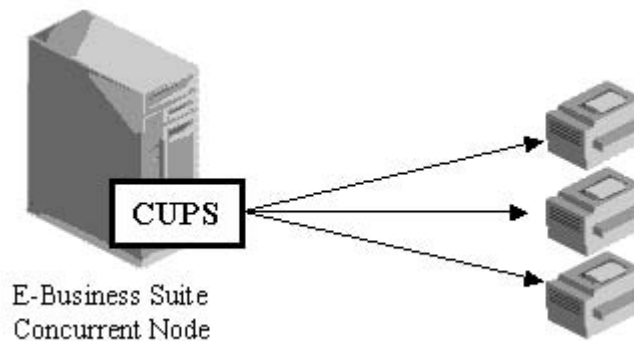
For more details about CUPS, refer to <http://www.cups.org/>

Two integration scenarios are described in the following sections:

- All printers connected to a single CUPS server residing on the E-Business Suite concurrent processing node
- Multiple CUPS distributed servers with printers connected to each CUPS server

Scenario 1: All printers connected to a single CUPS server residing on the E-Business Suite concurrent processing node

This scenario is graphically depicted in the following diagram:



There are no special configuration steps required if the printer system has been replaced with CUPS on the server.

If you maintain both the System V printing system and CUPS, you must define a new printer type with the required print styles and printer drivers.

1. Create a new Pasta configuration file for CUPS in the \$FND_TOP/resource directory (example: pasta_cups.cfg).
2. Ensure that the lp command that is set for the printCommand parameter in the Pasta configuration file is a CUPS lp command. You can specify the full path to the command if you maintain both the UNIX standard lp command and the CUPS lp command.
3. Create a set of printer drivers for each print style with the configuration file created in Step 1.

Example:

Printer Driver Name: PASTA_LANDSCAPE_CUPS

Arguments:

```
-pn$PROFILES$.PRINTER -f$PROFILES$.FILENAME -cPROFILES$.CONC_COPIES -l -Fpasta_cups.cfg
```

You can refer to the existing printer driver definitions created by Oracle, such as PASTA_LANDSCAPE, PASTA_PORTRAIT, or PASTA_LANDWIDE.

4. Create a printer type for the CUPS printer.

Example:

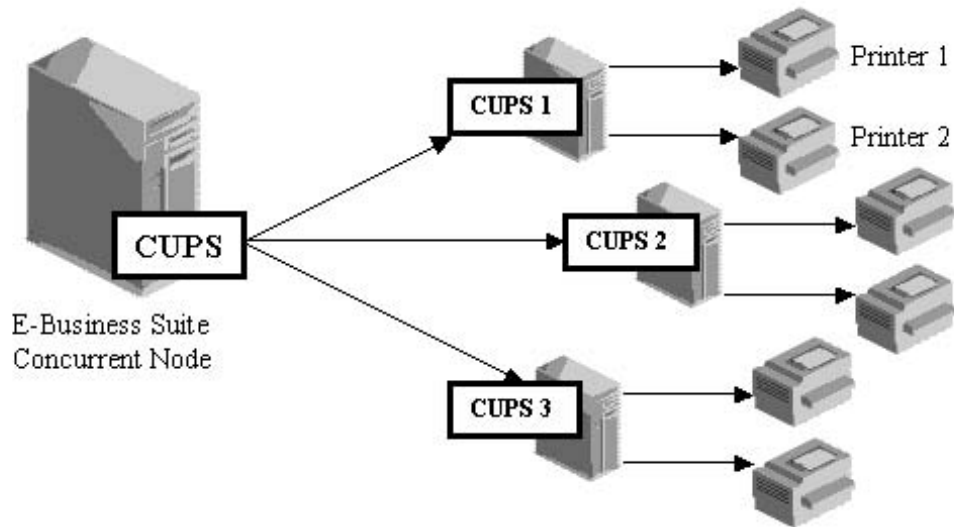
Printer Type: Pasta printer for CUPS

Print Style	Printer Driver
LANDSCAPE	PASTA_LANDSCAPE_CUPS
PORTRAIT	PASTA_PORTRAIT_CUPS
LANDWIDE	PASTA_LANDWIDE_CUPS

5. Register your printer with the print style.

Scenario 2: Multiple CUPS distributed servers with printers connected to each CUPS server

The following figure displays multiple CUPS distributed servers with multiple printers attached to each:



In this scenario, one printer type is required for each server on which a CUPS process is running with a physical printer.

1. Create a Pasta configuration file in the \$FND_TOP/resource directory for each server on which the CUPS process is running .

For example: pasta_cups1.cfg, pasta_cups2.cfg, pasta_cups3.cfg

2. For each configuration file, make the following change:

```
printCommand=lp -h<cupshost> -d{prntername}
```

where <cupshost> is replaced with the actual server name.

Make sure that the lp command is a CUPS lp command. You can specify the full path to the command if you maintain both the UNIX standard lp command and the CUPS lp command.

Leave {prntername} as is. This parameter will be replaced by Pasta at runtime with the actual printer name.

3. Create a set of printer drivers for each print style with the configuration file created in Step 1.

Example:

Printer Driver Name: PASTA_LANDSCAPE_CUPS1

Arguments:

```
-pn$PROFILES$.PRINTER -f$PROFILES$.FILENAME -cPROFILES$.CONC_COPIES -l -Fpasta_cups1.cfg
```

You can refer to the existing printer driver definitions created by Oracle, such as PASTA_LANDSCAPE, PASTA_PORTRAIT, or PASTA_LANDWIDE.

4. Create a printer type for each server in Oracle Applications.

For example: Pasta printer CUPS1, Pasta printer CUPS2, Pasta printer CUPS3

Add the required print styles associated with the printer drivers to the printer type.

Example:

Printer Type: Pasta printer for CUPS1

Print Style	Printer Driver
LANDSCAPE	PASTA_LANDSCAPE_CUPS1
PORTRAIT	PASTA_PORTRAIT_CUPS1
LANDWIDE	PASTA_LANDWIDE_CUPS1

1. Register your printer with the print style.

For example, if printer1 is defined on the server CUPS1 and you have created Pasta printer CUPS1 printer type for the server, register printer1 with the Pasta printer CUPS1 printer type.

Related Topics

See the following topics for additional information:

For more information on registering a printer, see Printers Window, page 10-40.

For information on the Printer Types window, see Printer Types Window, page 10-38.

For information on defining a print style, see Print Styles Window, page 10-41.

For information on defining a printer driver, see Printer Drivers Window, page 10-43.

For more information on defining Pasta configuration files, see Defining Configuration Files for Specific Printers, page 10-9.

For information on setting Pasta configuration file options, see Configuration File Options, page 10-15

Customizing Printing Support in Oracle Applications

Oracle Applications provides numerous predefined printer types with which you can identify your printers, as well as print styles that define the dimensions of Oracle Reports output files, and printer drivers that instruct the various printer types how to output the selected print style.

Use the Printer Types form to query the combinations of print style and printer driver that support each type of printer you have.

Important: Predefined printing components may have to be modified for different printer types and/or operating platforms.

For example, if a blank page is being printed after each printed page, the number of rows defined for the print style may need to be reduced, or an escape sequence that is being interpreted differently, creating a page eject command, may have to be rewritten.

Verify and, if necessary, Customize Printer Driver Definitions

Upon installation for any printer type you are using, verify your printer driver definitions, particularly the following:

- Initialization string

Print a short report to verify the page's printing orientation. If you want to change the printer's default font for the report, you would include that information in the Initialization string.

- Reset string

Print two short reports with different printing orientations, for example, one that is landscape and another that is portrait, to verify the printer is resetting itself properly.

- Arguments

Print a short report to verify the arguments to the operating system's print command or a custom print program are being interpreted correctly.

If you need to define a new print style, verify the printer driver you assign to the new print style, for any printer type you use.

Verify and, if necessary, Customize Oracle Reports SRW Drivers

If you have a printer type that does not properly interpret the control characters in the SRW driver files that set page breaks, bold on/off and underline on/off attributes in your Oracle Reports files, you can copy the SRW driver file and modify it.

Related Topics

Overview of Printers and Printing, page 10-1

Creating Custom Printer Drivers, page 10-27

Using Initialization and Reset Strings, page 10-30

Using a Spool File, page 10-30

Creating Custom SRW Drivers, page 10-31

Print Styles field help, page 10-41

Printer Drivers field help, page 10-43

Creating Custom Printer Drivers

If necessary, edit the Initialization string and the Reset string for the printer type you are using. Refer to your printer's user guide for instructions. The Initialization and Reset fields appear on the Printer Drivers form.

Edit your Initialization string or Reset string if:

- Your printer type requires different control characters.
- The control characters have a different meaning due to your operating system and platform.
- Language translation changes the meaning of the control characters. The printer needs special control characters to select different character sets.
- You want to change the printer's default font for the report (Initialization string only).

Printer Driver Methods

There are three methods to invoke a printer driver:

Command	<p>The concurrent manager can issue an operating system print command and its arguments.</p> <p>An operating system print command, along with all its arguments, is entered in the Arguments field of the Printer Drivers form.</p>
Program	<p>The concurrent manager can call a custom print program and pass arguments to the program.</p> <p>The name of a custom print program is entered in the Program Name field and any arguments to be passed to the program are entered in the Arguments field of the Printer Drivers form.</p>
Subroutine	<p>The concurrent manager can call a predefined Oracle Applications subroutine that passes a print command and arguments to the printer via the operating system.</p> <p>A subroutine is predefined by Oracle Applications, and the name is entered in the Program Name field of the Printer Drivers form.</p> <p>The arguments field is disregarded when the driver method is <i>Subroutine</i>. However, the concurrent manager reads the Initialization and Reset escape sequences.</p> <p>On UNIX systems, the subroutine method, unlike the command method, does not start an operating system shell along with the print command.</p>

Example - Using the Program Driver Method

The Program driver method allows customers to define their own custom print programs. For example, your company might want to write a custom program that opens a file, allows the file to be edited and saved under a second filename, then sends the second (edited) file on to the printer by issuing the print command. This method of issuing print commands is called a *filter*.

Location for Custom Print Programs

To call a custom print program using the Printer Drivers form, the program name, including the full path to the program, should be entered in the Program Name field.

The path to the program name is not necessary if the program's location can be identified by the operating system's PATH environment variable (i.e., is in the \$PATH variable name).

For platforms where the equivalent of a \$PATH variable doesn't exist, then use the full path name. A path can be up to 255 characters.

Custom print programs are not registered as concurrent programs with Oracle Application Object Library, but are called after the concurrent process has completed.

Using Operating System Shell Scripts

For operating system shell scripts, the printer driver method can be either command or program, as long as you populate the argument field correctly.

The script for a command shell procedure should reside in:

`$FND_TOP/$APPLBIN.`

Arguments That a Concurrent Manager Can Supply Values For

The concurrent manager can supply four different values as arguments to the operating system print command it issues, or to a custom print program that it calls. An example of using these values as arguments follows.

Example - Entering a Print Command and Arguments

In this example, the UNIX print command "lp" is entered along with the arguments that a concurrent manager can supply values for. While print commands vary, the tokens for which values are retrieved are always the same.

Because print commands are operating system dependent, please refer to *Installing Oracle Applications*.

Example - Printer Drivers Form's Arguments field:

```
lp -d$PROFILE$.PRINTER -n$PROFILE$.CONC_COPIES -t"$PROFILE$.TITLE" $PROFILE$.FILENAME
```

The following table lists arguments and their actions for the UNIX lp print command:

Argument Syntax	Token and Value Retrieved
-d\$PROFILE\$.PRINTER -d calls out the destination printer.	\$PROFILE\$.PRINTER retrieves the operating system name of the printer associated with the request.
-n\$PROFILE\$.CONC_COPIES -n calls out the number of copies to print.	\$PROFILE\$.CONC_COPIES retrieves the value of the profile option <i>Concurrent:Report Copies</i> , unless this value is updated at runtime.
-t"\$PROFILE\$.TITLE" -t calls out the report title to print on a banner or header page.	"\$PROFILE\$.TITLE" retrieves the title of the output file, typically titled as <i>Application username.Request ID</i> . For example, if user John Smith ran a report whose concurrent request ID was 64225, the title would be JSMITH.64225. This is operating system dependent.
\$PROFILE\$.FILENAME	\$PROFILE\$.FILENAME calls out the filename of the report to be printed. The value retrieved is the output file name, including the path to the file.

Using Standard Input

When Standard Input is set to Yes, the printer driver accepts standard input, so you can feed a report's output directly to the printer from standard input. Two examples of using standard input are:

- when you run a pipe in UNIX such as "cat myfile | lpr" rather than "lpr myfile", the output file is sent to the stdin (standard input).
- the UNIX command lpr, which accepts standard input when a filename is not specified.

The Standard Input field should be set to No when the Driver Method is set to Program or Subroutine. Unless the program accepts standard input, the Standard Input field should always be set to No.

Important: When Standard Input is set to No, the print command issued by the concurrent manager runs asynchronously. That is, the concurrent manager issues the command, and does not wait for an operating system response.

Related Topics

Overview of Printers and Printing, page 10-1

Customizing Printing Support in Oracle Applications, page 10-26

Using Initialization and Reset Strings, page 10-30

Using a Spool File, page 10-30

Printer Drivers field help, page 10-43

Using Initialization and Reset Strings

Use the initialization and reset strings to set and reset the orientation, character set and line density for your printer.

Initialization and reset strings consist of control characters and escape sequences.

- A control character can be represented by “ ^ ” followed by another character.
- An escape sequence can be identified by either “ /e ” or “ \e ”.

Important: You see “ /e ” for escape sequences defined using the Printer Drivers form (because you cannot enter the backslash (\) character into a form when your terminal definition uses backslash as the [Menu] key). You see “ \e ” for escape sequences originally defined in .pdf files that were upgraded to release 11 printer drivers.

For nonprintable characters, you may represent their value in octal mode. For example, 0x26 is represented as “ /046 ”. As an example, if you need to represent the escape sequence:

`^ [^ L ^ [1 6 D (0 x 26)`

you can represent it as:

`/ e ^ L / e 1 6 D / 0 4 6`

Related Topics

Customizing Printing Support in Oracle Applications, page 10-26

Using a Spool File, page 10-30

Using a Spool File

When Spool File is set to No, then a temporary file is created where the initialization and reset strings are inserted, and the file is sent to the print command or program.

Set the Spool File to Yes only if the print program creates its own temporary file. This option is recommended when using the Program driver method and the print program creates its own temporary file.

This option helps to reduce the creation of temporary files, since the concurrent manager will not create a temporary file when Spool File is set to Yes.

When Spool File is set to Yes, it is recommended that the:

- Standard Input be set to No
- Initialization and reset fields are null.

This option does not apply to the Subroutine driver method.

Related Topics

Overview of Printers and Printing, page 10-1

Creating Custom Printer Drivers, page 10-27

Creating Custom SRW Drivers, page 10-31

Creating Custom SRW Drivers

SRW drivers are read by Oracle Reports when a report is generated, and insert control characters that tell the destination printer where to set page breaks, and which characters to format as bold or underlined.

SRW drivers only pertain to Oracle Reports output files. An SRW driver is used during the generation of a report. A printer driver is used when the completed output file is sent to the printer.

SRW drivers are designed for the DEC LN03 printer, and all printers that understand the same control characters as the LN03.

Location and Content of SRW Driver Files

SRW driver files reside in \$FND_TOP/\$APPLREP, and have the file extension “.prt”. The predefined SRW file names are:

- A.prt
- P.prt
- L.prt
- PD.prt
- W.prt

Creating a Custom SRW Driver

You can customize any of the SRW driver files to support a printer type that is not correctly interpreting the control characters used to set page breaks and format text as bold or underlined in Oracle Reports files.

For example, you may need to change the control characters that instruct the printer to set a page break.

on an LN03 on an XYZ LaserInk

new page ... ^L ^[E

If you need to change formatting control characters for page breaks, underlined text, or bold text in Oracle Reports:

- Copy the .prt file (SRW driver) and rename the copy.
- Modify the new file with new control characters.
- Place the modified copy of the SRW driver file in \$FND_TOP/\$APPLREP.
- Associate the new driver with a print style and/or printer driver definition.

Important: Copy the SRW driver (.prt file) and rename it before starting any text editing.

SRW Drivers - Print Styles and Printer Drivers

When the concurrent manager calls Oracle Reports to run a report, the SRW driver name is passed as a parameter to Oracle Reports.

The SRW driver is not required because some customers might be using styles or printer drivers for non-Oracle Reports programs.

The SRW driver name you enter in the Print Styles and Printer Drivers forms is used in slightly different ways depending on whether you are printing or simply viewing the report.

If you run an Oracle Reports program without printing the output file, the SRW driver associated with the report's print style is used.

If you run an Oracle Reports program and print the output file, the SRW driver that is correct for the destination printer type is chosen by selecting the SRW driver associated with the printer driver.

Related Topics

Overview of Printers and Printing, page 10-1

Customizing Printing Support in Oracle Applications, page 10-26

Printer Drivers field help, page 10-43

Hierarchy of Printer and Print Style Assignments

A printer and a print style can be chosen and their identities can be included in a concurrent program's definition. When a concurrent program is defined to send its output to a specific printer, or is required to generate its output in a specific print style, those values cannot be overridden by users, or by report set default settings, or by user profile default settings.

Often, a default value can be set in more than one way. This leads to a hierarchical relationship among the various default settings, where one default takes precedence over another. The diagram below illustrates the order of how printer or print style values are read by the concurrent manager when submitting a report program to run.

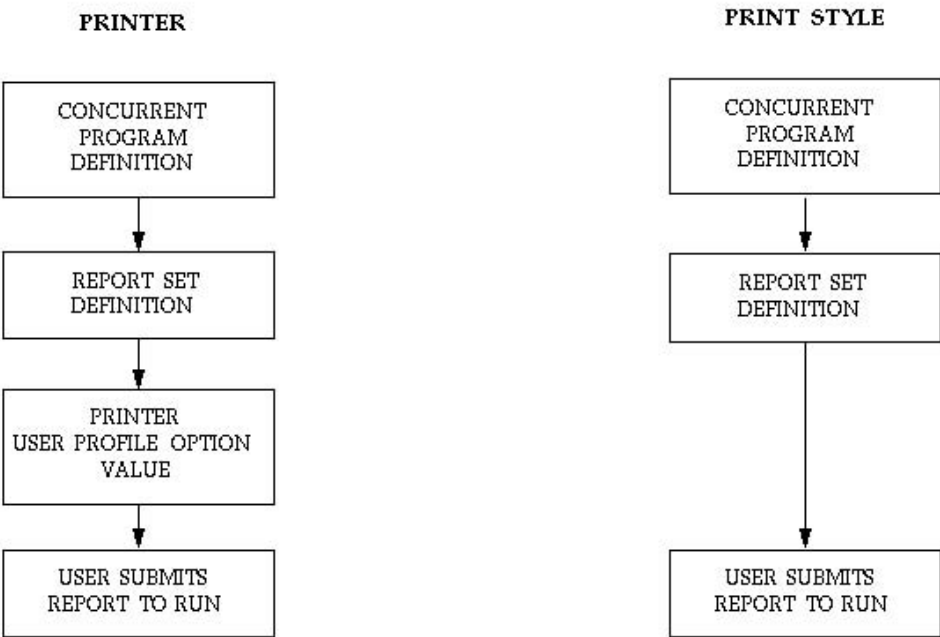
Important: Defining a concurrent program with a default print style, or requiring a concurrent program to output a specific print style, does not make that style available at a printer. You must assign the print

style, and its corresponding printer driver, to each printer type you wish to print from.

The concurrent manager reads the printer value using the following hierarchy: concurrent program definition, report set definition, printer user profile option value, and value specified by user during report submission.

The concurrent manager reads the print style value using the following hierarchy: concurrent program definition, report set definition, and value specified by user during report submission.

Order of Reading Printer or Print Style Settings



Hierarchy of Printer Assignments

As System Administrator, you can restrict concurrent programs and reports to direct their output to a specific printer. Restricting a program or report’s output to a specific printer overrides user profile option settings and prevents report set or user runtime printer choices.

If a printer is not included as part of a concurrent program’s definition, then default printer settings may be entered, as indicated in the table below. Users can override any default setting at runtime.

The following table describes the printer assignment hierarchy:

Form	Explanation
Concurrent Programs <i>System Administrator</i>	<p>As System Administrator, you can define a concurrent program to always direct its output to only one specific printer.</p> <p>This setting cannot be overridden at runtime or when defining a report in a report set.</p>
Request Set <i>System Administrator</i>	<p>As System Administrator, you can assign a default printer to a report within a report set.</p>
Request Set <i>Application Users</i>	<p>Users can assign a default printer to a report within a report set, when they own the report set.</p> <p>This default setting can be changed by the System Administrator.</p>
Personal Profile Values <i>Application Users</i>	<p>Users can assign a default printer for all their reports using their Personal Profile Values form.</p> <p>This assignment overrides the default Printer profile option set by the System Administrator.</p>
System Profile Values <i>System Administrator</i>	<p>As System Administrator, you can assign a default printer to an installation site, Oracle application, responsibility, or user.</p> <p>Users can override this setting at runtime.</p>

Hierarchy of Print Style Assignments

As System Administrator, you can require concurrent programs and reports to generate their output in a specific print style. Requiring a program's or a report's output to be in a specific print style prevents report set or user runtime print style choices.

Requirements for alternate print styles

All concurrent programs whose execution method is "Oracle Reports" require a print style to be selected when the program is defined. When the print style is not designated as a *required* print style, then other print styles may be selected, either as a default for a report in a report set, or at runtime when submitting the report, if two conditions are satisfied:

- The print style complies with the concurrent program's minimum values for columns and rows (entered on the Concurrent Programs form).
- The print style has been assigned to the destination printer's printer type (entered on the Printer Types form).

The following table describes the print style assignment hierarchy:

Form	Explanation
Concurrent Programs <i>System Administrator</i>	<p>As System Administrator, you can require a concurrent program to generate its output in a specific print style.</p> <p>This setting cannot be overridden at runtime or when defining a report in a report set.</p> <p>If a Print Style is entered in a program definition, but is not required, it serves as the first default setting to be read.</p>
Request Set <i>System Administrator</i>	<p>As System Administrator, you can assign a default print style to a report within a report set.</p>
Request Set <i>Application Users</i>	<p>Users can assign a default print style to a report within a report set, when they own the report set.</p> <p>This default setting can be changed by the System Administrator.</p>

System Administrator Printer and Print Style Settings

Program Definitions, Printers and Print Styles

As System Administrator you can restrict programs to send their output files only to a specified printer, for example, a printer in a secure office, using the Concurrent Programs form. You can also require a report to generate its output in a specific print style.

Assigning Default Printers and Print Styles to Reports in a Set

As System Administrator you can identify a default printer for each report within a report set, and assign a default print style for each report, using the Request Set form.

Assigning Default Printers Using Profile Options

As System Administrator you can identify a printer as a *default printer* for your installation site, a specific Oracle Application, a specific responsibility, or any of your end users, by setting the "Printer" user profile option in the System Profile Values window.

Users can override a default profile option value by:

- Setting their own personal "Printer" profile option using their Personal Profile Values form.
- Selecting another (available) printer at runtime when submitting a report.

End User Printer and Print Style Settings

End users may:

- Set default print styles for reports in their report sets, using their Request Set form.
- Identify a default printer of their own by using the Personal Profile Values form.

Users may override the default profile option setting their System Administrator defines.

- Choose any available printer and print style when running reports, when using the Run Reports form.

If a default printer or print style displays, users may override the default if other printers or print styles are available.

Related Topics

Overview of Printers and Printing, page 10-1

Printer Types, Print Styles, and Printer Drivers, page 10-2

Setting up Your Printers, page 10-7

Printer Setup with Pasta: , page 10-8

Printers, page 10-40

Print Styles, page 10-41

Printer Drivers, page 10-43

Postscript Printing in UNIX

You can convert your report output files into postscript format when printing in some UNIX environments by using the *enscript* UNIX utility.

Important: Refer to your UNIX documentation before using *enscript*. Usage and the arguments employed by *enscript* may be specific to your platform.

Concurrent Manager Arguments

The concurrent manager can supply four different values as arguments to an operating system print command or custom print program. See the example of using all four values provided by the concurrent manager. See: Example - Entering a Print Command and Arguments, page 10-29

See the example of using the *enscript* UNIX utility and two of the values the concurrent manager supplies as arguments. See: Example - Using the UNIX Enscript Command, page 10-37.

Enscript Arguments and Print Styles

The following table lists some sample *enscript* arguments, using the Courier font, for converting a report's output into postscript for the portrait, landscape, landwide, and A4 print styles.

Print Style	Enscript Arguments	Explanation	Result
Portrait	-fCourier10	Font is Courier 10 point.	80 characters portrait
Landscape	-r -fCourier8	-r rotates the printer's output 90 degrees to print in landscape mode. Font is Courier 8 point.	132 characters landscape
Landwide	-r -fCourier6	-r rotates the printer's output 90 degrees to print in landscape mode. Font is Courier 6 point.	180 characters landscape
A4	-fCourier10	Font is Courier 10 point.	132 characters landscape (A4 paper)

Example - Using Enscript to Print Postscript

In this example, the enscript command, followed by its arguments, is entered in the Arguments field of the Printer Drivers window, and the Driver Method is set to *Command*.

Printer Drivers window Arguments field:

```
enscript -r -fCourier8 -B -P$PROFILE$.PRINTER $PROFILE$.FILENAME
```

The following table explains the syntax for the enscript command.

Syntax	Explanation
-r	Enscript argument. Rotates the printer's output 90 degrees to print in landscape mode.
-fCourier8	Enscript argument. -f selects the font, in this example the font is Courier with a point size of 8.
-B	Enscript argument. Omits page headings.
-P\$PROFILE\$.PRINTER	Enscript argument. -P precedes the name of the printer which the output is sent to. Concurrent manager token. \$PROFILE\$.PRINTER retrieves the operating system name of the printer associated with the request.
\$PROFILE\$.FILENAME	Concurrent manager token. \$PROFILE\$.FILENAME calls out the filename of the report to be printed. The value retrieved is the output file name, including the path to the file.

In this example, the UNIX enscript command is entered along with two of the four arguments that a concurrent manager can supply values for.

- Since the argument "\$PROFILE\$.CONC_COPIES" is not used, the number of copies to be printed is set by the enscript default (which is usually one).
- Since the argument "\$PROFILE\$.TITLE" is not used, the concurrent manager does not provide a value for printing the report title on a banner or header page.

Related Topics

Overview of Printers and Printing, page 10-1

Setting up Your Printers, page 10-7

Hierarchy of Printer and Print Style Assignments, page 10-32

Printer Types Window

The screenshot shows the 'Oracle Applications' window titled 'Printer Types'. It features a menu bar (File, Edit, View, Folder, Tools, Window, Help) and a toolbar with icons for file operations. The main content area includes a 'Type' text field, a 'Description' text field, and a 'Printer Drivers' section. This section contains a table with two columns: 'Style' and 'Driver Name'. Below the table are two buttons labeled 'Style' and 'Driver'. The status bar at the bottom displays 'ord: 1/1' and '<OSC>'.

Use this window to define a printer type and to assign print styles and their corresponding printer drivers to the printer type.

Defining printer types allows you to assign print style and printer driver definitions to any number of printers by registering the printers as a specific "type".

When users choose a printer to send a report to, the available print styles are normally determined by the printer type.

Concurrent programs, however, can be defined to require their report output in a specific print style. For example, some Oracle Reports programs may require a specific print style in order to print correctly.

Important: You should issue a *Restart concurrent manager* command for all currently active managers whenever you edit an existing Printer Type, Print Style, or Printer Driver.

See: Controlling Concurrent Managers, page 8-29

Printer Types Block

Type

Enter a name for a printer type. Example printer types might be "LINE" for a line printer or "LN03" for an LN03 model printer.

You select this printer type when you register a printer using the Printers window.

Printer Drivers Block

Use this block to assign print styles and printer drivers to your printer types.

The Style button opens the Printer Styles window.

The Driver button opens the Printer Drivers window.

Related Topics

Overview of Printers and Printing, page 10-1

Printer Types, Print Styles, and Printer Drivers , page 10-2

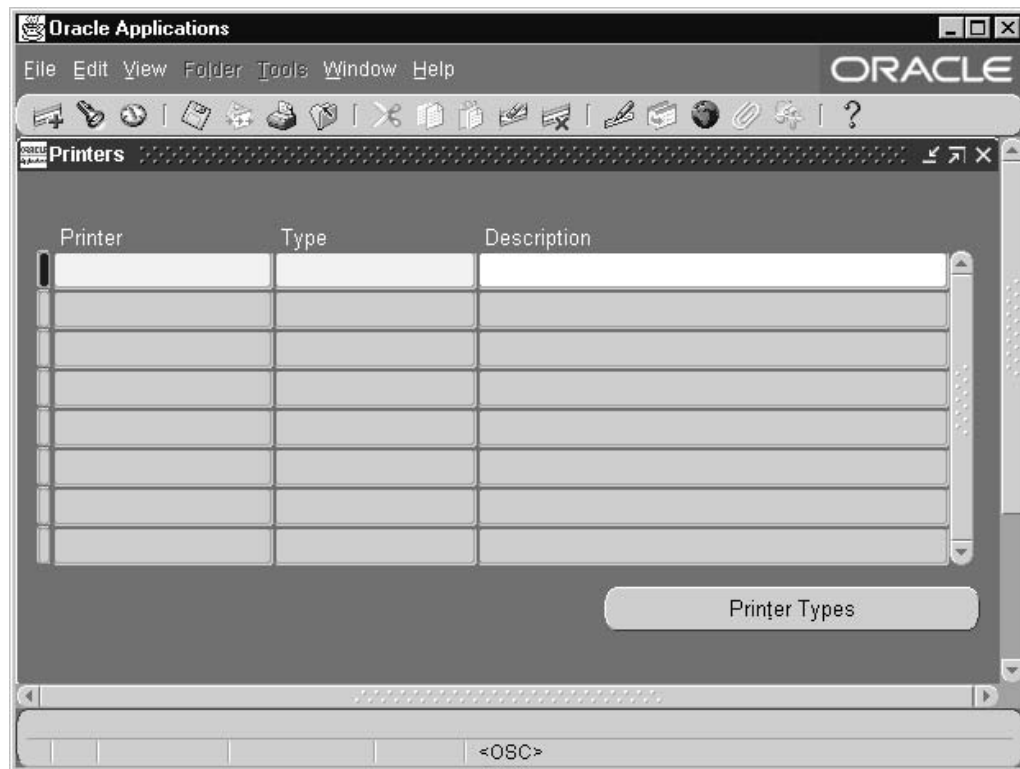
Setting up Your Printers, page 10-7

Printers, page 10-40

Print Styles, page 10-41

Printer Drivers, page 10-43

Printers Window



- Register printers with Oracle Applications by entering the operating system's name for the printer and assigning it a printer type.
- You must register a printer before you can print reports from it, using Oracle Applications.
- You can only register a printer with a previously defined printer type. Use the Printer Types window to define printer types.
- You can specify the default printer to which a user submits reports by setting the "Printer" user profile option.

Printers Block

Printer

Enter the name your operating system specifies for the printer.

Type

Select your printer type (i.e., manufacturer and model). Some reports require a printer of a specific type in order to print correctly.

You can only select a previously defined printer type. Use the Printer Types button to open a window to define a printer type.

Related Topics

Overview of Printers and Printing, page 10-1

Printer Types, Print Styles, and Printer Drivers, page 10-2

Setting up Your Printers, page 10-7
Printer Types field help, page 10-38
Print Styles field help, page 10-41
Printer Drivers field help, page 10-43

Print Styles Window

The screenshot shows the 'Print Styles' window in the Oracle Applications environment. The window title is 'Oracle Applications'. The menu bar includes 'File', 'Edit', 'View', 'Folder', 'Tools', 'Window', and 'Help'. The toolbar contains icons for file operations, printing, and help. The main content area is titled 'Print Styles' and contains the following fields:

- Style Name**: A text input field.
- Seq**: A small numeric input field.
- User Style**: A text input field.
- SRW Driver**: A text input field.
- Description**: A text input field.
- Layout**: A section containing:
 - Columns**: A numeric input field.
 - Rows**: A numeric input field.
 - Suppress Header**: A checkbox.
 - Orientation**: A text input field.

The status bar at the bottom displays '<OSC>'.

Use this window to define print styles. A print style describes how your report should be printed. For example, print style determines the:

- Number of lines per page
- Width of each line
- Page orientation (e.g., portrait or landscape)

Oracle Applications reports are designed to work with standard, shipped print styles. The following print styles are predefined:

- Portrait
- Landscape
- Landwide
- A4
- Dynamic Portrait

Not all reports work with all print styles. You may define additional print styles to customize your reports.

Once defined, a print style cannot be deleted.

Print Styles Block

Define a print style. The combination of Name and User Name uniquely identifies a print style.

Important: You should issue a *Restart concurrent manager* command for all currently active managers whenever you edit an existing Printer Type, Print Style, or Printer Driver.

See: Controlling Concurrent Managers, page 8-29.

Style Name

Multiple print styles display alphabetically in a list window.

You cannot update a print style's name.

Sequence

Enter a number that determines the display sequence for your print style when performing a query in this window. A negative sequence number appears before zero, and zero appears before a positive sequence number.

User Style

This user name does not appear anywhere except this window.

SRW Driver

Enter the name of the Oracle Reports (SRW) driver to be called when printing an applications report generated by Oracle Reports. This field is used only by applications reports generated by Oracle Reports.

Layout Block

Columns

Enter the number of columns your print style defines.

Rows

Enter the number of rows your print style defines.

Suppress Header

Reports may print with a header page that indicates who requested the report and when. Check the Suppress Header check box to define a print style that suppresses printing of this header page.

For example, suppressing the header page when printing checks prevents a check from being overwritten and maintains the orderly sequence of check numbers.

Orientation

Enter the orientation of your printed page, for example, portrait or landscape.

Related Topics

Overview of Printers and Printing, page 10-1

Printer Types, Print Styles, and Printer Drivers , page 10-2

Printer Types field help, page 10-38

Printers field help, page 10-40

Printer Drivers field help, page 10-43

Printer Drivers Window

Oracle Applications

File Edit View Folder Tools Window Help

Printer Drivers

Driver Name User Driver

Description

SRW Driver

Platform

Driver Method

☐ Command

☐ Program

☐ Subroutine

Driver Method Parameters

☐ Spool File

☐ Standard Input

Program Name

Arguments

Initialization

Reset [☐]

<OSC>

Use this window to define your printer driver and printer commands.

Important: You should issue a Restart concurrent manager command for all currently active managers whenever you edit an existing Printer Type, Print Style, or Printer Driver.

Oracle Applications ships printer drivers for the following print styles:

- Portrait
- Landscape
- Landwide
- A4
- Dynamic Portrait

Oracle Applications also ships printer drivers for specific printer types, including the following:

- Apple
- DEC LN03
- HP Laserjet II, HP Laserjet III, HP Laserjet 4
- HP line printer, HP 256X line printer
- EPOCH
- EPSON FX1050 and DMTX1

- QMS PS 825/925

Define additional printer drivers if you have different types of printers, or define additional print styles.

Printer Drivers Window Fields

Driver Name

The printer driver name must be unique for a given platform.

User Driver

This user name is referenced by Oracle Applications and must be unique for a given platform.

SRW Driver

Enter the name of the Oracle Reports (SRW) printer driver, if any, that will be invoked by your printer driver. Only Oracle Reports programs require this information.

Enter the entire path to the file, or just the file name. If you enter only the file name, Oracle Applications assumes the file is located in the \$FND_TOP/\$APPLREP directory.

Platform

Select the platform for which the printer driver is defined. Do not assign platform codes to printer drivers unless you have multiple drivers of the same name. If it cannot find a specific platform code associated with a driver, the concurrent manager will default to the driver with a null platform code.

Driver Method Region

Command

The printer driver executes within an operating system shell. An example is the lpr command in UNIX.

Program

The printer driver executes directly as a program, not through an operating system shell.

- An example is a C standalone program for printing.
- This method executes faster than the Command method, but cannot access shell commands like PRINT on MS-DOS.

Subroutine

The printer driver executes a predefined Oracle Applications routine.

Subroutines are specific to operating platforms and are invoked directly by a system call from the concurrent manager

Driver Method Parameters Region

Spool File

Select whether the printer driver creates its own copy of a file for printing. If this check box is checked when the Driver Method is set to Program, the print program creates its own spool file.

- An example of spool files is the UNIX lpr command, which creates its own copy of a file if you do not specify the -s option.

Standard Input

Select whether the printer driver accepts standard input. Uncheck this check box when the Driver Method is set to Program. Unless the program accepts standard input, this check box should always be unchecked.

- An example is the UNIX command `lpr`, which accepts standard input when a filename is not specified.

Program Name

If the driver method is Program:

- Enter the full path to the program that the driver invokes. The path is not necessary if the program's location can be identified by the operating system's PATH environment variable. See *Location for Custom Print Programs*, page 10-28.

If the driver method is Subroutine:

- Enter the subroutine name that the driver invokes.

Arguments

When the Driver Method is set to Program, enter any generic arguments that must be supplied to the print program.

When the Driver Method is set to Command, enter the full command and its arguments.

Initialization

Enter the initialization string that must be sent to the printer before the printer driver can begin printing.

Reset

Enter the reset string that returns the printer to its ready state when printing is complete

[]

The double brackets ([]) identify a descriptive flexfield that you can use to add data fields to this form without programming.

This descriptive flexfield allows you to define special commands specific to your printer driver and/or the platform it runs on.

Related Topics

Overview of Printers and Printing, page 10-1

Printer Types, Print Styles, and Printer Drivers, page 10-2

Creating Custom Printer Drivers, page 10-27

Oracle Applications Help

Customizing Oracle Applications Help

Oracle Applications help files are formatted as HTML allowing easy modification using commercial HTML text editors. You can also add customized files of your own to the help system.

If you have licensed Oracle Tutor 11i, you can use it to edit your Oracle Applications help files. Oracle Tutor 11i additionally provides model business procedures, process documents, and courseware that you can customize to fit your company's specific needs and link to the Oracle Applications help system. For more information, see *Tutor Author User Manual* and *Tutor Publisher User Manual*.

Caution: With each new release of Oracle Applications and each patch you accept, you will need to reapply your changes to any updated help files you have modified, if you want access to the latest information. In addition, Oracle does not provide any mechanism for identifying changes between releases of Oracle Applications help files.

Customizing Oracle Applications Help includes the following topics:

- Downloading and Uploading Help Files (Help System Utility), page 11-1
- Linking Help Files, page 11-5
- Updating the Search Index, page 11-7
- Customizing Help Navigation Trees, page 11-8
- Customizing Help in a Global Environment, page 11-15

Downloading and Uploading Help Files

Oracle Applications help files are stored in the database. The Oracle Applications Help System Utility is provided for retrieving and replacing them in the course of customization.

Setting Help System Utility Profile Options

Before using the Help System Utility you must define the upload and download directory paths. Oracle Applications provides profile options for you to set these paths.

Use the profile option Help Utility Download Path to define the directory location to which the Help System Utility will download files. Use Help Utility Upload Path to

define the directory location from which your customized files will be transferred back into the Oracle Applications Help System.

Identifying Help Files for Customization

Help files are downloaded by file name. To identify the specific file that you want to customize, open the document in the Oracle Applications Help System. Use the view source function of your browser to view the HTML source code. The source information will include the file name.

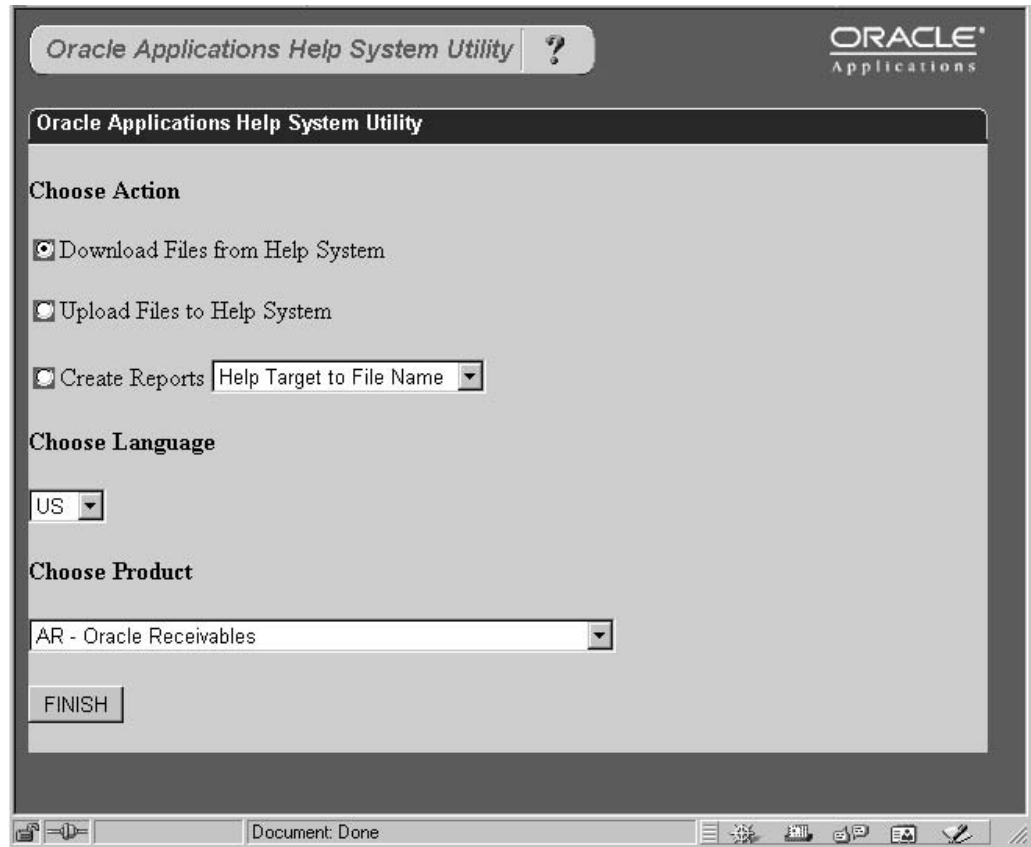
For example, if you view the source for this help document you will see the file name identified as SYS00032663.htm.

To identify the language and product of the help file, use the source document URL. The final three nodes of the source document URL are the language, the product name, and the anchor or target name.

Using this document again as an example, you will see the final three nodes of the URL are /US/FND/@ht_updown#ht_updown. This identifies the language as US, the product group as FND (Applications Object Library), and the target name as ht_updown.

Note: The syntax in the URL, @ht_updown#ht_updown, is an example of the Oracle Applications special syntax used to link documents by anchorname. For more information about this syntax see Linking Help Files, page 11-5.

The Oracle Applications Help System Utility also provides reports to cross-reference target names and help file names. See Creating Reports, page 11-4.



You download help files by language and by product. That is, you select the language (for example, US for U.S. English) and you select the product (for example, AR Oracle Receivables). It is important to note the two-letter code for the product (in this example, the two-letter code is AR) because the product code determines the download directory.

Follow these steps to download help files:

1. Open the Oracle Applications Help System Utility.
The Help System Utility is available from Oracle Self-Service Web Applications. Click on System Administration. Under Help Administration, click on Help Utility.
2. Select "Download Files from Help System" from the Choose Action option group.
3. Select the language from the Choose Language pop list.
4. Select the product from the Choose Product pop list. You can only select one product at a time.
5. Click Finish.

The Help System Utility downloads the help files for the product you selected. All files will be downloaded, including graphics. The files are downloaded, following the path defined in the profile option Help Utility Download Path, to a directory for the chosen language and product.

For example, if you selected the language to be US and the product to be AR Accounts Receivable, the files will be downloaded to <server location>\<Help Utility Download Path>\US\AR.

Uploading Help Files

Once you have customized the help files, use the Help System Utility to upload the documents into the help system. Your files are uploaded from the upload directory specified in the profile option Help Utility Upload Path.

Note: If you have created a new application with new help files that you are uploading for the first time, you must use the Generic File Manager Access Utility (FNDGFU) to upload these files. See Generic File Manager Access Utility, page C-20.

There are four types of files that can be uploaded to the help system. These are:

- HTML files (all HTML files must have a .htm extension)
- GIF graphics files (must have a .gif extension)
- Adobe® Acrobat files (must have a .pdf extension)
- Cascading Style Sheets (must have a .css extension)

Follow these steps to upload your customized help files:

1. Copy the customized files to the appropriate product folder in the upload directory.

For example, if you customized six help files for Accounts Receivable, copy the six files to the <server location>\<Help Utility Upload Path>\US\AR directory. It is critical that you copy the files to the correct product folder in order for the Oracle Applications Help System Utility to place the files in the correct location within the Oracle Applications Help System.

2. Open the Oracle Applications Help System Utility.

The Help System Utility is available from Oracle Self-Service Web Applications. Click on System Administration. Under Help Administration, click on Help Utility.

3. Select "Upload Files from Help System" from the Choose Action option group.
4. Select the language from the Choose Language pop list.
5. Select the product from the Choose Product pop list. You can only select one product at a time.
6. Click Finish.

The Help Utility uploads the help files for the product you selected. All files located in the directory for the selected language and product will be uploaded.

Creating Reports

The Help System Utility provides two reports for you to cross-reference help targets and file names.

Help Target to File Name Report This report lists by target, each file that contains the target, the document title of the file, and the product.

File Name to Help Target Report This report lists every file name and document title by language and product and all the targets found within each file.

Follow these steps to run these reports:

1. Open the Oracle Applications Help System Utility.
The Help System Utility is available from Oracle Self-Service Web Applications. Click on System Administration. Under Help Administration, click on Help Utility.
2. Select "Create Reports" from the Choose Action option group.
3. Select the appropriate report from the Create Reports pop list.
4. Select the language from the Choose Language pop list.
5. Select the product from the Choose Product pop list. You can build reports for all products by selecting "All Products" from the list.
6. Click Finish.

Linking Help Files

The Oracle Applications help system supports a special syntax for hypertext links that keeps them working even when files are renamed or split into parts. The special syntax, which is explained in detail below, looks like this:

For more about widgets, see All About Widgets.

Oracle Applications help files use this syntax, and you can use it too in your custom help files. Or if you prefer, you can always use conventional hypertext links based on filename.

Linking Help Files includes the following topics:

- Special Link Syntax, page 11-5
- Cross-Application Links, page 11-6
- Related-Topics Links, page 11-7
- Context-Sensitive Help, page 11-7

Special Link Syntax

Links in Oracle Applications help files point, not at a particular filename, but rather at one of the named anchors contained in the file. The Oracle Applications help system resolves anchorname to file dynamically, every time a link is negotiated.

Information on which files contain which anchornames is put into the help system automatically on upload. Authors must ensure that anchornames are unique across an application's help files to prevent duplicate links. In return, they need never worry about a change in filename breaking their links.

Named Anchors in Conventional HTML

By **named anchor** is meant the following kind of HTML tag:

Named anchors can be placed anywhere in the body of an HTML file, and are typically used for links internal to the file in question. A pound sign (#) is placed before the anchorname in the link that points at it.

For example, you would use HTML like the following to allow users to jump forward to a section with the anchorname of "widgets":

For more about widgets, see [All About Widgets](#) below.

```
<A NAME="widgets"></A> <H2>All About Widgets</H2>
```

Extended to Support Interdocument Links

Oracle Applications help files extend this conventional HTML syntax to create links not only within, but also **between** help files. To link to a file that contains a particular named anchor, you simply place an at sign (@) before the anchorname. To link to the precise spot within the file where this anchor appears, you append a pound sign followed by the anchorname, just as you would in conventional HTML. This results in the following special syntax:

```
<A HREF="@anchorname#anchorname">link text</A>.
```

For example, to link to the file that contains the "widgets" anchor illustrated above, at the point in the file that this anchor occurs, you would use HTML like the following:

For more about widgets, see [All About Widgets](#).

If you simply want to link to the top of the file that contains this anchor, you can omit the pound-sign segment "#widgets."

Links in Oracle Applications help files rarely omit the pound-sign segment. This means that however topics are rearranged within or among files, links to these topics from other files always go to the proper file, and to the precise spot within the file where the topic occurs.

Caution: Do not use case to make distinctions between anchornames. Unlike most web browsers, the Oracle Applications help system treats anchornames in a case-insensitive fashion.

Cross-Application Links

In the Oracle Applications help system, all help files associated with a particular application exist in the same directory, as far as their URL is concerned. Help files associated with other applications exist in directories named after the application's short name. All these application directories are at the same level in the help system.

To create a link that goes to a help file associated with a different application, you create a relative link that goes up a level to the parent of all help application directories, and then back down through the other application's directory, before concluding with Oracle Applications' special link syntax. This results in the following cross-application link syntax:

```
<A HREF="../shortname/@anchorname#anchorname"> link text</A>
```

For example, if the "All About Widgets" topic illustrated above were an Oracle Payables help topic, and you wanted to link to it from an Oracle General Ledger help file, you would use a link like the following, where AP is Oracle Payables' short name:

For more about widgets in Oracle Payables, see [All About Widgets](#).

When used in this fashion, application short names are case insensitive.

Note: These application help directories are merely "virtual" directories recognized by the Oracle Applications help system when used in URLs. All files are actually stored in the database, with application short name being one attribute among many associated with them.

Oracle Payables' official short name is SQLAP. This has been shortened to AP for the virtual directory used in the Oracle Applications help system. Similarly, Oracle General Ledger's official short name of SQLGL has been shortened to GL, and Oracle Assets short name of OFA has been shortened to FA. These are the only exceptions.

Related Topics Links

Links are not limited to a single target in the Oracle Applications help system. You can point your links at multiple topics and files by using the following syntax:

```
<A HREF = "@anchormame1,anchormame2,anchormame3"> Related Topics</A>
```

When a user negotiates the link, a page headed "Related Topics" appears, containing a list of the page titles corresponding to these anchormames, with each title linked to the file in question.

To include cross-application links, simply prefix the application short name and a colon to the anchormame:

```
<A HREF = "@anchormame1,shortname:anchormame2,anchormame3"> Related Topics</A>
```

Context-Sensitive Help

When you ask for help in Oracle Applications, the topic for your current window opens. If you ask for help from a report parameters window, your help file opens to a discussion of that report.

Oracle Applications help files contain special anchormames to enable these context-sensitive links. When calling help from a window, Oracle Applications looks for an anchormame based on the form name and the window name combined as follows:

```
<A NAME="form_name_window_name"></A>
```

You can override the form_name portion of the anchormame by specifying a HELP_TARGET parameter in the parameter field of the Form Functions window. Use the syntax HELP_TARGET = "alternative_form_name". See: Form Functions, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide: Security*.

When calling help from a report parameter window, Oracle Applications looks for an anchormame constructed as follows:

```
<A NAME="SRS_concurrent_program_shortcode"></A>
```

Updating the Search Index

Oracle interMedia Text enables the search feature provided by the Oracle Applications help system. You run a script called aflobld.sql to rebuild the search index after uploading customized documents. This ensures that they will be included in any searches your users perform.

To rebuild the interMedia index, use the following command line:

```
sqlplus <apps/pwd> @$FND_TOP/sql/aflobbld.sql
```

where

<apps/pwd> is the APPS schema username/password. To specify a particular database, append an @ sign and the database SID (@database).

Example

```
sqlplus apps/apps@devdb @$FND_TOP/sql/aflobbld.sql
```

- connects to apps/apps@devdb using Oracle SQL*PLUS
- rebuilds the search index for Oracle Applications help

Customizing Help Navigation Trees

You use the Help Builder applet to customize the help navigation trees that appear in your browser window's navigation frame when help is invoked.

Caution: With each new release of Oracle Applications and each patch you accept, you will need to reapply your changes to any updated help navigation trees you have modified, if you want access to the latest information. In addition, Oracle does not provide any mechanism for identifying changes between releases of Oracle Applications help navigation trees.

You can use the Help Builder to perform the following tasks:

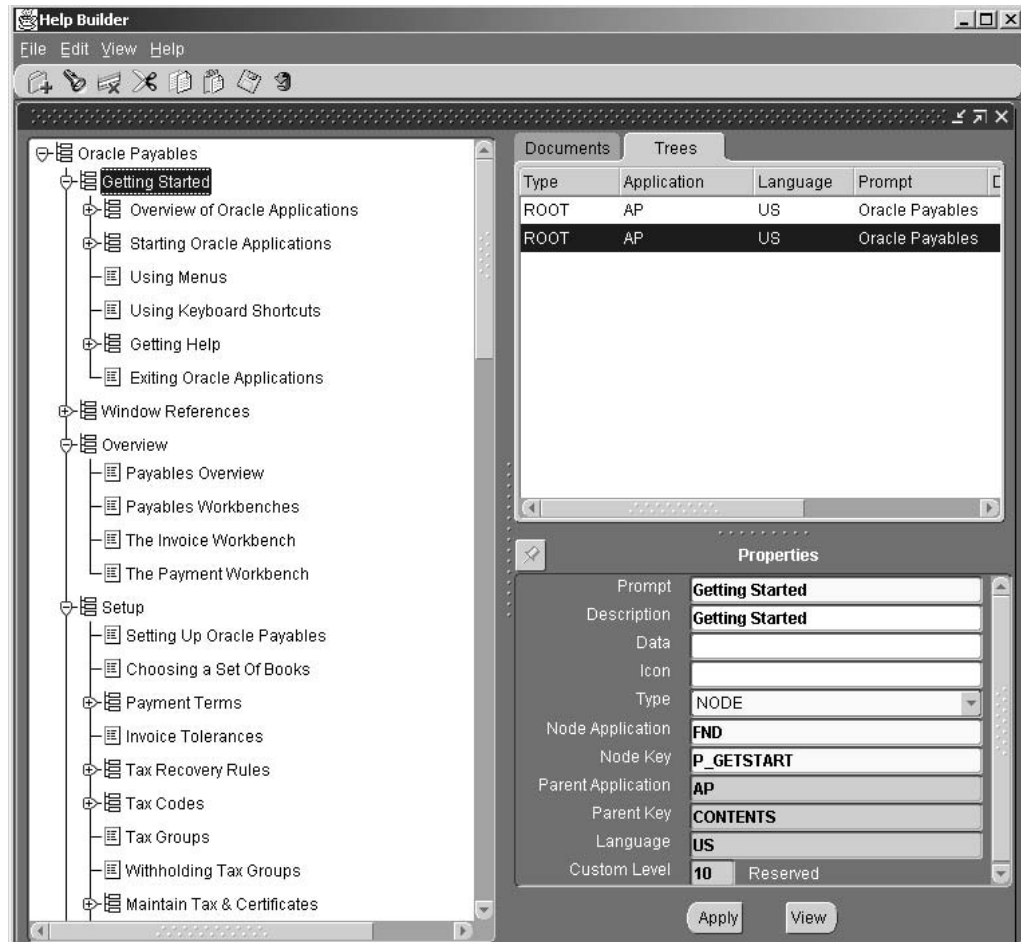
- Open a tree for editing, page 11-11
- Add new help files to a tree, page 11-12
- Add new nodes to a tree, page 11-13
- Add nodes to one tree from another, page 11-13
- Change the organization of a tree, page 11-13
- Create a new navigation tree, page 11-14

For help understanding the information associated with each of the Help Builder's fields, see Help Builder Window Reference, page 11-14.

Accessing the Help Builder

To access the Help Builder, navigate from Oracle Self-Service Web Applications as follows: **System Administration - Help Builder**.

The Help Builder User Interface



The Help Builder window default view consists of three panes. The left pane displays the tree that is currently selected. Use this area to manipulate your tree by adding nodes, deleting nodes, and dragging nodes into the positions desired. The top right pane displays items matching the searches you have performed using the Find Documents or Find Trees functions. Click on the Trees or Documents Tab as appropriate. The bottom right pane is the Properties Pane. This area displays the properties of the item (root, node, or document) currently selected. Those properties with enabled fields can be updated.

Help Builder Menus

File Menu

The File Menu provides the following functions:

New

Creates a new root node. Selecting this option will open the Root Node Properties window for you to enter the appropriate values for your new root node.

Open

Opens a tree. Selecting this option will open the Find Trees window for you to enter selection criteria to find the appropriate tree.

Save	Saves the current changes.
Reload	Reloads the current tree to apply all changes throughout the tree hierarchy.
Print	Prints the current tree pane.
Exit	Exits the Help Builder.

Edit Menu

The Edit Menu provides the following functions:

New Node	Creates a new node beneath the selected node on the tree. If the selected node is a document, a document node is created. If the selected node is a branch node, a branch node is created.
Cut	Cuts the selected item (document or branch node).
Copy	Copies the selected item (document or branch node).
Paste	Pastes an item beneath the currently selected node on the tree. If the node selected is a document, the item will be pasted beneath it on the tree. If the node selected is a branch that has been expanded, the item will be pasted as a child of the selected node. If the node selected is a branch that has not been expanded, the item will be pasted as a sibling beneath the selected node.
Delete	Deletes the selected item.
Properties...	Allows you to update the properties of the selected item via the Properties window. The Properties window is identical to the Properties Pane. See Help Builder Window Reference, page 11-14 for descriptions of the Properties fields.
Preferences...	Allows you to set interface preferences via the Preferences window. The preferences you can set are: Background Color Line and Box Color Default Node Color Default Node Text Color Font Name Font Size

View Menu

The View Menu provides the following functions

Node Properties	Enable the check box to display the Node Properties pane (enabled is the default).
Toolbar	Enable the check box to display the Toolbar (enabled is the default).

Statusbar	Enable the check box to display the Status Bar (enabled is the default).
Find Documents	Opens the Find Documents window.
Find Trees	Opens the Find Trees window.

Help Menu

The View Menu provides the following functions:

About...	Displays information about the Help Builder.
Library	Opens the Oracle Applications Help Library.

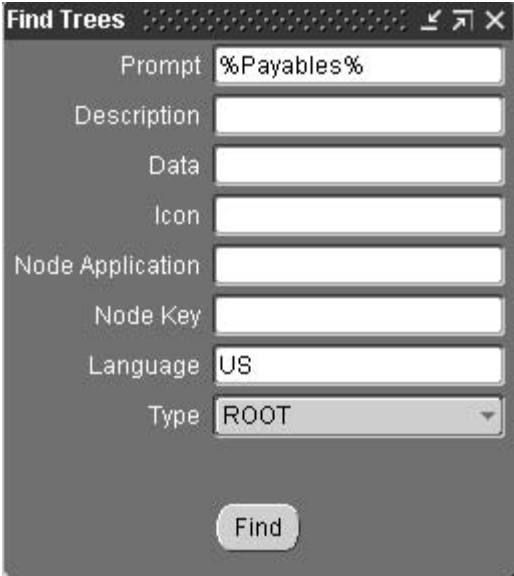
Help Builder Tasks

Opening a tree for editing

To open a tree for editing:

1. Open the Find Trees window using one of the following menu options:
(M) File > Open
(M) View > Find Trees
2. Enter your search criteria in the **Find Trees** window, and click **Find**.

For example, enter %Payables% in the **Prompt** field to find the Oracle Payables tree.



See Help Builder Window Reference, page 11-14 for descriptions of the Find Trees search fields.

3. Trees matching your criteria will be displayed in the upper right pane of the Help Builder window on the Trees tab. Select a tree in the list to see its properties displayed in the Properties pane below. Double-click a tree to open it.

The tree's top-level node will appear in the left pane. Expand and contract nodes to display the part of the tree you want to edit.

Adding new help files to a tree

To add new help files to a tree:

1. Upload the help files to the database, page 11-1.
2. Open the tree for editing, page 11-11.
3. Click the **Find Documents** icon on the toolbar, or select Find Documents from the View Menu.

The **Find Documents** window appears.



See Help Builder Window Reference, page 11-14 for descriptions of the Find Documents search fields.

4. Enter your search criteria, select **Exclude documents already on a tree**, and click **Find**.

Files corresponding to the information you entered appear on the **Documents** tab of the upper right pane of the Help Builder window. Select a document to view its properties in the Properties Pane.

5. To add the file to the tree, drag it from the **Documents** tab and drop it on the tree in the the position desired.

Note: Files containing multiple named anchors appear multiple times. Each Target will have its own listing. Choose the Target that corresponds to the topic you want to add.

If the topic you want to add is not the header target of the file, but a target within the document, you must supply the special link syntax in the **Data** field of the Properties Pane.

For example, the target name might appear in the Data field as @ht_updown. To link directly to this anchor you would add #ht_updown to the end of the anchorname. The resulting entry in the **Data** field will be @ht_updown#ht_updown.

For more information about this syntax see Linking Help Files, page 11-5.

Adding new nodes to a tree

To add new nodes to a tree:

1. Open the tree for editing, page 11-11.
2. Select the node beneath which you want to add a new node, and click **New Node** on the toolbar or select New Node from the Edit Menu.

Note: The New Node feature will add a node that is like the node selected. For example, if a branch node is selected a branch node will be added beneath it. If a leaf node is selected, a leaf node will be added beneath it.

When adding a branch node as a sibling to an existing branch node, be sure that the selected branch node is not expanded. If the existing branch node is expanded, the new node will be added as a child to the selected branch.

3. Enter information for the new node in the Properties Pane, and click **Apply**.
4. Click **Save** to save your changes.

Adding nodes from one tree to another

To add nodes from one tree to another:

1. Open the tree for editing, page 11-11.
2. From the View menu select **Find Trees**.
3. In the Find Trees window select **Node** from the **Type** poplist and enter search criteria for the nodes you want to add. Click **Find**.

Nodes corresponding to the information you enter appear on the **Trees** tab of the main Help Builder window.

4. Drag nodes from the **Trees** tab and drop them on the tree.
5. Click **Save** to save your changes.

Changing the organization of a tree

To change the organization of a tree:

Caution: Changes made to nodes added from another tree are reflected in the original tree and all other trees that include them.

1. Open the tree for editing, page 11-11.
2. To move a node, drag the node from its current location and drop it at its new location in the tree.
3. To delete a node, select it and click **Delete** on the toolbar or select Delete from the Edit Menu.
4. To change a prompt, select the node, enter the new prompt in the **Prompt** field of the **Properties** pane, and click **Apply**.

Other node properties can be changed in a similar fashion.

Note: If the same node appears elsewhere in the tree, your changes will not appear there until you click the **Reload** button on the toolbar. For

one node to be the same as another, the Node Key and Node Application of their parent nodes must be the same, as well as all their own properties. Their grandparent nodes and above can be different.

Creating a new navigation tree

To create a new navigation tree:

1. Choose **File > New**.

The **Root Node Properties** window appears.

2. Enter information for the tree's root node, and click **Apply**.
3. Add new nodes to the tree, page 11-13.
4. Add new help files to the tree, page 11-12.
5. Add nodes from other trees to the tree, page 11-13.
6. To view the new tree with context-sensitive help, enter its root as the Help Tree Root for some application, responsibility, or user.

To view it stand alone, substitute its root in the root= parameter at the end of your site's Oracle Applications Help URL. Include the application short name. For example, for a root named ROOT_INV belonging to the Oracle Inventory product, you would use root=INV:ROOT_INV in the URL.

Help Builder Window Reference

Field names and descriptions for the Help Builder window are given below.

Application	Application shortname of application that owns the help file.
Custom Level	Customization level of the node. 100 is the default for customer use. Levels under 100 are reserved for system use.
Data	If the node links to a help file, the file name or a target name preceded by an "@" symbol, or an absolute URL.
Description	Longer description of the node, if the Prompt is terse. Otherwise may simply repeat the Prompt.
Filename	Pre-upload filename of the help file.
Icon	Not used.
Language	Language code of help files covered by the node.
Node Application	Application shortname of the application that owns this node. If different from the value given for the ROOT, this node and all the nodes it branches into have been grafted into the tree from another application.
Node Key	String that uniquely identifies the node in this Node Application. The node key can be generated automatically or typed into the field (for a new node). However, once references to the node exist, the node key cannot be changed.
Prompt	The text that appears on the tree for this node.

Target	Anchorname contained in the help file. Do not precede with an @ sign in the Find Documents window.
Title	Title of the help file.
Type	ROOT: Top-most node of a navigation tree. NODE: Node that branches into other nodes, but is not the ROOT. If Data is not null, it links to a help file as well. DOCUMENT: Node that does not branch into other nodes, but simply links to a help file.
Version	Version identifier of the help file.

Customizing Help in a Global Environment

The Oracle Applications help system contains files translated into many different languages, and localized for diverse countries and regions. If your enterprise crosses linguistic and cultural boundaries, or if you use Oracle Human Resources, the following information may apply when customizing your help files.

Linking Between Different Languages

One level up the virtual directory hierarchy used in Oracle Applications help URLs are the application directories used to construct cross-application links. Two levels up are the language directories, which you can use to construct cross-language links.

To create a link that goes to a help file in a different language, use the following link syntax:

```
<A HREF = "../.. /language_code/shortname/@anchorname#anchorname">
  link text</A>
```

For example, to link to "All About Widgets" in the French version of Oracle Payables help, you would use the following link, where AP is Oracle Payables' short name and F is the French language code:

```
For more about French widgets, see <A HREF="../.. /F/AP/@widgets#
widgets">Qu'est-ce qu'un widget?</A>.
```

When used in this fashion, language codes are case insensitive.

Note: After following a link to a different language, users stay in that language until they follow a link back out to their original language. This can be either a link they encounter within a help file, or a link from the navigation tree, which remains in their original language throughout.

Applications DBA Duties

Overview of Applications DBA Duties

Applications database administration (DBA) combines the efforts of an Oracle Applications System Administrator and an ORACLE database administrator.

ORACLE Usernames

The database privileges of Oracle Applications products depend on their ORACLE usernames. ORACLE usernames are created by an ORACLE database administrator, and then are registered as ORACLE usernames by a System Administrator.

An ORACLE username identifies you as an authorized ORACLE database user.

- Each ORACLE username consists of a database username and password assigned by your database administrator.
- Each ORACLE username accesses a set of data within the ORACLE database.
- Usually each Oracle application has its own ORACLE username, in which application-specific data resides. That is, the tables and other database objects owned by the application are accessed by the ORACLE username.

Note that database usernames and passwords connect to the ORACLE database, while application usernames and passwords access Oracle Applications.

You access the ORACLE database through an Oracle Applications product, and the application's ORACLE username is what grants access privileges.

Related Topics

ORACLE Users, page 12-8

Applications, page 12-12

Registering an ORACLE username

The installation process automatically registers Oracle Applications ORACLE usernames, so you only need to register any additional ORACLE usernames that you need using the ORACLE Users window.

You must register an ORACLE username with Oracle Applications if:

- you create a custom application using Oracle Application Object Library
- you want to associate an additional ORACLE username with an Oracle Applications product

Important: Before you can register an ORACLE username, your database administrator must first create an ORACLE username that connects to the ORACLE database. You then use the ORACLE Users window to register your ORACLE username.

Registering a new ORACLE username using the ORACLE Users window submits a concurrent request that sets up the necessary privileges to the Oracle Application Object Library database tables you need to run your application. These database tables contain information to allow your users access to Oracle Application Object Library features, such as menus and flexfields.

Reregistering ORACLE usernames

You should also reregister ORACLE usernames associated with custom applications built using Oracle Application Object Library each time you upgrade Oracle Application Object Library.

When you change the privileges that an already registered ORACLE username has to the Oracle Application Object Library database tables:

- Oracle Applications then submits a concurrent request to create or recreate privileges to the Oracle Application Object Library database tables.
- The concurrent request must complete successfully in order for your changes to take effect.

Registering an ORACLE username as "Restricted"

Oracle Applications let you register ORACLE usernames as *Restricted* ORACLE usernames. A restricted ORACLE username prevents users from modifying data in Oracle Application Object Library tables.

Your database administrator can set up the ORACLE username to prevent users from modifying data in other Oracle Applications tables.

You can register an ORACLE username as restricted using the ORACLE Users window.

- When you register an ORACLE username as restricted, you submit a concurrent request that sets up read-only privileges to the Oracle Application Object Library database tables.
- Users with responsibilities that access restricted ORACLE usernames have read-only privileges to the Oracle Application Object Library database tables, which prevents them from inserting, updating, or deleting data related to such Oracle Application Object Library features as menus, flexfields, and so on.

Defining Data Groups

A data group assigns an ORACLE username to an Oracle Applications product, and includes a list of the valid Application-ORACLE username pairs.

The installation process automatically defines Data Groups for Oracle Applications, so you only need to define any additional data groups that you wish to utilize. See: Defining Data Groups, page 7-23 and Data Groups, page 7-61.

Conflict Domains

A conflict domain is a set of related data stored in one or more ORACLE usernames and linked by grants and synonyms. Do not confuse logical databases with your ORACLE database. The ORACLE database contains all your Oracle Applications data, with each application's data usually residing in one ORACLE username. You can think of a logical database as a line drawn around a set of related data for which you wish to define concurrent program incompatibilities. In other words, logical databases determine which concurrent programs cannot run at the same time.

Logical Databases and Program Incompatibilities

When an ORACLE username is identified as belonging to a logical database, concurrent program incompatibility rules are enforced when concurrent programs connect to the ORACLE username.

By checking for incompatibilities between programs running concurrently, accessing the same data, Oracle Applications ensures that data retrieved by one program is not incorrect or adversely affected when retrieved by another program.

Example - Program Incompatibilities

An example of a concurrent program that is incompatible with other concurrent programs is Oracle General Ledger's Posting program, used to post journal entries.

If the Posting program's incompatibility with other Oracle Applications concurrent programs were not enforced, other financial reports running simultaneously with the Posting program could contain incorrect account balance information. Logical databases ensure that this does not happen.

Defining Logical Databases

The installation process automatically defines logical databases and assigns ORACLE usernames to them.

A *Standard* logical database can be assigned to every Oracle Applications product so that every concurrent program, if incompatible with any other program, does not run concurrently with that program, regardless of which ORACLE username those two programs connect to. Assigning every ORACLE username to the same (e.g., Standard) logical database is a fail-safe method of enforcing program incompatibility rules.

You must define new logical databases only if you build a custom application whose data do not interact with data found in existing logical databases.

As a general rule, you should define a logical database for each custom application, and assign that application's ORACLE username(s) to the corresponding logical database.

However, if a custom application's data interacts with another application's data, you should assign the two applications' ORACLE usernames to the same logical database.

Registering your custom application's tables ensures that the table names appear as QuickPick values in the Define Alerts form.

Initialization Code

You can now add in custom initialization SQL code to be executed at database session startup. You specify this code using a profile option.

Oracle Applications products may also have application-specific initialization code specified.

The code is executed by FND_GLOBAL.INITIALIZE and APPS_INITIALIZE immediately after initializing global variables, profiles, and the contents of client_info on session startup.

The order of execution is:

- FND_GLOBAL values initialized
- Profiles initialized
- CLIENT_INFO contents initialized
- FND_APPS_INIT_SQL initialization code called (if a value is defined)
- FND_INIT_SQL initialization code called (if a value is defined)

Profile Option Initialization SQL Statement - Custom

Using the profile option Initialization SQL Statement - Custom, you can add site-specific initialization code, such as optimizer settings. This profile value must be a valid SQL statement, or a PL/SQL block for more than one statement, that is to be executed once at the startup of every database session.

This profile option can be set at any level by the System Administrator, and is reserved for use by customers.

Profile Option Initialization SQL Statement - Oracle

This profile option is used by Oracle Applications to add application-specific initialization code. This profile option is set at the application level only, and will only be executed for responsibilities owned by that application. This profile option and its value settings are delivered as seed data, and must not be modified.

Related Topics

Oracle Applications and Cost-Based Optimization, page 13-1

Overview of Applications DBA Duties, page 12-1

ORACLE Users, page 12-8

Resource Consumer Groups in Oracle Applications

The Database Resource Manager in Oracle8i is used to allocate and manage resources among database users and applications.

Resource consumer groups and resource plans provide a method for specifying how to partition processing resources among different users. A resource consumer group defines a set of users who have similar resource usage requirements. An overall resource plan specifies how resources are distributed among the different resource consumer groups.

Oracle Applications allows the system administrator to assign individual Oracle Applications users to resource consumer groups. In addition, concurrent programs and concurrent managers can be assigned to resource consumer groups.

Note: These resource consumer groups apply to CPU resources only.

For additional information, see the Oracle database documentation.

Assigning Resource Consumer Groups

The system administrator can assign a user to a resource consumer group by setting the value of the user profile option FND:Resource Consumer Group for that particular user. The user can see this profile option but cannot update it.

The system administrator can assign a concurrent program to a resource consumer group in the Parameters window of the Define Concurrent Program form. See: Concurrent Programs Parameters Window, page 7-58.

The system administrator can assign a concurrent manager to a resource consumer group in the Define Concurrent Manager form. See: Concurrent Managers Window, page 8-46.

Hierarchy of Resource Consumer Group Assignments

Conflicts can arise between the resource consumer groups associated with a single session. For example, a concurrent manager assigned to one resource consumer group may run a concurrent program assigned to another. A similar situation arises when a user performs a transaction managed by a transaction manager that has a different resource consumer group than the user. To resolve such conflicts, Oracle Applications uses a hierarchy.

In the case of a concurrent program, the system first checks to see if the program has an assigned resource consumer group and if so, uses that. If not, the system checks the concurrent manager running the program and uses its resource consumer group. If the concurrent manager is not assigned to a resource consumer group the system uses the default group "Default_Consumer_Group".

In the case of a transaction manager running a transaction program, the system once again checks the resource consumer group assigned to the program, if any, and if there is none, checks the transaction manager. If the transaction manager has no assigned resource consumer group the system then checks the profile option value for the user whose session began the transaction. If there is no resource consumer group defined the system uses the default resource consumer group.

For a user running a form, the system first checks the profile option value for that user and uses that if it is defined. Otherwise the system uses the default resource consumer group.

Oracle Applications Schema Password Change Utility (FNDCPASS)

Changing passwords frequently helps ensure database security. Oracle Applications provides a command line utility, FNDCPASS, to set Oracle Applications schema passwords. This utility changes the password registered in Oracle Applications tables and changes the schema password in the database. This utility can also change user passwords.

Note: You cannot change a schema name, such as APPLSYS or GL, after a product is installed.

Important: Ensure that all concurrent managers have been shut down before using FNDCPASS with the SYSTEM argument.

All users should log out and the Applications system should be down before running this utility.

Important: Before changing any passwords, you should make a backup of the tables FND_USER and FND_ORACLE_USERID.

FNDCPASS Command and Arguments

To change the APPS and APPLSYS schema password:

```
FNDCPASS <logon> 0 Y <system/password> SYSTEM \  
  <username> <new_password>
```

Use the above command with the following arguments. When specifying the SYSTEM token, FNDCPASS expects the next arguments to be the APPLSYS username and the new password.

logon	The Oracle username/password.
system/password	The username and password for the SYSTEM DBA account.
username	The APPLSYS username. For example, 'applsys'.
new_password	The new password.

This command does the following:

1. Validates APPLSYS.
2. Re-registers password in Oracle Applications.
3. Changes the schema password.
4. Changes the APPLSYS and all APPS passwords (for multi-APPS schema installations) to the same password.

Because everything with a read_only_flag in the FND_ORACLE_USERID table must always have the same password, FNDCPASS updates these passwords as well as APPLSYS's password. For example, the APPS password will be updated when the APPLSYS password is changed.

5. ALTER USER is executed to change the oracle password for the above Oracle users.

For example, the following command changes the APPLSYS password to 'WELCOME'.

```
FNDCPASS apps/apps 0 Y system/manager SYSTEM APPLSYS WELCOME
```

To change an Oracle Applications schema password (other than APPS/APPLSYS):

```
FNDCPASS <logon> 0 Y <system/password> ORACLE \  
  <username> <new_password>
```

Use the above command with the following arguments. When specifying the ORACLE token, FNDCPASS expects the next arguments to be an ORACLE username and the new password.

logon	The Oracle username/password.
system/password	The username and password for the SYSTEM DBA account.
username	The Oracle username. For example, 'GL'.

new_password The new password.

For example, the following command changes the GL user password to 'GL1'.

```
FNDCPASS apps/apps 0 Y system/manager ORACLE GL GL1
```

To change an Oracle Applications user's password:

```
FNDCPASS <logon> 0 Y <system/password> USER \  
          <username> <new_password>
```

Use the above command with the following arguments. When specifying the USER token, FNDCPASS expects the next arguments to be an Oracle Applications username and the new password.

logon The Oracle username/password.

system/password The username and password for the System DBA account.

username The Oracle Applications username. For example, 'VISION'.

new_password The new password.

For example, if you were changing the password for the user VISION to 'WELCOME', you would use the following command:

```
FNDCPASS apps/apps 0 Y system/manager USER VISION WELCOME
```

Using the FNDCPASS Utility

Here is an example of changing an Oracle user's password, where <username> is the Oracle schema name.

1. Use the FNDCPASS utility to change the password.

```
FNDCPASS <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y \  
          <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> ORACLE \  
          <username>\<new_password>
```

When changing the APPS or APPLSYS passwords, replace ORACLE with SYSTEM.

Important: Passwords for APPLSYS and the APPS schemas -- including the MRC schema -- must be the same. If you change the password for one, FNDCPASS automatically changes the others.

2. Update configuration files.

If you changed the APPS schema password (and APPLSYS) or the APPLSYSPUB password, update the following configuration files. They are used when connecting to Oracle Applications.

If you changed the APPS (and APPLSYS) password, update the password in these files:

- iAS_TOP/ Apache/modplsql/cfg/wdbsvr.app
- ORACLE_HOME/reports60/server/CGIcmd.dat

If you changed the APPLSYSPUB password, update the password in these files:

- FND_TOP/resource/appswweb.cfg

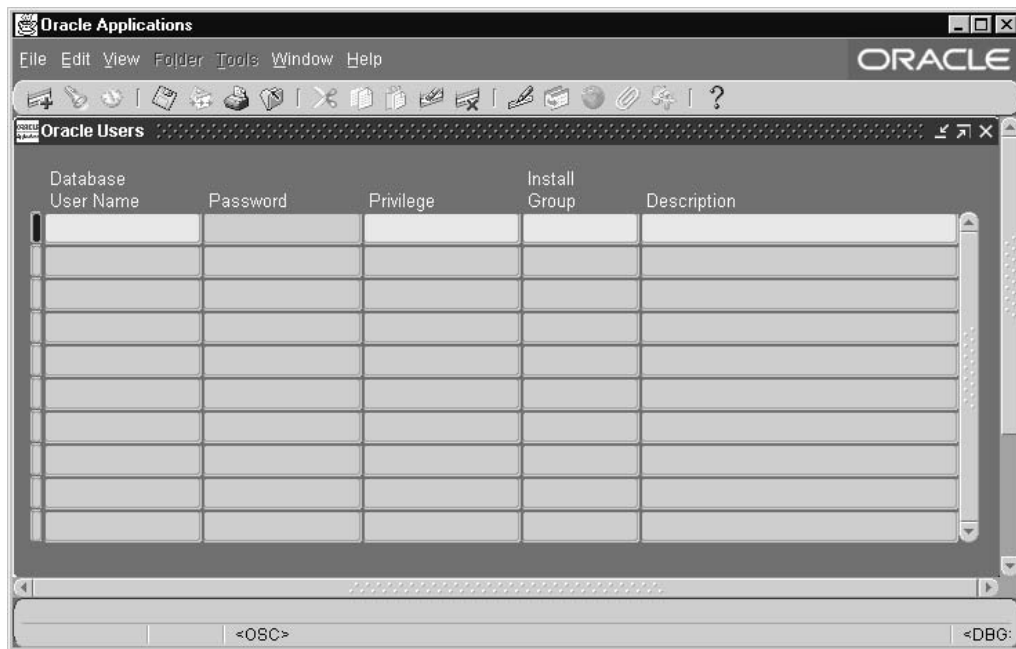
- OA_HTML/bin/appswweb.cfg
- FND_TOP/secure/<host_name>_<dbname>.dbc

Note: When changing APPS (or APPLSYS) and APPLSYSPUB passwords, new connection requests cannot be fulfilled successfully by the web server after Step 1 has been completed and until Step 2 is completed.

3. Verify the new password.

If you changed the password for APPS (and APPLSYS), restart all concurrent managers, then log on to Oracle Applications to test the new password.

ORACLE Users Window



Register an ORACLE username with Oracle Applications. An ORACLE username grants access privileges to the ORACLE database.

The installation process always registers your ORACLE username, so you need not register it unless you create a custom application using Oracle Application Object Library, or if you wish to associate an additional ORACLE username with Oracle Applications.

If you register an ORACLE username as a “restricted” ORACLE username, you submit a concurrent request to set up read-only privileges to the Oracle Application Object Library tables. An “enabled” ORACLE username has all privileges to those tables. A “disabled” ORACLE username has no privileges to those tables.

If you do not register and enable your ORACLE username or if you disable a registered ORACLE username, your user cannot use Oracle Application Object Library features such as menus and flexfields.

You should not change the registration of any ORACLE usernames that the installation process registers, other than changing the passwords.

If you are registering a change to an existing ORACLE password, make the password change in the database immediately AFTER you register the password change in Oracle Applications. Until you register the password changes in Oracle Applications and implement them in the database, responsibilities using this ORACLE username cannot connect to the database.

Your password must follow the guidelines for creating passwords discussed in the Oracle 8i documentation. Remember that if you use non-character values in your password, you may need to use quotation marks around your password when changing it in the database.

Warning: If you are changing the password to the *appls* ORACLE username, which contains the Oracle Application Object Library tables, you must *not* change the passwords to any other ORACLE usernames at the same time.

As soon as you change and save the password, you should immediately log out of the Oracle Applications, make the *appls* password change in the database, and then sign on again before you do anything else. You should also ensure that no other users are logged on to the Oracle Applications while you are changing the *appls* password.

Passwords for the APPS Accounts

The *appls* password must be identical to the password for the APPS accounts (APPS, APPS2, APPS3). The uniform passwords enable the different sets of books to operate correctly.

Prerequisites

- ☐ Create an ORACLE username that matches your application needs (this function is usually performed by a database administrator). The ORACLE username must include the *create session* privilege.
- ☐ Or, coordinate any change you intend to make to an existing ORACLE username password. You should register the password change in Oracle Applications and change the password in the database immediately afterwards.

Important: Until you have both registered the changes in Oracle Applications and then implemented them in the database, responsibilities using your ORACLE username cannot connect to the database.

ORACLE Users Block

Password

Enter the password of your ORACLE username. Your password is not displayed. If you are registering a change to an existing ORACLE password, make the password change in the database immediately AFTER you register the password change in Oracle Applications.

Until you register the password changes in Oracle Applications and implement them in the database, responsibilities using this ORACLE username cannot connect to the database.

Warning: If you are changing the password to the *appls* ORACLE username, which contains the Oracle Application Object Library tables), you must *not* change the passwords to any other ORACLE usernames at the same time.

As soon as you change and save the password, you should immediately log out of the Oracle Applications, make the *appls* password change in the database, and then sign on again before you do anything else. You should also ensure that no other users are logged on to the Oracle Applications while you are changing the *appls* password.

Privilege

Enter the type of privilege to the Oracle Application Object Library database tables that you want this ORACLE username to have. The Oracle Application Object Library tables contain information for Oracle Application Object Library features such as menus, help text, and flexfields. If you do not have access to these tables, you cannot use these features.

The default value for this field is Enabled.

- Enabled - An enabled ORACLE username has full privileges (insert, query, update, and delete) to the Oracle Application Object Library database tables.
- Restricted - A restricted ORACLE username has only query privileges to the Oracle Application Object Library database tables. This ORACLE username can view Oracle Application Object Library data, but cannot insert, update, or delete information.
- Disabled - A disabled ORACLE username has no privileges to the Oracle Application Object Library database tables. This ORACLE username cannot insert, query, update, or delete Oracle Application Object Library information and cannot use Oracle Application Object Library features.

Two additional privilege types appear, associated with ORACLE usernames configured at installation. However, these privilege types cannot be selected from your list of values.

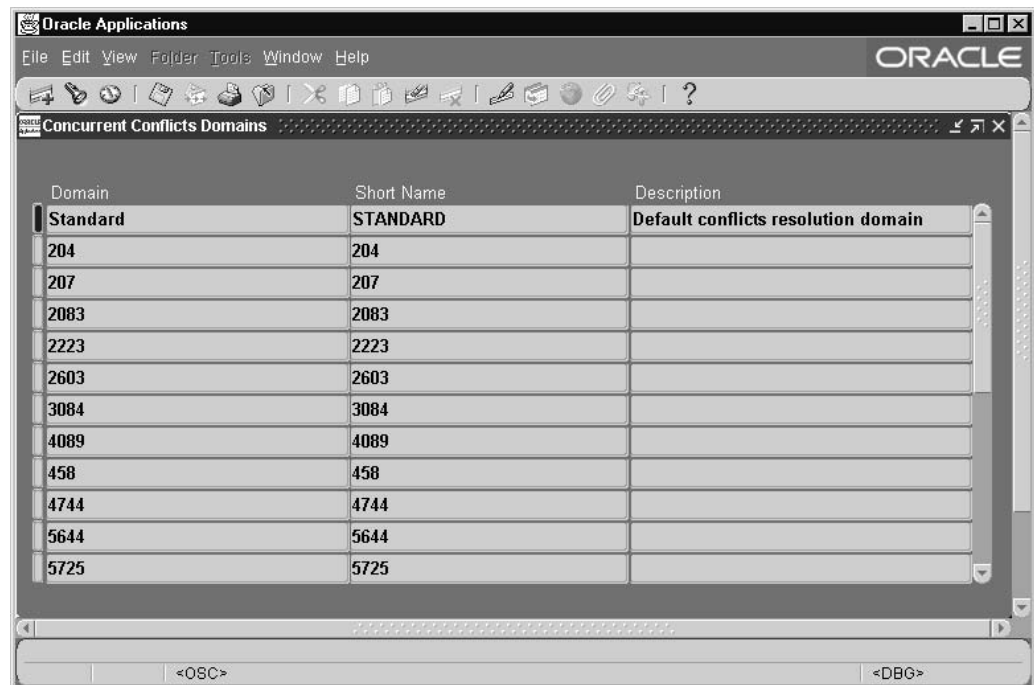
- Public - The installation process registered an ORACLE username with the Public privilege, allowing all users to access the Application Sign-On Security form where they must enter a valid Oracle Applications username and password.
- Appls - The installation process registered the Oracle Application Object Library ORACLE username with the Appls privilege.

Install Group

Enter the value of the installation group associated with your ORACLE username. Install group numbers should be consecutive whole numbers, where 1 represents the first set of books (or first set of product installations), 2 is the second set of books, 3 is the third set of books, and so on. Install group number 0 represents products that need only single installations.

Important: Since the installation process does not affect ORACLE usernames (also known as "schemas") for custom applications, this value is for your reference only and is currently not used.

Concurrent Conflicts Domains Window



Concurrent conflicts domains ensure that incompatible concurrent programs are not allowed to run simultaneously using related information.

For example, a conflict domain could be a range of numbers. Two concurrent programs could be incompatible if they used the same range of numbers, but compatible if they used different ranges of numbers.

Concurrent managers use concurrent conflicts domains to determine which concurrent programs cannot run at the same time. For example:

- When concurrent program A is defined as incompatible with concurrent program B, then A and B cannot run at the same time using the same concurrent conflict domain.
- If, for example, the programs A and B are assigned to the concurrent conflicts domains *Standard* when they are submitted, then programs A and B will not run together at the same time.

To define a conflict domain:

1. Enter a unique Domain name. The name you enter here may be used as a value for a parameter in the Submit Requests window.
2. Enter a unique Short Name for your domain. Limit the Short Name to 8 characters.
3. Optionally, you can provide a description for your domain.

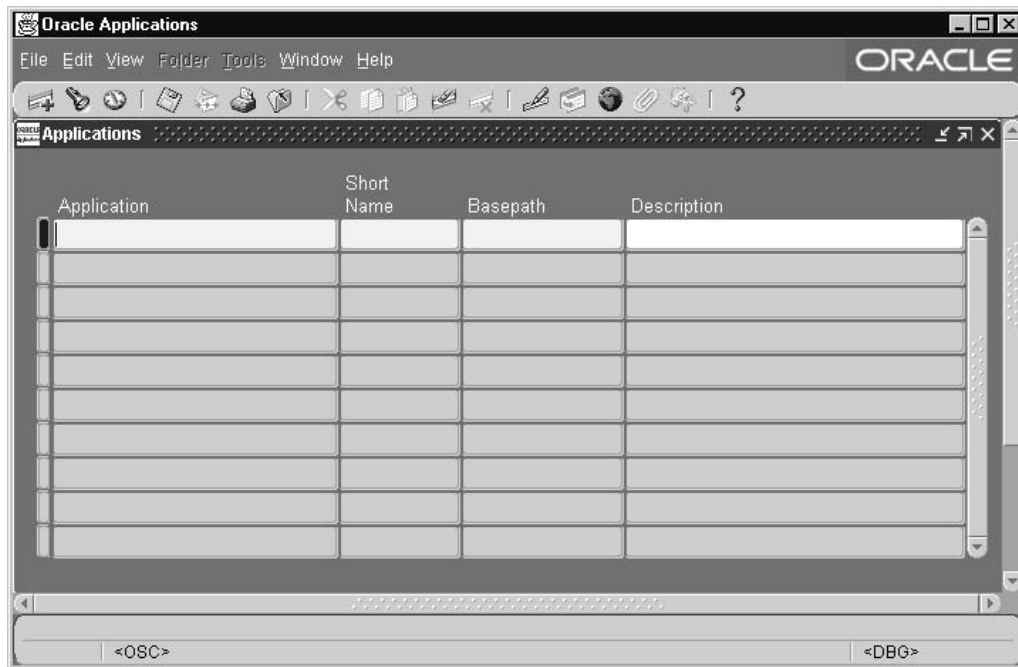
Related Topics

Overview of Applications DBA Duties, page 12-1

ORACLE Usernames (Overview), page 12-1

ORACLE Users, page 12-8

Applications Window



When you define a custom application, you supply several pieces of information to Oracle Applications. You must register your application name, application short name, application basepath, and application description with Oracle Application Object Library. Oracle Application Object Library uses this information to identify application objects such as responsibilities and forms as belonging to your application. This identification with your custom application allows Oracle Applications to preserve your application objects and customizations during upgrades. The application basepath tells Oracle Application Object Library where to find the files associated with your custom application.

You can use your custom application to name your custom menus, concurrent programs, custom responsibilities, and many other custom components. For some objects, the application part of the name only ensures uniqueness across Oracle Applications. For other components, the application you choose has an effect on the functionality of your custom object.

Prerequisites

- If you are creating a custom application: Define an environment variable that translates to your application's basepath (see *Oracle Applications Concepts* for your operating system).
- If you are creating a custom application: Set up a directory structure for your application (see *Oracle Applications Concepts* for your operating system)
- If you are using this window with Oracle Alert: If your application resides in a database other than the database where Oracle Alert resides, you must create a database link.

Applications Block

When you register a custom application, you provide the information Oracle uses to identify it whenever you reference it. Although you can change the name of an application, doing so may cause a change in the application code where you hardcode your application name. For example, if you pass program arguments through the menu that have application name hardcoded, you will also have to update them.

Important: You should not change the name of any application that you did not develop, as you cannot be sure of the consequences. You should never change the name of any Oracle Applications application, because these applications may contain hardcoded references to the application name.

Application

This user-friendly name appears in lists seen by application users.

Short Name

Oracle Applications use the application short name when identifying forms, menus, concurrent programs and other application components. The short name is stored in hidden fields while the name displays for users.

Your short name should not include spaces. You use an application short name when you request a concurrent process from a form, and when you invoke a subroutine from a menu.

Tip: Although your short name can be up to 50 characters, we recommend that you use only four or five characters for ease in maintaining your application and in calling routines that use your short name. To reduce the risk that your custom application short name could conflict with a future Oracle Applications short name, we recommend that your custom application short name begins with "XX".

Basepath

Enter the name of an environment variable that represents the top directory of your application's directory tree. Oracle Applications search specific directories beneath the basepath for your application's executable files and scripts when defining actions that reside in external files.

In general, your application's basepath should be unique so that separate applications do not write to the same directories.

However, you may define custom applications that will be used only for naming your custom responsibilities, menus and other data components. In this case, you can use the basepath of the Oracle application that uses the same forms as your application. For example, if you are defining a Custom_GL application, you could use the GL_TOP basepath for your custom application. In this case, however, you should not create custom components in the directory structure, such as custom forms and reports, because they will be difficult to isolate for maintenance and upgrading.

See: *Oracle Applications Concepts*

Network Test Window

Oracle Applications

File Edit View Folder Tools Window Help

ORACLE

Network Test

Latency

Trials

Iterations

Bandwidth

Trials

Iterations

Notes

Clear Old Test Data Run Test

Results

Test Date ☐ Batch

Latency Results

Round Trip Time (milliseconds)

Sample Data

Trial	Test	LAN	WAN

Bandwidth Results

Data Rate (kbits per second)

Sample Data

Trial	Test	LAN	WAN

LAN = Client at HQ (Redwood Shores) and Server at HQ on LAN.
WAN = Client at HQ and server in Orlando (T1 line).

<OSC> <DBG>

Use the Network Test window to evaluate the performance of your network with Oracle Applications. Knowing the latency and bandwidth available lets you plan and modify your machine setup for the best performance.

The Network Test consists of a latency test and a bandwidth test. Latency is the time it takes for a single packet to make a round trip from your client side application to the server. The bandwidth test examines the data rate to see how many bytes per second your network can transfer from the server to the client.

You can provide notes to indicate the conditions for each test you run.

- To test latency on a network

Specify the number of Trials and the Iterations for each trial.

For each iteration, a single packet is sent from the client application to the server and back. A trial consists of the specified number of iterations. The total time for all round trips in a trial is divided by the number of iterations to obtain the average latency that is that trial's result.

The default settings are 5 trials of 100 iterations each.

Select the Run Test button to perform the test.

- To test bandwidth on a network:

Specify the number of Trials and the Iterations for each trial. For each iteration, several kilobytes of data are sent from the client to the server and back. The form measures the average rate at which the data travels.

The default settings are 5 trials of 10 iterations each.

Select the Run Test button to perform the test.

Evaluating the Test Results

The results of both the latency and bandwidth tests display in the Results block.

Latency Results display the minimum, average, and maximum round trip time for a single round trip from a PC client to the server.

Bandwidth Results display the minimum, average, and maximum data rate in kilobytes per second over the trials.

For comparison, the sample data fields show the results of tests completed at the development headquarters in Redwood Shores. These tests were conducted under ideal conditions; it is unlikely that your results can match them.

If one test result varies significantly from the other trials, discard that information.

Use the Clear Old Test Data button to purge previous test results from your database.

Administering Folders

The screenshot shows the 'Find Folders' dialog box within the Oracle Applications environment. The dialog has a title bar 'Oracle Applications' and a menu bar with 'File', 'Edit', 'View', 'Folder', 'Tools', 'Window', and 'Help'. Below the menu bar is a toolbar with various icons. The main area of the dialog is titled 'Find Folders' and contains three radio buttons for selection: 'Default folder assignments by responsibility' (which is selected), 'Default folder assignments by user', and 'Folders'. Below the 'Default folder assignments by responsibility' option is a text field labeled 'Responsibility'. Below the 'Default folder assignments by user' option is a text field labeled 'User Name'. Below the 'Folders' option are three text fields labeled 'Folder Set', 'Folder', and 'Owner'. At the bottom right of the dialog are two buttons: 'Clear' and 'Find'. The dialog also features a status bar at the bottom with a '<OSC>' button.

Administer folders by assigning default folder definitions either to a specific user or to a responsibility. Manage folder definitions by assigning them to new owners, determining

which folder definitions should be public (accessible by anyone), and setting the AutoQuery behavior of the folders.

You can do different tasks depending on how you search for folders or folder assignments in the Find Default Folders window.

You must have default folders before you perform these steps.

To Assign a Folder to a Responsibility:

Follow these steps to assign a folder to a responsibility:

1. Navigate to the Find Default Folders window. Use "Default folder assignments by responsibility" to view the responsibilities for which to assign default folders.
2. You can assign default folders for each responsibility. When users of this responsibility navigate to this folder block, they see the default folder you specify, unless it is overridden by a user-level default.

From the Folder field, enter the name of the default folder. The name of the folder set to which the folder belongs is filled in automatically.

If you do not know the name of the folder, enter the folder set first, then view the folders that belong to that set.

After you save a default folder definition for a folder set, that folder set no longer appears in the list of values.

Folder Set: Every folder set is associated with a particular folder block, and a user or responsibility can have one default folder within each folder set. The folder set name generally describes the records shown in the block; some blocks may have multiple sets of folders associated with them.

To Assign a Folder to a User:

Follow these steps to assign a folder to a user:

1. Navigate to the Find Default Folders window. Use "Default folder assignments by user" to view a list of eligible users.
2. You can assign default folders for each responsibility. When users navigate to this folder block, they see the default folder you specify.

From the Folder field, enter the name of the default folder. The name of the folder set to which the folder belongs is filled in automatically.

If you do not know the name of the folder, enter the folder set first, then view the folders that belong to that set.

After you save a default folder definition for a folder set, that folder set no longer appears in the list of values.

Folder Set: Every folder set is associated with a particular folder block, and a user or responsibility can have one default folder within each folder set. The folder set name generally describes the records shown in the block; some blocks may have multiple sets of folders associated with them.

Source Type: Either User or Responsibility. Records entered in this window use the source type of User. If one of the current user's responsibilities has default folders defined, the default folders are listed with a source type of Responsibility.

User defaults override Responsibility defaults. You cannot delete Responsibility default folders in this window.

Responsibility: The responsibility which uses this default folder definition.

To Assign Ownership of a Folder:

Follow these steps to assign ownership of a folder:

1. Navigate to the Find Default Folders window. Use "Folders" to view general information about folders.
2. Select the folder(s) that requires a change of ownership.
3. Choose "Change Owner" and enter the new owner for the selected folders, or change the value in the Owner field to change the owner of a single folder.

Folder Set: Every folder set is associated with a particular folder block, and a user or responsibility can have one default folder within each folder set. The folder set name generally describes the records shown in the block; some blocks may have multiple sets of folders associated with them.

Public: Whether this folder definition is public; whether users besides the owner can use it. Use this field to determine whether to make folder definitions generally available.

Anyone's Default: Whether this folder definition is used as a default by a user or a responsibility. If it is a default definition, use Default Assignments to view the users and responsibilities for which it is the default folder definition.

Default Assignments: The users and responsibilities that use this folder definition as a default.

To Delete a Folder Definition

Follow these steps to delete a folder definition:

1. Navigate to the Find Default Folders window. Use "Folders" to view general information about folders.
2. If you queried up multiple folders, select the folder(s) to delete.
3. Delete the folder. Deleting folders deletes the folder definition along with any user and responsibility default assignments for the folder.

Cost-Based Optimization in Oracle Applications

Oracle Applications and Cost-Based Optimization

Oracle Applications Release 11i uses the cost-based optimizer (CBO) in order to choose the most efficient execution plan for SQL statements. Using this approach, the optimizer determines the most optimal execution plan by costing available access paths and factoring information based on statistics for the schema objects accessed by the SQL statement.

Oracle Applications requires several database initialization parameters to be set correctly in order to ensure optimal performance. Please refer to *OracleMetalink* note 216205.1, and ensure that you have configured the parameters according to this note.

For the CBO to produce an optimal execution plan, the statistics in the data dictionary should accurately reflect the volume and data distribution of the tables and indexes. To this end, database statistics should be refreshed periodically. However, that does not imply that one should gather statistics frequently. Systems that are close to going live typically experience inserts of a large amount of data as data from legacy systems is migrated. In that scenario, the statistics would probably need to be refreshed quite frequently (for instance, after each major load), as large loads could change the data distribution significantly. Once the system reaches steady state, the frequency of statistics collection at the schema/database level should be reduced to something like once a month. However, statistics on some volatile tables can be gathered as frequently as required.

Oracle Applications provides a set of procedures in the FND_STATS package to facilitate collection of these statistics. FND_STATS uses the DBMS_STATS package to gather statistics.

As of 11.5.10, FND_STATS.GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS introduced a new parameter called OPTIONS that, if set to GATHER AUTO, allows FND_STATS to automatically determine the tables for which statistics should be gathered based on the change threshold. The Modifications Threshold can be adjusted by the user by passing a value for modpercent, which by default is equal to 10. GATHER AUTO uses a database feature called Table Monitoring, which needs to be enabled for all the tables. A procedure called ENABLE_SCHEMA_MONITORING has been provided to enable monitoring on all tables for a given schema or all Applications schemas.

Gathering Statistics for the CBO

Oracle Applications provides concurrent programs that use the package FND_STATS to gather statistics for your applications database objects. For information on DBMS_STATS, see Oracle Supplied PL/SQL Packages Manual.

The following concurrent programs are available for collecting and maintaining statistics:

- Gather Table Statistics
- Backup Table Statistics
- Restore Table Statistics
- Gather Schema Statistics
- Purge FND_STATS History Records

Gather Table Statistics

The Gather Table Statistics program gathers the table statistics for the specified table. This program can optionally backup the existing statistics in the FND_STATTAB table before gathering new statistics. If the value of backup_flag is BACKUP, then FND_STATS exports the old statistics using dbms_stats.export_table_stats before gathering the new statistics. The exported data is stored in FND_STATTAB. If the value of backup_flag is anything other than BACKUP then the old table statistics are not saved. This program also gathers index statistics for the table by default. For a detailed description of the procedure used by this concurrent program, see: GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure.

Parameters

Owner Name	The owner of the table.
Table Name	The name of the table.
Estimate Percent	The sampling percentage. If left blank, a default value of 10 is used. The valid range is from 0 to 100.
Degree	The degree of parallelism to be used for gathering statistics. If a Degree is not provided, it defaults to the minimum of parallel_max_servers and cpu_count.
Partition Name	The name of the partition.
Backup Flag	The backup flag indicates whether to backup statistics. Set this flag to "BACKUP" to back up your statistics.
Granularity	The granularity of statistics to collect (only relevant for tables that are partitioned). Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• DEFAULT - Gather global and partition-level statistics.• SUBPARTITION - Gather subpartition-level statistics.• PARTITION - Gather partition-level statistics.• GLOBAL - Gather global statistics.• ALL - Gather all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics.
History Mode	This parameter controls the amount of history records that are created. Valid modes are LASTRUN, FULL

and NONE. The default is LASTRUN. For an explanation of the different modes, please refer to the GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure

**Invalidate Dependent
Cursors**

This flag indicates whether cursors dependent on the table being analyzed should be invalidated or not. This parameter is ignored if you are running a database prior to Oracle 9i Release 2 (9.2.x).

Backup Table Statistics

This concurrent program backs up the current statistics of the given table into the FND_STATTAB table. This program also backs up the related index and column statistics by default.

An identifier, commonly referred to as STATID, can be associated with the backup up statistics. This STATID allows you to restore a particular version of the statistics using the Restore Table Statistics concurrent program. Statistics for the same object can be backed up with different STATIDs. You can even backup different versions of the statistics for the same object by assigning different STATIDs.

For a detailed description of the procedure used by this concurrent program, see: BACKUP_TABLE_STATS Procedure.

Parameters

Schema Name	The name of the schema. The value ALL means all Oracle Applications schemas.
Table Name	The name of the table.
Statistics ID	An optional identifier to associate with these statistics within FND_STATTAB. The default STATID is BACKUP.
Partition Name	Name of the table partition. If the table is partitioned and if the partition name is NULL, then global and partition table statistics are exported.

Restore Table Statistics

This concurrent program allows you to restore the previously backed up table statistics for a given statistics identifier, commonly referred to as the STATID.

All index and column statistics associated with the specified table are restored as well.

For a detailed description of the procedure used by this concurrent program, see: RESTORE_TABLE_STATS Procedure

Parameters

Schema Name	The name of the schema. The value ALL means all Oracle Applications schemas.
Table Name	The name of the table.
Statistics ID	An optional identifier to associate with these statistics within FND_STATTAB. The default STATID is BACKUP.

Partition Name	Name of the table partition. If the table is partitioned and if the partition name is NULL, then global and partition table statistics are imported.
-----------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Gather Schema Statistics

This concurrent program gathers the specified schema level statistics.

Before gathering the statistics, this program can also create a backup of the current statistics, depending on the value of the Backup Flag. If for some reason, the earlier statistics need to be restored, that can be done using the Restore Schema Statistics concurrent program. The STATID used for this backup is NULL.

This program also creates histograms on the columns seeded in the FND_HISTOGRAM_COLS table.

For a detailed description of the procedure used by this concurrent program, see information on the GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS procedure.

Parameters

Schema Name	Schema for which statistics are to be gathered. Specify ALL for all Oracle Applications schemas (all schemas that have an entry in the FND_PRODUCT_INSTALLATIONS table).
Percent	The sampling percentage. If left blank, the default value of 10 is used. The valid range is from 0 to 100.
Degree	The degree of parallelism to be used for gathering statistics. If a Degree is not provided, it defaults to the minimum of parallel_max_servers and cpu_count.
Backup Flag	The backup flag indicates whether to backup statistics. Set this flag to BACKUP if you wish to back up the current statistics into the FND_STATTAB table. If NOBACKUP is used, then the GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS procedure will not backup the current statistics. This way the GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS procedure will run faster.
Restart Request ID	In the case where the Gather Schema Statistics run fails due to whatever reasons, the concurrent request can be re-submitted and it will pick up where the failed run left off, if you provide the concurrent request_id of the failed run.
History Mode	<p>This parameter controls the amount of history records that are created. The history records, stored in FND_STATS_HIST can be queried to find out when stats were gathered on a particular object and the amount of time it took to gather statistics on that object.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Last Run - History records for each object are maintained only for the last gather statistics run. Each subsequent run will overwrite the previous history record for the object. This is the default behavior. • Full - This mode does not overwrite any history information. History records are created for each run and are identified by the Request ID. If a Request ID is

not provided, one is generated automatically. If this mode is used, the “Purge FND_STATS History Records” concurrent program should be run periodically to purge the FND_STATS_HIST table.

- None - This mode does not generate any history information. If this mode is used, the run cannot be restarted.

Gather Options

This parameter specifies how objects are selected for statistics gathering.

- GATHER : All tables and indexes of the schema **schemaname** are selected for stats gathering. This is the default.
- GATHER AUTO : Tables of the schema **schemaname** for which the percentage of modifications has exceeded **modpercent** are selected for statistics gathering. Indexes of these tables are selected by default. Table monitoring needs to be enabled before using this option.
- GATHER EMPTY : Statistics are gathered only for tables and indexes that are missing statistics.
- LIST AUTO : This option does not gather statistics. It only provides a listing of all the tables that will be selected for statistic gathering, if the GATHER AUTO option is used.
- LIST EMPTY : This option does not gather statistics. It only provides a listing of all the tables that will be selected for statistics gathering, if the GATHER EMPTY option is used.

Modifications Threshold

Applicable only to GATHER AUTO and LIST AUTO options. This parameter specifies the percentage of modifications (with respect to the total rows) that have to take place on a table before it can be picked up for AUTO statistics gathering.

Invalidate Dependent Cursors

This flag indicates whether cursors dependent on the table being analyzed should be invalidated or not. By default, dependent cursors are invalidated. This parameter is ignored if you are running a database prior to Oracle 9i Release 2 (9.2.x).

Gather Column Statistics

This concurrent program should be used for gathering the Column Statistics, i.e. creating a histogram on a given column.

The procedure takes a backup into the FND_STATTAB table before gathering the statistics.

For a detailed description of the procedure used by this concurrent program, see: GATHER_COLUMN_STATS Procedure

Parameters

Table Owner	The owner of the table.
Table Name	The name of the table.
Column Name	The name of the column.
Estimate Percent	The sampling percentage. If left blank, a default value of 10 is used. The valid range is from 0 to 100.
Parallel Degree	The degree of parallelism to be used for gathering statistics. If a Degree is not provided, it defaults to the minimum of parallel_max_servers and cpu_count.
Bucket Size	The number histogram buckets.
Backup Flag	The backup flag indicates whether to backup statistics. Set this flag to BACKUP if you wish to back up the current column statistics into the FND_STATTAB table. If left blank, it defaults to NOBACKUP.

Gather All Column Statistics

This concurrent program is obsolete.

Purge FND_STATS History Records

This program can be run to purge the history records from the FND_STATS_HIST table. This program should be scheduled to run periodically if statistics are being gathered with History Mode as FULL. You do not need to run this program if you gather statistics with History Mode as NONE or the default – LASTRUN.

Parameters

Purge Mode	The Purge Mode can take one of the two values: DATE or REQUEST. If the mode chosen is DATE, history records are purged based on the date range, otherwise, if it is REQUEST, records are purged based on the Request ID.
From Value	Start Date or Request ID
To Value	End Date or Request ID.

FND_STATS Package

The FND_STATS package provides procedures for gathering statistics for Oracle Applications database objects. It also provides procedures for backing up the current statistics into the table - FND_STATTAB, and restoring them back if desired. This package also allows users to specify the degree of parallelism. That helps speed up statistics gathering for large objects. FND_STATS can also maintain a history of its actions in a table called FND_STATS_HIST. The data in this table is used to provide restart ability, and can also be queried to find out the time taken to gather statistics on each object.

FND_STATS relies on the Oracle-supplied package DBMS_STATS to perform the actual statistics gathering. For more information on DBMS_STATS, refer to the Oracle database Tuning and Supplied Packages Reference manuals.

CREATE_STAT_TABLE Procedure

This procedure creates the table that is required for backing up the statistics.

There are two versions of this procedure. The first one does not need any arguments and creates the table with the default name - FND_STATTAB in the schema corresponding to the FND product. The second version allows you to provide the schema name, table name and the tablespace for the statistics table.

Syntax

```
FND_STATS.CREATE_STAT_TABLE ;
```

```
FND_STATS.CREATE_STAT_TABLE (  
    schemaname IN VARCHAR2,  
    tabname    IN VARCHAR2,  
    tblspcname IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

schemaname	Name of the schema.
tabname	Name of the table.
tblspcname	Tablespace in which to create the statistics tables. If none is specified, then the tables are created in the user's default tablespace.

BACKUP_TABLE_STATS

This procedure backs up the statistics for the given table in the FND_STATTAB table. Setting cascade to TRUE results in all index and column statistics associated with the specified table to be stored as well. An identifier, commonly referred to as STATID, can be associated with the backup up statistics. This STATID allows you to restore a particular version of the statistics using the RESTORE_TABLE_STATS procedure.

Syntax

```
FND_STATS.BACKUP_TABLE_STATS (  
    schemaname VARCHAR2,  
    tabname    VARCHAR2,  
    statid     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'BACKUP',  
    partname   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,  
    cascade    BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

schemaname	Name of the schema.
tabname	Name of the table.
statid	Optional identifier to associate with these statistics within FND_STATTAB.
partname	Name of the table partition. If the table is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then global and partition table statistics are exported.

cascade	If TRUE, then column and index statistics for this table are also exported.
----------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------

BACKUP_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure

This procedure can be used to backup the statistics for an entire schema. The statistics are backed up into the FND_STATTAB table. A different version can be stored by specifying a different statid. An identifier, commonly referred to as STATID, can be associated with the backup up statistics. This STATID allows you to restore a particular version of the statistics using the RESTORE_SCHEMA_STATS procedure.

Syntax

```
FND_STATS.BACKUP_TABLE_STATS (
    schemaname  VARCHAR2,
    statid      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

schemaname	Name of the schema. ALL means all Oracle Applications schemas.
statid	Optional identifier to associate with these statistics within FND_STATTAB.

RESTORE_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure

This procedure restores statistics for the given schema, that were previously backed up in the FND_STATTAB table, into the dictionary. Statid can be provided to distinguish between different sets of statistics for the same object.

Syntax

```
FND_STATS.RESTORE_SCHEMA_STATS (
    schemaname  VARCHAR2,
    statid      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL
);
```

Parameters

schemaname	Name of the schema. ALL means all Oracle Applications schemas.
statid	Optional identifier to associate with these statistics within FND_STATTAB.

RESTORE_TABLE_STATS Procedure

This procedure restores statistics for the given table from the FND_STATTAB table for the given statid (optional) and transfers them back to the dictionary. Setting cascade to TRUE results in all index and column statistics associated with the specified table being imported also.

Syntax

```
FND_STATS.RESTORE_TABLE_STATS (  
    ownname  VARCHAR2,  
    tabname  VARCHAR2,  
    statid   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,  
    partname VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,  
    cascade  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,  
);
```

Parameters

ownname	Name of the schema.
tabname	Name of the table.
statid	Optional identifier to associate with these statistics within FND_STATTAB.
partname	Name of the table partition. If the table is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then global and partition table statistics are exported.
cascade	If TRUE, then column and index statistics for this table are also exported.

RESTORE_COLUMN_STATS Procedure

This procedure restores statistics for the given column from the FND_STATTAB table for the given statid (optional) and transfers them back to the dictionary. There are two versions of this procedure. One first one requires the table owner, table name and column name to be supplied. The second version restores the statistics for all the columns seeded in the FND_HISTOGRAM_COLS table.

Syntax

```
FND_STATS.RESTORE_COLUMN_STATS (  
    ownname  VARCHAR2,  
    tabname  VARCHAR2,  
    colname  VARCHAR2,  
    partname VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,  
    statid   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL  
);  
  
FND_STATS.RESTORE_COLUMN_STATS (  
    statid   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL  
);
```

Parameters

ownname	Name of the schema.
tabname	Name of the table.
colname	Name of the column. Optional identifier to associate with these statistics within FND_STATTAB.

partname	Name of the table partition. If the table is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then global and partition table statistics are exported.
statid	Optional identifier to associate with these statistics within FND_STATTAB.

ENABLE_SCHEMA_MONITORING Procedure

This procedure should be used for enabling the Monitoring option for all tables in the specified schema. Monitoring option should be enabled before using the GATHER AUTO or LIST AUTO option of GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS. If the value of the schemaname argument is ALL, then the Monitoring option is enabled for all tables that belong to all schemas registered in Oracle Applications

Syntax

```
FND_STATS.ENABLE_SCHEMA_MONITORING (  

      schemaname  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ALL' );
```

Parameters

schemaname	Name of the schema for which Monitoring should be enabled.
-------------------	------------------------------------------------------------

DISABLE_SCHEMA_MONITORING Procedure

This procedure should be used for disabling the Monitoring option for all tables in the specified schema. If the value of the schemaname argument is ALL, then the Monitoring option is disabled for all tables that belong to all schemas registered in Oracle Applications.

Syntax

```
FND_STATS.DISABLE_SCHEMA_MONITORING (  

      schemaname  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ALL' );
```

Parameters

schemaname	Name of the schema for which Monitoring should be disabled.
-------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------

GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure

This procedure gathers statistics for all objects in a schema. Statistics are gathered with the granularity of DEFAULT. This procedure is also available through the concurrent program "Gather Schema Statistics." If this procedure fails at any time during operation, supplying the request ID for the request that failed can restart it. The request ID can be captured when the program is started from concurrent manager or can be queried from the FND_STATS_HIST table.

GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS cannot be executed directly in sqlplus because of an OUT parameter. The procedure GATHER_SCHEMA_STATISTICS has been provided for gathering schema statistics from the sqlplus prompt.

Syntax

```
FND_STATS.GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS (
    schemaname      VARCHAR2,
    estimate_percent NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
    degree          NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
    internal_flag    NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
    Errors          OUT Error_Out,
    request_id       NUMBER default null,
    hmode           VARCHAR2 default 'LASTRUN',
    options in       VARCHAR2 default 'GATHER',
    modpercent       NUMBER default 10,
    invalidate       VARCHAR2 default 'Y'
);

FND_STATS.GATHER_SCHEMA_STATISTICS (
    schemaname      VARCHAR2,
    estimate_percent NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
    degree          NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
    internal_flag    NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
    request_id       NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
    hmode           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'LASTRUN',
    options in       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'GATHER',
    modpercent       NUMBER DEFAULT 10,
    invalidate       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'Y'
);
```

Parameters

schemaname	Schema to analyze. ALL means all Oracle Applications schemas.
estimate_percent	The sampling percentage. If a value is not provided, the default value of 10 is used. The valid range is from 0 to 100.
degree	The degree of parallelism to be used for gathering statistics. If a degree is not provided, it defaults to the minimum of parallel_max_servers and cpu_count.
internal_flag	The backup flag indicates whether to backup statistics. Set this flag to BACKUP if you wish to back up the current statistics into the FND_STATTAB table. If NOBACKUP is used, then the GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS procedure will not backup the current statistics. This way the GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS procedure will run faster.
errors	User defined Type for holding the Error messages .
Request_id	A request_id can be provided to identify the history records for a given statistics gathering run. This parameter is also used for providing restart ability. In case, a statistics gathering run fails due to whatever reasons, subsequent submission can pick up where the failed run left off, if you provide the request_id of the failed run.
Hmode	This parameter controls the amount of history records that are created. The history records, stored in FND_STATS_HIST can be queried to find out when statistics

were gathered on a particular object and the amount of time it took to gather statistics on that object.

LASTRUN History records for each schema are maintained only for the last gather statistics run. Each subsequent run will overwrite the previous history record for the index. This is the default behavior.

FULL This mode does not overwrite any history information. History records are created for each run and are identified by the Request ID. If a Request ID is not provided, one is generated automatically. If this mode is used, the "Purge FND_STATS History Records" concurrent program should be run periodically to purge the FND_STATS_HIST table.

NONE This mode does not generate any history information. If this mode is used, the run cannot be restarted

Options

This parameter specifies how objects are selected for statistics gathering.

GATHER All tables and indexes of the schema <schemaname> are selected for stats gathering. This is the default.

GATHER AUTO Tables of the schema schemaname for which the percentage of modifications has exceeded modpercent are selected for statistics gathering. Indexes of these tables are selected by default. Table monitoring needs to be enabled before using this option.

GATHER EMPTY Statistics are gathered only for tables and indexes that are missing statistics.

LIST AUTO This option does not gather statistics. It only provides a listing of all the tables that will be selected for statistic

	gathering, if the GATHER AUTO option is used.
LIST EMPTY	This option does not gather statistics. It only provides a listing of all the tables that will be selected for statistics gathering, if the GATHER EMPTY option is used.
Modpercent	Applicable only to GATHER AUTO and LIST AUTO options. This parameter specifies the percentage of modifications (with respect to the total rows) that have to take place on a table before it can be picked up for AUTO statistics gathering.
Invalidate	This flag indicates whether cursors dependent on the table being analyzed should be invalidated. By default, dependent cursors are invalidated. This parameter is ignored if you are running a database prior to Oracle 9i Release 2 (9.2.x).

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Schema does not exist or insufficient privileges.
ORA-20001: Bad input value.

GATHER_INDEX_STATS Procedure

This procedure gathers statistics for the specified index.

Syntax

```

FND_STATS.GATHER_INDEX_STATS (
    ownname    VARCHAR2,
    indname     VARCHAR2,
    percent     NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
    partname    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    backup_flag VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    hmode       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'LASTRUN',
    invalidate  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'Y'
);

```

Parameters

ownname	Schema of index to analyze.
indname	Name of index.
percent	The sampling percentage. If left blank, the default value of 10 is used. The valid range is from 0 to 100.
partname	Partition name.
backup_flag	The backup flag indicates whether to backup statistics. Set this flag to BACKUP if you wish to back up the current

column statistics into the FND_STATTAB table. If left blank, it defaults to NOBACKUP.

Hmode

This parameter controls the amount of history records that are created. The history records, stored in FND_STATS_HIST can be queried to find out when stats were gathered on the index and the

LASTRUN

History records for each index are maintained only for the last gather statistics run. Each subsequent run will overwrite the previous history record for the index. This is the default behavior.

FULL

This mode does not overwrite any history information. History records are created for each run and are identified by the Request ID. If a Request ID is not provided, one is generated automatically. If this mode is used, the "Purge FND_STATS History Records" concurrent program should be run periodically to purge the FND_STATS_HIST table.

NONE

This mode does not generate any history information. If this mode is used, the run cannot be restarted.

Invalidate

This flag indicates whether cursors dependent on the index being analyzed should be invalidated. By default, dependent cursors are invalidated. This parameter is ignored if you are running a database prior to Oracle 9i Release 2 (9.2.x).

GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure

This procedure gathers table, column and index statistics. It attempts to parallelize as much of the work as possible. This operation does not parallelize if the user does not have select privilege on the table being analyzed.

Syntax

```
FND_STATS.GATHER_TABLE_STATS (  
    ownname    VARCHAR2,  
    tabname    VARCHAR2,  
    percent    NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,  
    degree     NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,  
    partname   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,  
    backup_flag VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,  
    cascade    BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,  
    granularity VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'DEFAULT',  
    hmode      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'LASTRUN',  
    invalidate VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'Y'  
);
```

Parameters

ownname	Owner of the table.										
tabname	Name of the table.										
percent	The sampling percentage. If left blank, the default value of 10 is used. The valid range is from 0 to 100.										
degree	The degree of parallelism to be used for gathering statistics. If a degree is not provided, it defaults to the minimum of parallel_max_servers and cpu_count.										
partname	Name of the partition.										
backup_flag	The backup flag indicates whether to backup statistics. Set this flag to BACKUP if you wish to back up the current table statistics into the FND_STATTAB table. If left blank, it defaults to NOBACKUP.										
cascade	When set to TRUE index statistics are gathered in addition to gathering statistics for the specified table. Index statistics gathering is not parallelized. Using this option is equivalent to running the GATHER_INDEX_STATS procedure on each of the table's indexes										
granularity	The granularity of statistics to collect (only relevant for tables that are partitioned). Valid values are: <table><tr><td>DEFAULT</td><td>Gather global and partition-level statistics.</td></tr><tr><td>SUBPARTITION</td><td>Gather subpartition-level statistics.</td></tr><tr><td>PARTITION</td><td>Gather partition-level statistics.</td></tr><tr><td>GLOBAL</td><td>Gather global statistics.</td></tr><tr><td>ALL</td><td>Gather all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics.</td></tr></table>	DEFAULT	Gather global and partition-level statistics.	SUBPARTITION	Gather subpartition-level statistics.	PARTITION	Gather partition-level statistics.	GLOBAL	Gather global statistics.	ALL	Gather all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics.
DEFAULT	Gather global and partition-level statistics.										
SUBPARTITION	Gather subpartition-level statistics.										
PARTITION	Gather partition-level statistics.										
GLOBAL	Gather global statistics.										
ALL	Gather all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics.										
Hmode	This parameter controls the amount of history records that are created. The history records, stored in										

FND_STATS_HIST can be queried to find out when stats were gathered on the index and the

LASTRUN History records for each index are maintained only for the last gather statistics run. Each subsequent run will overwrite the previous history record for the index. This is the default behavior.

FULL This mode does not overwrite any history information. History records are created for each run and are identified by the Request ID. If a Request ID is not provided, one is generated automatically. If this mode is used, the "Purge FND_STATS History Records" concurrent program should be run periodically to purge the FND_STATS_HIST table.

NONE This mode does not generate any history information. If this mode is used, the run cannot be restarted.

Invalidate This flag indicates whether cursors dependent on the index being analyzed should be invalidated. By default, dependent cursors are invalidated. This parameter is ignored if you are running a database prior to Oracle 9i Release 2 (9.2.x).

Invalidate This flag indicates whether cursors dependent on the index being analyzed should be invalidated. By default, dependent cursors are invalidated. This parameter is ignored if you are running a database prior to Oracle 9i Release 2 (9.2.x).

GATHER_COLUMN_STATS Procedure

This procedure should be used for gathering the Column Statistics, i.e. creating a histogram on a given column.

There are two versions of this procedure. The first one gathers statistics on all columns seeded in the FND_HISTOGRAM_COLS for the given appl_id. If NULL, all seeded histograms are created. The other version gathers column statistics for the specified column.

Syntax

```
FND_STATS.GATHER_COLUMN_STATS (  
    appl_id    NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,  
    percent    NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,  
    degree     NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,  
    backup_flag VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,  
    Errors     OUT Error_Out,  
    hmode      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'LASTRUN',  
    invalidate VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'Y'  
);  
  
FND_STATS.GATHER_COLUMN_STATS (  
    ownname     VARCHAR2,  
    tabname     VARCHAR2,  
    colname     VARCHAR2,  
    percent     NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,  
    degree     NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,  
    hsize       NUMBER DEFAULT 254,  
    backup_flag VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,  
    partname    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,  
    hmode       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'LASTRUN',  
    invalidate  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'Y'  
);
```

Parameters

appl_id	Application ID.
ownname	Owner of the table.
colname	Column name.
tabname	Table name.
partname	Name of the partition.
percent	The sampling percentage. If left blank, the default value of 10 is used. The valid range is from 0 to 100.
degree	The degree of parallelism to be used for gathering statistics. If a degree is not provided, it defaults to the minimum of parallel_max_servers and cpu_count.
hsize	Number of buckets in the histogram.
backup_flag	The backup flag indicates whether to backup statistics. Set this flag to BACKUP if you wish to back up the current column statistics into the FND_STATTAB table. If left blank, it defaults to NOBACKUP.
errors	User defined Type for holding the Error messages.
Hmode	This parameter controls the amount of history records that are created. The history records, stored in FND_STATS_HIST can be queried to find out when stats were gathered on the index and the LASTRUN History records for each index are maintained only for the

last gather statistics run. Each subsequent run will overwrite the previous history record for the index. This is the default behavior.

FULL

This mode does not overwrite any history information. History records are created for each run and are identified by the Request ID. If a Request ID is not provided, one is generated automatically. If this mode is used, the "Purge FND_STATS History Records" concurrent program should be run periodically to purge the FND_STATS_HIST table.

NONE

This mode does not generate any history information. If this mode is used, the run cannot be restarted.

Invalidate

This flag indicates whether cursors dependent on the index being analyzed should be invalidated. By default, dependent cursors are invalidated. This parameter is ignored if you are running a database prior to Oracle 9i Release 2 (9.2.x).

Invalidate

This flag indicates whether cursors dependent on the index being analyzed should be invalidated. By default, dependent cursors are invalidated. This parameter is ignored if you are running a database prior to Oracle 9i Release 2 (9.2.x).

GATHER_ALL_COLUMN_STATS Procedure

This procedure gathers column statistics, i.e. creates histograms on all columns that are seeded in the FND_HISTOGRAM_COLS, belonging to the specified schema .

Syntax

```
FND_STATS.GATHER_ALL_COLUMN_STATS (
    ownname VARCHAR2 ,
    percent NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
    degree NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
    hmode   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'LASTRUN',
    invalidate VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'Y'
```

);

Parameters

ownname	Schema for which seeded histograms have to be created. ALL means all Applications schemas.								
percent	The sampling percentage. If left blank, the default value of 10 is used. The valid range is from 0 to 100.								
degree	The degree of parallelism to be used for gathering statistics. If a degree is not provided, it defaults to the minimum of parallel_max_servers and cpu_count.								
Hmode	<p>This parameter controls the amount of history records that are created. The history records, stored in FND_STATS_HIST can be queried to find out when stats were gathered on the index and the</p> <table><tr><td>LASTRUN</td><td>History records for each index are maintained only for the last gather statistics run. Each subsequent run will overwrite the previous history record for the index. This is the default behavior.</td></tr><tr><td>FULL</td><td>This mode does not overwrite any history information. History records are created for each run and are identified by the Request ID. If a Request ID is not provided, one is generated automatically. If this mode is used, the "Purge FND_STATS History Records" concurrent program should be run periodically to purge the FND_STATS_HIST table.</td></tr><tr><td>NONE</td><td>This mode does not generate any history information. If this mode is used, the run cannot be restarted.</td></tr><tr><td>Invalidate</td><td>This flag indicates whether cursors dependent on the index being analyzed should be invalidated. By default, dependent cursors are invalidated. This parameter is ignored if you are running a database prior to Oracle 9i Release 2 (9.2.x).</td></tr></table>	LASTRUN	History records for each index are maintained only for the last gather statistics run. Each subsequent run will overwrite the previous history record for the index. This is the default behavior.	FULL	This mode does not overwrite any history information. History records are created for each run and are identified by the Request ID. If a Request ID is not provided, one is generated automatically. If this mode is used, the "Purge FND_STATS History Records" concurrent program should be run periodically to purge the FND_STATS_HIST table.	NONE	This mode does not generate any history information. If this mode is used, the run cannot be restarted.	Invalidate	This flag indicates whether cursors dependent on the index being analyzed should be invalidated. By default, dependent cursors are invalidated. This parameter is ignored if you are running a database prior to Oracle 9i Release 2 (9.2.x).
LASTRUN	History records for each index are maintained only for the last gather statistics run. Each subsequent run will overwrite the previous history record for the index. This is the default behavior.								
FULL	This mode does not overwrite any history information. History records are created for each run and are identified by the Request ID. If a Request ID is not provided, one is generated automatically. If this mode is used, the "Purge FND_STATS History Records" concurrent program should be run periodically to purge the FND_STATS_HIST table.								
NONE	This mode does not generate any history information. If this mode is used, the run cannot be restarted.								
Invalidate	This flag indicates whether cursors dependent on the index being analyzed should be invalidated. By default, dependent cursors are invalidated. This parameter is ignored if you are running a database prior to Oracle 9i Release 2 (9.2.x).								

Invalidate

This flag indicates whether cursors dependent on the index being analyzed should be invalidated. By default, dependent cursors are invalidated. This parameter is ignored if you are running a database prior to Oracle 9i Release 2 (9.2.x).

ANALYZE_ALL_COLUMNS Procedure

This procedure has been made obsolete.

LOAD_XCLUD_STATS Procedure

This procedure has been made obsolete.

PURGE_STAT_HISTORY Procedure

This procedure should be used for purging the unwanted history records from the `fnl_stats_hist` table. There are two versions of this procedure. The first one takes in a range of request ids and deletes all history records that fall within that range. The second version takes a range of dates as arguments and all the history records falling in-between that range are deleted. The delete takes place as an autonomous transaction.

Syntax

```
FND_STATS.PURGE_STAT_HIST (
    From_req_id  NUMBER,
    To_req_id    NUMBER);

FND_STATS. PURGE_STAT_HIST(
    Purge_from_date  VARCHAR2,
    Purge_to_date    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

from_req_id	Start Request ID.
to_req_id	End Request ID.
purge_from_date	Start Purge Date.
purge_to_date	End Purge Date.

CHECK_HISTOGRAM_COLS Procedure

For a given list of comma-separated tables, this procedure checks the data in all the leading columns of all the non-unique indexes of those tables and determines if histograms need to be created for those columns. The algorithm for this procedure is:

```
select
decode(floor(sum(tot)/(max(cnt)*FACTOR)),0,'YES','NO') HIST
from (select count(col) cnt , count(*) tot
from tab sample (PERCENT)
where col is not null
group by col);
```


The decode statement determines whether a single value occupies 1/FACTOR or more of the sample PERCENT.

If sum(cnt) is very small (a small non-null sample), the results may be inaccurate. A count(*) of at least 3000 is recommended. The procedure is run from a SQL prompt after setting the server output on.

Syntax

```
FND_STATS.CHECK_HISTOGRAM_COLS (  
  tablelist VARCHAR2,  
  factor    NUMBER DEFAULT 75,  
  percent   NUMBER DEFAULT 10,  
  degree    NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

tablelist	A comma separated list of tables. It should be of the form schema.tablename. A wildcard in the tablename is also allowed. For example, tablelist=>'oe.so%head% , pa.pa_exp% , ar.ra_customers'. The owner part is mandatory.
factor	The factor for calculating the histograms.
percent	Sample percent.
degree	Degree of parallelization.

VERIFY_STATS Procedure

For a given list of comma-separated tables, or for a given schema name, this procedure reports the statistics in the data dictionary tables for the tables, indexes, and histograms.

Syntax

```
FND_STATS.VERIFY_STATS (  
  schemaname VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,  
  tablelist   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,  
  days_old    NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,  
  column_stat BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

schemaname	The name of a schema. If schemaname is NULL (which is the default), then the procedure reports on the given list of tables.
tablelist	A comma-separated list of tables. If the tablename is not of the form <schema>.<tablename> then the schema is the value of the schemaname parameter. If the tablelist is NULL (the default), then the procedure reports on all the tables for the specified schemaname.
days_old	The procedure only reports those tables whose statistics are older than the days_old number of days. The default

column_stat

is NULL, which means the procedure will report on all the tables.

If TRUE, the procedure reports column statistics for the export_table_stats table. The default is FALSE.

Oracle Applications and Real Application Clusters

Migrating an Oracle Applications Single Instance to Real Application Clusters (RAC)

Introduction

This section describes the steps required to install Oracle Applications in an environment which uses Real Application Clusters (RAC). There are essentially two cases when using RAC with Oracle Applications: the fresh install case, or the case whereby Oracle Applications is already deployed using a single database instance. The steps to migrate to RAC are essentially the same for both cases. There are two sets of steps: prerequisite steps which are required before the migration commences, and the migration steps.

Prerequisites

The following steps should be performed prior to the migration of the database to RAC. The prerequisite steps can be performed at any time prior to the migration to RAC. Both the prerequisite steps and the RAC migration steps require downtime, hence you should plan accordingly.

Step 1: Complete the Rapid Install of Oracle Applications

If you already have an existing Oracle Applications runtime environment, you can skip this step. You should complete the Rapid Install and use the standard single database instance installation mode. You should also ensure that the Application modules including Forms and Self-Service are functional. In addition, you should ensure that the Concurrent Managers are active and functional.

Step 2: Configure the Shared Disk Volumes

RAC requires shared disk volumes in order to facilitate the implementation of a shared disk architecture. Using the disk volume manager for your platform such as Veritas, configure the shared disk volumes. In order to minimize the migration time, you should configure a separate shared volume for each database file including database files, redo log files, and control files. All database files must be placed on shared volumes so as to allow access to all the files from all the instances. Although redo log files are private per instance, other instances may need to access the redo log files in the case of recovery. If your database consists of 80 data files, 4 redo log files, and 2 control files, then you should configure at least 86 shared disk volumes. The volume should be sized such that it can contain the original data file. For example, if the existing data

file is 1 GB, then the shared volume for that data file should be at least 1 GB in size. In general, you should size the shared volume such that it is larger than the existing data file by several megabytes in order to account for volume manager and raw device overhead.

Once you have completed configuring the shared volumes, bring the shared volumes online, and change the permissions of the shared volumes such that the shared volumes can be read and written by the system account which owns the oracle binary.

Step 3: Install the Real Application Clusters Option

Using the Oracle9i Universal Installer from the \$ORACLE_HOME on the database server, install the Real Application Clusters option (if not already installed).

If you are using Oracle8i, then you should install the Parallel Server option using the Oracle8i installer.

Step 4: Ensure that the MAXINSTANCES Parameter is set properly

Converting to RAC requires that the database support multiple instances mounting and accessing the same database. Hence, the MAXINSTANCES parameter of the control file should be set to the number of active RAC instances. For example, if configuring a two-node cluster, then MAXINSTANCES should be set to at least two (2). In order to determine the existing value of MAXINSTANCES, run the following query:

```
select type,records_total
from v$controlfile_record_section
where type='REDO THREAD';
```

OUTPUT:

TYPE	RECORDS_TOTAL
REDO THREAD	4

If the value for RECORDS_TOTAL for the REDO THREAD type is greater than or equal to the desired number of RAC instances, then you can skip Step 5. Otherwise, follow the instructions in Step 5 in order to increase the value of MAXINSTANCES. In the example output provided above, MAXINSTANCES is set to 4, hence there is no need to recreate the control file.

Step 5: Increase the MAXINSTANCES Parameter

In order to change the control file parameter MAXINSTANCES, you need to recreate the database control file. This can be done via the following steps:

1. Backup the existing control file.
myhost> sqlplus "/ as sysdba" SQL> alter database backup controlfile to trace;
2. Locate and edit the trace file.

The backup control file command will generate a trace file in the directory specified by the init.ora parameter user_dump_dest. Locate the trace file, and edit the trace file in order to create a SQL script which can be used to recreate the control file. You should remove the trace file comments. Change the value for the MAXINSTANCES parameter from 1 to 4, for example.

```
STARTUP NOMOUNT CREATE CONTROLFILE REUSE DATABASE "OPSPROD"  
NORESETLOGS \ NOARCHIVELOG MAXLOGFILES 255 MAXLOGMEMBERS 2  
MAXDATAFILES 1022 MAXINSTANCES 4 MAXLOGHISTORY 907
```

3. Save the changes into a SQL script.

Save the changes made to the trace file in a SQL script named control.sql.

4. Recreate the control file.

Shut down all the application services and then the database (in normal mode). Then recreate the control file as follows:

```
myhost> sqlplus "/ as sysdba" SQL>@control.sql
```

Ensure that the control file has been successfully created, and that the database has opened successfully. Repeat Step 4 "Ensure that the MAXINSTANCES Parameter is set properly" in order to confirm that the MAXINSTANCES parameter has been set correctly.

RAC Migration Steps

The following steps should be performed following the completion of the prerequisite steps.

Step 1: Shut Down the Application Services

Prior to migrating to the RAC environment, you should shutdown all the application services such as the Concurrent Manager, Forms Server, Report Server, Discoverer, Self Service (Apache JServ and Apache Mod PL/SQL), and others. Once the middle-tier services have been successfully shut down, you should shut down the database instance in normal or immediate mode.

Step 2: Copy the Database Files to the Shared Volumes

The database should be shutdown prior to copying the files. Copy all the database files to the shared volumes using the OS copy utility. On Solaris, you can use the dd command to copy the data files. For example:

```
prompt> dd if=ont_idx1.dbf of=/dev/vx/rdisk/apps1opsdg/vol25 \  
bs=64k  
prompt> dd if=mrp_data1.dbf of=/dev/vx/rdisk/apps1opsdg/vol26 \  
bs=64k
```

Step 3: Link to the Shared Volumes

After completing the copy of the database files to the shared volumes, you need to ensure that the database now points to the shared volumes. You can either create symbolic links which point to the new shared volumes or rename the file names stored in the database via the command "ALTER DATABASE RENAME FILE". To rename the data files via the ALTER DATABASE RENAME FILE command, the database needs to be started in the exclusive mount mode. After renaming the data files, the database can be opened.

If the ALTER DATABASE RENAME FILE command was used to rename the files, open the database via the command "ALTER DATABASE open" following the completion of the rename. Query v\$datafile, v\$logfile, and v\$tempfile to ensure that the database file names reflect the shared volume names. Then, shutdown the database instance in normal mode.

Step 4: Configure the init.ora file

Modify the init.ora file for each instance to include RAC related configuration, such as the instance number and thread number. In addition, the parameter `parallel_server` should be set to `TRUE` in order to enable RAC. An example is provided below:

```
instance 1:
    instance_number=1
    thread=1
    cluster_database=true
    rollback_segments = (rbs1, rbs2, rbs3, rbs4)
instance 2:
    instance_number=2
    thread=2
    cluster_database=true
    rollback_segments = (rbs5, rbs6, rbs7, rbs8)
```

If you are using Oracle8i Parallel Server, then set `parallel_server=true` in the init.ora parameter file for each instance in the cluster.

It is recommended that you assign rollback segments to a particular instance. For example, if your existing database consists of 8 rollback segments (rbs1 - rbs8), you can dedicate four (4) rollback segments to instance #1, and four (4) rollback segments to instance #2.

Step 5: Start Instance #1

Start instance #1 in shared mode:

```
sqlplus> startup
```

If you are using Oracle8i Parallel Server, then you need to specify the parallel option upon startup:

```
sqlplus> startup parallel
```

Step 6: Add a Redo Thread for Instance #2

Using instance #1, add another redo log thread in order to allow instance #2 to be started.

```
ALTER DATABASE ADD LOGFILE THREAD 2
    'logthr2_1.dbf' size 500M ,
    'logthr2_2' size 500M ;
ALTER DATABASE ENABLE PUBLIC THREAD 2;
```

Step 7: Start Instance #2

Start instance #2 in shared mode:

```
sqlplus> startup
```

If you are using Oracle8i Parallel Server, then you need to specify the parallel option upon startup:

```
sqlplus> startup parallel
```

Step 8: Configure the tnsnames.ora file

Change the tnsnames.ora files on the middle-tier systems (i.e. database clients) to reflect the RAC environment. For a 2-node cluster system, you should define two separate TNS aliases. Do not use the LOAD_BALANCE option in the tnsnames.ora as this will result in application errors.

Step 9: Configure the Self-Service Infrastructure for RAC

The Self-Service infrastructure (ICX), by default, uses the database instance name as part of the cookie name if the cookie name has not been explicitly set by the administrator. In the RAC environment, the database instance name can change based on which instance the users were connected. Hence, you should explicitly set the cookie name (SESSION_COOKIE_NAME) to a constant value in the ICX_PARAMETERS table. Update the ICX_PARAMETERS table from the Apps schema using the following example.

```
SQL> update ICX_PARAMETERS  
      set SESSION_COOKIE_NAME='OPSPROD1';
```

In the example above, the cookie name is set to 'OPSPROD1'. You may specify any value for the session_cookie_name not to exceed 30 characters in length, however, it is recommended that you use a short name (5 characters or fewer).

Step 10: Start the Application Services

Start the Application servers including the Forms servers, Report Server, Apache (JServ and Mod PL/SQL), Concurrent Manager, and others.

Step 11: Bind users to a specific instance

Although RAC does not require manual application partitioning, system administrators can bind users or classes of user to a specific instance to maximize performance and scalability.

In order to direct a certain class of users to a particular instance in the RAC cluster, you can use the Oracle Applications profile option "Database Instance" (i.e. INSTANCE_PATH) to bind users with a particular responsibility to a particular instance. For example, you can bind Purchasing Forms users to instance A, and Order Management Forms users to instance B using the Database Instance profile option.

For concurrent programs, you can bind concurrent programs to a specific instance by using the Parallel Concurrent Processing (PCP) feature along with specialized managers.

Implementing Load Balancing in Oracle E-Business Suite and Real Application Clusters

The document describes important configuration steps for effectively implementing load balancing using Real Application Clusters (RAC) and the Oracle E-Business Suite.

Load Distribution

In an Oracle9i Real Application Clusters environment, connection load balancing provides the capability to balance the number of active connections among multiple instances.

Connection load balancing can be configured between 11i and RAC in both dedicated and shared server configurations

Due to dynamic service registration, and with remote/local listener parameters configured, a listener is always aware of all instances and dispatchers regardless of their location. Depending on the load information, a listener decides which instance to send the incoming client request to.

Use remote listener/local listener parameters to register an instance with listeners on all nodes.

In a dedicated server configuration, a listener selects an instance in the following order:

1. Least **loaded** node
2. Least **loaded** instance.

Use remote_listener parameter to ensure that a listener is always aware of all instances and dispatchers regardless of their location. Depending on the load information, a listener decides which instance to send the incoming client request to.

HTML-Based Applications Load Balancing

Different means of workload distribution are possible. Test the appropriate approach specific to your environment.

HTML-based applications rely on utilizing a single URL comprising the hostname of the Application Server and dynamically appended to by the database server. This URL is hard-coded in the database and maybe changed through profile options if required. This limits the load balancing and failover features in a multi-node middle tier environment

In order for load balancing to work with HTML-based applications, patch 2549449 must be applied to the installation.

Follow these steps:

- Apply patch for 2549449 (JDBC drivers).
The Oracle JDBC 9iR2 Drivers patch is included in Oracle Applications Release 11.5.9 or higher Maintenance Pack and FND Patchset G or higher.
- Apply Apps AOLJ Patch 2456785 so that the service name URL with the LOAD_BALANCE option can be used.
- The profile “Applications Database ID” must be set at the site level to hostname1_servicename.
- The session_cookie_name field in ICX_PARAMETERS must be set to the service name.
- The init.ora parameters for the Remote and local listeners must be set on the RAC instances
- Only one dbc file (<hostname1>_<service_name>.dbc) is needed for both instances. Please refer to the examples of configuration files for more information.

Example of Configuration Files

The following are examples of configuration files.

<HOSTNAME>_<SERVICE_NAME>.DBC File

Only one dbc file (<hostname1>_<service_name>.dbc) is needed for both instances with the following syntax:

```
TWO_TASK=<SERVICE_NAME>
FNDNAM=APPS
GWYUID=APPLSYSPUB/PUB
GUEST_USER_PWD=OPERATIONS/WELCOME
APPS_JDBC_DRIVER_TYPE=THIN
DB_HOST=<NODE1>.us.oracle.com
DB_PORT=1526
BATCH_VALIDATE_USER=mfg
BATCH_VALIDATE_PWD=welcome
APPS_JDBC_DRIVER_TYPE=THIN
FND_MAX_JDBC_CONNECTIONS=100
APPS_JDBC_URL=jdbc:oracle:thin:@(DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS_LIST=
(Load_Balance=ON)(Address=(Protocol=TCP)(Host=<HOST1>)(Port=1526))
(Address=(Protocol=TCP)(Host=<HOST2>)(Port=1526)))
(CONNECT_DATA=(Service_Name = <SERVICE_NAME>)))
```

DB Instance1 - LISTENER.ORA

```
LISTENER=
  (ADDRESS_LIST =
    (ADDRESS= (PROTOCOL= IPC)(KEY= opsperf))
    (ADDRESS= (PROTOCOL= IPC)(KEY= fide11151))
#    (ADDRESS= (PROTOCOL= IPC)(KEY= PNPKEY))
    (ADDRESS= (PROTOCOL= TCP)(Host= ap201ops)(Port= 1526))
  )
SID_LIST_LISTENER =
  (SID_LIST =
    (SID_DESC =
      (ORACLE_HOME= /d1/oracle81)
      (SID_NAME = opsperf)
    )
    (SID_DESC =
      (ORACLE_HOME= /d1/oracle81)
      (SID_NAME = fide11151)
    )
    (SID_DESC =
      (SID_NAME = extproc)
      (ORACLE_HOME = /d1/oracle81)
      (PROGRAM = extproc)
    )
  )

STARTUP_WAIT_TIME_LISTENER = 0
CONNECT_TIMEOUT_LISTENER = 10
TRACE_LEVEL_LISTENER = OFF
```

DB Instance1 - TNSNAMES.ORA

```
L_LISTENER =  
  (DESCRIPTION =  
    (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP)(HOST = ap201ops)(PORT = 1526))  
  )  
R_LISTENER =  
  (DESCRIPTION =  
    (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP)(HOST = ap202ops)(PORT = 1526))  
  )
```

DB Instance1 - INIT.ORA

```
ifile=initcommon_fidel1115.ora  
undo_management=auto  
undo_tablespace=undo_rbs1  
instance_number=1  
thread=1  
remote_listener = R_LISTENER  
local_listener = L_LISTENER  
~
```

Document Sequences

What is a Document Sequence?

A document sequence uniquely numbers documents generated by an Oracle Applications product. Using Oracle Applications, you initiate a transaction by entering data through a form and generating a document, for example, an invoice. A document sequence generates an audit trail that identifies the application that created the transaction, for example, Oracle Receivables, and the original document that was generated, for example, invoice number 1234.

Document sequences can provide proof of completeness. For example, document sequences can be used to account for every transaction, even transactions that fail.

Document sequences can also provide an audit trail. For example, a document sequence can provide an audit trail from the general ledger into the subsidiary ledger, and to the document that originally affected the account balance.

Document sequences generate audit data, so even if documents are deleted, their audit records remain.

Related Topics

Defining a Document Sequence, page 15-1

Defining Document Categories, page 15-3

Assigning a Document Sequence, page 15-4

Document Numbering vs. Document Entry, page 15-6

Defining a Document Sequence

To define a sequence, you select a sequence name and an application to “own” the sequence.

- A sequence can number documents stored in database tables belonging to its owning application.
- Audit records for a sequence are stored in the application’s audit table, titled *Application Short Name_DOC_SEQUENCE_AUDIT*. For example, the audit table for a sequence owned by Oracle Payables is *AP_DOC_SEQUENCE_AUDIT*.

Important: Your database administrator must grant access to an application’s audit table for all ORACLE usernames associated with responsibilities that will use the sequence (responsibilities that access forms using the sequence).

You can set start and end dates for when the sequence is available. The start date defaults to the current date. By default, there is no end date, so the sequence definition does not expire.

You can choose whether a sequence numbers documents automatically, or accepts numbers manually entered by a user.

Automatic, Gapless, and Manual Numbering

Automatic numbering assigns a unique number to each document as it is generated. Automatic numbering is sequential by date and time of creation.

Gapless numbering also automatically generates a unique number for each document, but ensures that the document was successfully generated before assigning the number. With Gapless numbering, no sequence numbers are lost due to incomplete or failed document creation.

Important: We recommend that you choose this type only when gapless numbering is essential, as it may affect the performance of your system.

Manual numbering requires a user to assign a unique number to each document before it is generated. With manual numbering, numerical ordering and completeness is not enforced. Users can skip or omit numbers when entering the sequence value.

Automatic Numbering - Initial Value and Message Display

If you define a sequence to automatically number documents, you can:

- Enter an initial value for your sequence. The default is "1".
- Choose whether you want to display a message when a document is generated, telling the user the name of the sequence, and the sequence value (document number).

Two examples of sequence definitions, one with automatic numbering and the other with manual numbering, are represented in the table below.

Field in Document Sequences form	EXAMPLE 1 Sequence with Automatic Numbering	EXAMPLE 2 Sequence with Manual Numbering
(Sequence) NAME	AUTOPAY	ADJUSTMENTS
(Owning) APPLICATION	ORACLE PAYABLES - Sequence can number documents stored in an Oracle Payables database table.	ORACLE RECEIVABLES - Sequence can number documents stored in an Oracle Receivables database table.
EFFECTIVE DATE - START	CURRENT DATE & TIME (Default value)	OCT-01-94 User defines sequence "Adjustments" not to be available until Oct 1, 1994.
EFFECTIVE DATE - END	Field left blank. Sequence does not expire.	DEC-31-94 User defines sequence "Adjustments" to no longer be available after Dec 31, 1994.
(Numbering) TYPE	AUTOMATIC - Unique numbers are automatically generated in sequence. GA PLESS No omissions or gaps in numbers are possible, due to a rollback if the document creation is unsuccessful.	MANUAL - User must enter a unique number before transaction can be completed, and document is generated. User may skip or omit numbers.
INITIAL VALUE	1 (Default value) User could enter their own initial value, for example, 5700.	Not Available when numbering type is Manual.
MESSAGE	YES - When a document that is automatically numbered is created, a message displays the sequence name and the sequence value (document number).	Not Available when numbering type is Manual.

Related Topics

What is a Document Sequence?, page 15-1

Defining Document Categories, page 15-3

Defining Document Categories

Document categories organize documents into logical groups.

- A document category (also called a document type) is one of the rules you use to define which documents a sequence assigns numbers to.
- You can separately number each document category by assigning a different sequence to each category.

A document category identifies the database table that stores documents resulting from transactions your users enter.

- When you assign a sequence to a category, the sequence numbers the documents that are stored in a particular table.

Use categories to more precisely classify your documents. For example, you can categorize accounts receivable invoices into several different categories, such as:

- Chargebacks
- Deposits
- Guarantees
- Debit Memos
- Credit Memos
- Sales Invoices
- Customer Service Invoices

Similarly, you can categorize accounts payable or purchase invoices into several different categories, such as:

- Standard
- Expense Report
- Prepayment
- Interest
- Credit Memo
- Debit Memo

Related Topics

What is a Document Sequence?, page 15-1

Defining a Document Sequence, page 15-1

Assigning a Document Sequence, page 15-4

Assigning a Document Sequence

Before you can assign a sequence to number documents, you must define which documents are to be numbered.

Sequences versus Assignments

Defining a sequence is different from assigning a sequence to a series of documents.

- A sequence's definition determines whether a document's number is automatically generated or manually entered by the user.
- A sequence's assignment, that is, the documents a sequence is assigned to, is defined in the Sequence Assignments form.

Defining Documents for numbering by Assigned Sequences

You specify a combination of four rules that define any given document for assignment to a specific sequence name.

You can then assign a different (numbering) sequence to each document definition.

The four rules, that when combined, define what documents a selected sequence assigns numbers to are:

Application	<p>You select the application that generates the documents you wish to number.</p> <p>For example, to number sales invoices, you select Oracle Receivables.</p>
Category	<p>You select a document category to identify a logical subset of documents.</p> <p>For example, if you do not want to number all invoices in Oracle Receivables, you can choose to number only the category of sales invoices.</p> <p>A category identifies a table that stores transactions entered (documents generated) using an Oracle Application.</p> <p>The Category values you can choose from to define a document are dependent upon the application you select.</p>
Set of Books	<p>You select the chart of accounts for your business that is affected by the documents you wish to number. You may optionally enable this rule through the Document Flexfield.</p>
Method	<p>You select the method that your documents are entered, automatic or manual. You may optionally enable this rule through the Document Flexfield.</p> <p>Automatic is when a concurrent process, such as an external program, is set up to enter transaction data into an Oracle Application.</p> <p>Manual is when a document is manually entered using a form in an application.</p>

Assignment of Sequences to Document Definitions

For each unique document definition there can only be one active sequence assignment. A document definition consists of the Application, Category, and the optional Document Flexfield segments Set of Books and Method

Important: When assigning sequences to a document definition, each active sequence can be assigned to only one unique combination of application and category (i.e., application table).

Active Assignments and Active Sequences

An active sequence assignment does not have a post dated end date. That is, the assignment's end date is not before the current date.

- An active sequence *assignment* either has no end date, or an end date that is not before the current date.
- A sequence assignment and its dates of effectivity are defined on the Sequence Assignments form.

A sequence *definition* must be active as well. That is, the sequence definition's end date (as opposed to its assignment's end date) must not be before the current date.

- When you define a document sequence, you give the sequence a name, and define how the sequence numbers each document by:

- ## Related Topics

Defining a Document Sequence, page 15-1

Document Numbering vs. Document Entry, page 15-6

Do not confuse the type of document numbering a sequence employs, which can be automatic or manual, with the method of entering documents, which is also defined as either automatic or manual.

The screenshot shows the "Oracle Applications" window titled "Document Sequences". The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Folder, Tools, Window, and Help. The toolbar contains various icons for document management. Below the toolbar, there's a tab labeled "Document Sequences". The main area displays a table with columns: Name, Application, From, To, Type, Message, and Initial Value. The first row has values: (empty), (empty), 18/JAN/2001, (empty), Automatic, (checkbox), and 1. The rest of the rows are empty. At the bottom, there's a status bar showing "<DBG>".

A document sequence uniquely numbers documents generated by an Oracle Applications product (for example, invoices generated by Oracle Receivables). Using the Sequence Assignments window, you assign your sequence to number only those documents that satisfy rules you define.

A document sequence numbers documents generated by an Oracle application, for example, journal entries generated by Oracle General Ledger.

Document sequences ensure that every document your users create can be accounted for. See: Sequences Assignments, page 15-10.

Document Sequences Block

Define the name, type of numbering scheme, effective dates, and initial value for your document sequence.

Name

Once entered, sequence names cannot be changed.

Application

Once selected, the application associated with your sequence cannot be changed.

Audit records for your sequence are stored in the application's audit table, titled *Application Short Name_DOC_SEQUENCE_AUDIT*. For example, the audit table for a sequence owned by Oracle Payables is *AP_DOC_SEQUENCE_AUDIT*.

Effective From/To

Enter the dates on which your document sequence takes effect/is no longer enabled. The Start on field automatically defaults to the current date, and once a sequence is defined, the start date cannot be changed. If you leave the End on field blank, your document sequence does not expire; and if you enter an end date and define your sequence, the end date cannot be modified later. If there is no end date defined and there are no active assignments for a sequence, you can disable the sequence by entering the current date as the end date. Once disabled, a sequence cannot be reactivated.

Type

Once defined, you cannot change the type of document numbering sequence.

Automatic

Sequentially assigns, by date and time of creation, a unique number to each document as it is generated.

Manual

Manual numbering requires a user to assign a number to each document before it is generated. You must enter unique values. However, please note that numerical ordering and completeness is not enforced.

Important: The Automatic-By-User type is currently not supported, and is reserved for a future version of Oracle Applications.

Warning: The Gapless Numbering type is valid only in the context of certain localizations. We recommend that you choose this type only after consulting with Worldwide Support, as it may affect the performance of your system.

Message

Check the Message check box if you want each document to display a message (in the message line near the bottom of the screen) informing the user of the sequence name and value (number).

This check box only applies to sequences with the automatic type of numbering. Messages appear only on form displays, and are not written to a request's log file.

Once a sequence is defined, the message choice cannot be changed.

Initial Value

Enter a value for the first document in your sequence. This field only applies to sequences with automatic or gapless numbering type. Sequence numbers should not be greater than eight (8) digits.

If you leave this field blank, the first document is automatically assigned a value of "1".

Once a sequence is defined, this initial value cannot be changed.

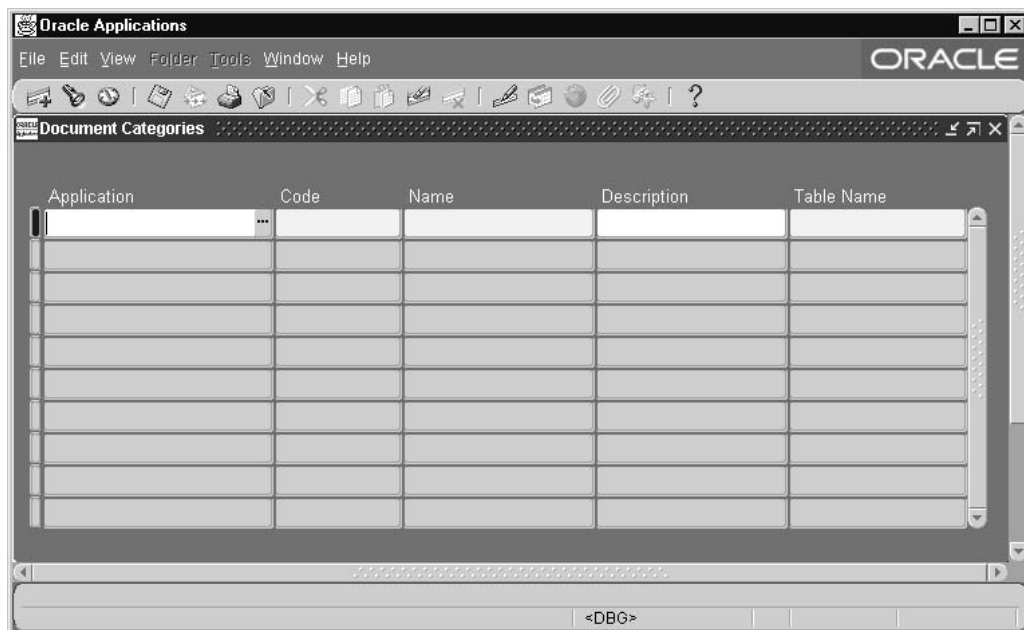
Related Topics

What is a Document Sequence?, page 15-1

Document Categories, page 15-8

Sequence Assignments, page 15-10

Document Categories Window



Define categories for your documents in order to divide your documents into logical groups, which you can number separately by assigning different sequences.

A document sequence uniquely numbers each document the sequence is assigned to.

- Using the Sequence Assignments form, you assign your sequence to number only documents that satisfy rules you define.
- Document category, or type, as it may be titled on some forms, is one of the rules that define which documents a sequence assigns numbers to.

Each category identifies a table that stores documents resulting from transactions your users generate.

- When you assign a sequence to a category, the sequence numbers the documents that are stored in the table.

Document Categories Block

Name a document category and associate a table with the category.

When you enter this block, Oracle automatically queries for any existing document categories.

Application

Once a category is defined, you cannot change the choice of application. Only tables belonging to the selected application can be assigned to a category.

Code

Category code must be unique within an application. Once a category is defined, you cannot update its code.

Name

You can update the name, if you wish. For example, if the category name is predefined, you can change the name to a more familiar value.

Description

You can update the description, if you wish. For example, if the category description is predefined, you can change the description to a more familiar value.

Table Name

Select the name of the table that stores the documents you want to identify by your category.

- When the sequential numbering feature checks for completeness or generates a report, it locates the category's documents in the table.
- Only tables belonging to the application associated with the category can be chosen.
- Once a category is defined, you cannot change the choice of table.

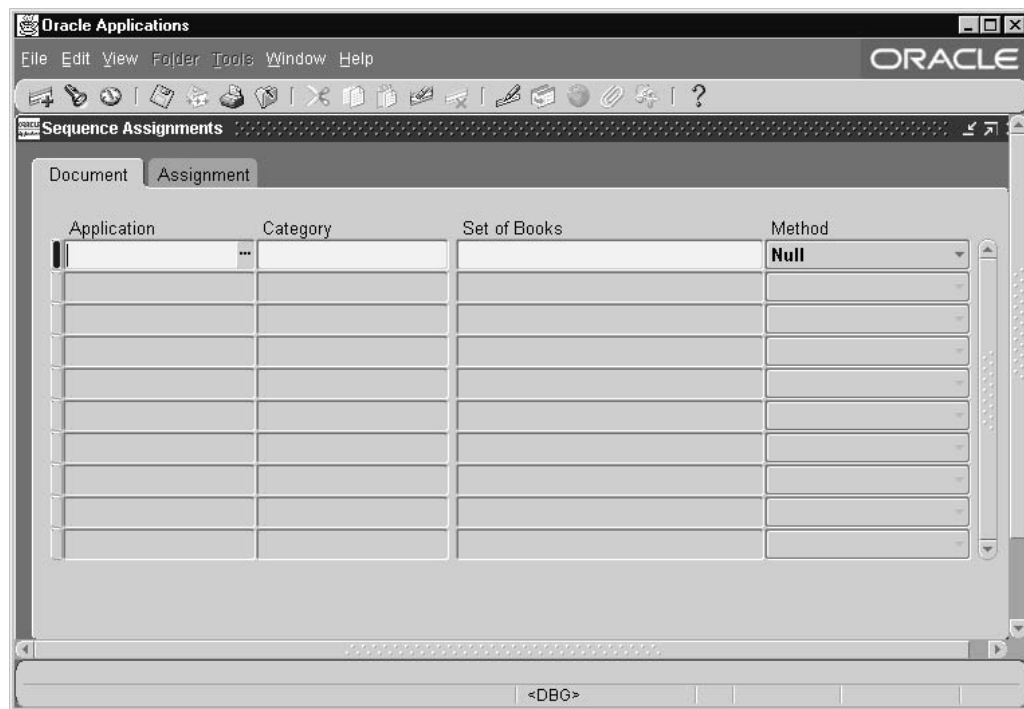
Related Topics

What is a Document Sequence?, page 15-1

Document Sequences, page 15-6

Sequence Assignments, page 15-10

Sequence Assignments Window



Define which documents a document sequence can number, and then assign the document sequence to your definition.

A document sequence numbers documents generated by an Oracle Applications product (for example, invoices generated by Oracle Receivables).

Documents can be defined by the application that generates them and their category (the table in which they are stored). Additional fields appear when the optional rules for defining documents (Set of Books and Method of document entry) are enabled.

Besides entering a document definition and assigning a sequence to it, you can, if you wish, enter effective dates for the assignment.

Prerequisites

- ☐ Define the document sequence using the Document Sequences window. See: Document Sequences, page 15-6.

Sequence Assignments Block

Specify documents by the application that generates them and the category of the document (table where the documents are stored). You can also include in your document definition the set of books they affect, and the method by which the document is entered.

Once a document definition is entered, you select a sequence to assign it to, and if you wish, enter effective dates for the assignment.

There can only be one active sequence assigned to each unique combination of Application, Category, Set of Books, and Method. The last two criterion are optional, and are set in the Document Flexfield.

However, the same sequence, the same numbering scheme, and initial value can be assigned to more than one combination of Application, Category, Set of Books, and Method as long as the Application and Category remain the same.

Application	Select the application that generates the documents you wish to number. For example, to number sales invoices, you select Oracle Receivables.
Category	Select a document category to identify a logical subset of documents. For example, if you do not want to number all invoices in Oracle Receivables, you can choose to number only the category of sales invoices.

Assignment Region

Since the effective dates for an assignment must fall within the sequence's start and end dates, the list of available sequences depends on the start and end dates specified for the assignment.

Start Date/End Date

Enter the dates on which the sequence assignment to your document definition takes effect/is no longer enabled. The Start Date field automatically defaults to the current date, and once a sequence assignment is defined, the start date cannot be changed.

If you leave the End Date field blank, your sequence assignment does not expire; and if you enter an end date and define your sequence assignment, the end date cannot be modified later.

If there is no end date defined and there are no active assignments for a sequence, you can disable the sequence assignment by entering the current date as the end date. Once disabled, a sequence assignment cannot be reactivated.

Sequence

Select a sequence to assign to your document definition. The sequence's application and the document's application must be the same.

Once you define a sequence assignment, the sequence name cannot be updated later.

If you want to disable the sequence assignment and assign a new sequence to the document definition (Document Flexfield combination), you must first, enter an End Date to disable the current sequence assignment, then, second, create a new record (row) for the new assignment.

Document Flexfield

The Document Flexfield may consist of none, one or two segments.

Set of Books	Select the chart of accounts for your business that is affected by the documents you wish to number.
Method	Select the method that your documents are entered, automatic or manual.

Automatic is when a concurrent process (e.g., an external program) enters transaction data into an Oracle Application, which generates documents.

Manual is when a document is manually entered using a form in an application.

Once defined, a Document Flexfield definition cannot be updated. You may not define additional segments for the Document Flexfield.

Important: To enable this descriptive flexfield, use the Descriptive Flexfield Segments window. Select the application *Application Object Library*, and the title "Document Flexfield". Be sure to unfreeze the flexfield; then, navigate to the Segments window and enable the segments. Freeze your flexfield after you set it up, and save and compile the new definition.

Related Topics

Descriptive Flexfields Concepts, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

Defining Descriptive Flexfields Structures, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

What is a Document Sequence?, page 15-1

Document Sequences, page 15-6

Document Categories, page 15-8

Developer Tools

Developer Tools

Oracle Applications provides several tools to help developers create and debug custom forms and programs. Described in this chapter are the Forms Personalization and Work Directory features.

In addition, the CUSTOM library allows extension of Oracle Applications without modification of Oracle Applications code. For information on the CUSTOM library, see the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

Also, the *Oracle Applications Supportability Guide* provides information for system administrators and developers regarding diagnostic and logging features.

Forms Personalization

The Form Personalization feature allows you to declaratively alter the behavior of Forms-based screens, including changing properties, executing builtins, displaying messages, and adding menu entries.

For each function (a form running in a particular context based on parameters passed to it), you can specify one or more Rules. Each Rule consists of an Event, an optional Condition, the Scope for which it applies, and one or more Actions to perform.

An Event is a trigger point within a form, such as startup (WHEN-NEW-FORM-INSTANCE), or when focus moves to a new record (WHEN-NEW-RECORD-INSTANCE). There are standard events that almost every form sends, and certain forms send additional product-specific events.

The Scope is evaluated based on the current runtime context to determine if a Rule should be processed or not. The Scope can be at the Site, Responsibility, User, or Industry level. Each Rule can have one or more Scopes associated with it.

The Condition is an optional SQL code fragment that is evaluated when the Event occurs; if it evaluates to TRUE then the Actions are processed.

Each Action consists of one of the following:

- setting a Property, such as making a field Required or hiding a Tab page
- executing a Builtin, such as GO_BLOCK, DO_KEY or EXECUTE_FUNCTION
- displaying a Message
- enabling a Special menu entry

Once Rules are defined, when the target function is run then the Rules are automatically applied as events occur within that form.

Although the Form Personalization feature is declarative, the intended audience is a person familiar with Oracle Forms including the PL/SQL programming language, and the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*. Additionally, any change made could interfere with the base code of a form (the code that Oracle ships).

Please refer to "Forms Personalizations in Oracle Applications", Note 279034.1, on [OracleMetaLink](#) for more information.

Work Directory

The Work Directory feature enables a developer, support consultant, or other technical specialist to test modifications to forms and concurrent programs in Oracle Applications without affecting users of the same code tree.

Using the Work Directory, a user can be logged into an Oracle Applications system but access a version of a form or concurrent program that is not within the standard \$PROD_TOP directory. For example, an on-site developer can test out a new version of a custom form without affecting other testing on the system.

You can use the Work Directory feature for alternate files of forms and concurrent programs only.

Implementation

To implement this feature, set up a directory to hold the alternate files for your forms or concurrent programs.

To use an alternate file, set the profile option FND:Override Directory with the path for the directory containing the alternate file.

Important: This profile option should usually be set at the User level only. If you set FND:Override Directory at the Site level, for example, you will affect all users at that site using the particular forms.

Using the Work Directory

After you have created the alternate directory and set the profile option FND: Override Directory with the appropriate value, you can use files in that alternate directory.

In searching for the appropriate file path for a form or concurrent program, Oracle Applications will first check to see if the profile option FND: Override Directory is set and if a given file exists in the specified directory. If the above two conditions are true then the alternate file is used. If the profile option is not set or if the necessary file does not exist in that directory, then the default (usual) file path is used.

Note: The Oracle Applications Navigator caches the paths to files that have been successfully opened. If the standard form has been opened, then that form will be used for the remainder of the session. To switch to a different file path, you must exit and restart Oracle Applications.

To provide a visual indication that an alternate form is in use, the developer of the form should specify a different version number for the form in the PRE-FORM trigger. This

version number appears during runtime using Help > About Oracle Applications. For more information, see the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

Web Enabled PL/SQL Window

Use this form to maintain the FND_ENABLED_PLSQL runtime registry.

PL/SQL Object Block

Name

The name of the PL/SQL object.

Type

The type of the PL/SQL object. The object may be a package, package procedure, or procedure.

Enabled

Check this box to enable the PL/SQL object., and the Logging Service

Administering Process Navigation

Overview of Process Navigation

A "process" is a series of actions taken to achieve a specific result. The Process Navigator utilizes Oracle Workflow to depict each of your business processes with a workflow diagram. A process diagram contains an icon for each step in the process; each icon acts as a visual cue and as an access point for the actual form associated with each step. You can navigate to any form involved in the process simply by clicking on the appropriate icon.

What is Oracle Workflow?

Oracle Workflow allows you to define business processes using a drag-and-drop designer. You can route relevant information to decision makers, automate processes, deliver electronic notifications to users in a given workflow, and monitor your processes as they are implemented. You can display any workflow diagram as a process in the Process Navigator. For more information, see the Oracle Workflow documentation.

What are Seeded Processes?

A seeded process is one that is delivered to you ready to use. Oracle Applications Release 11i includes several seeded business processes which you can use as they are.

Modifying Your Menu

Before you begin, you should be aware that simply referencing a form from a process does not provide the required permissions for the responsibility to access the forms in the process. Form Functions for each form referenced from a process must be added to the Function Security Menu for the responsibility. If the Form Function is not accessible, the user will receive an error when attempting to access the form from the process in the Process Navigator.

Creating Process Navigator Processes

You must use Oracle Workflow Builder to create or customize any of the processes that are displayed in the Process Navigator. These instructions describe how to create new processes for the Process Navigator.

The following table lists the terms/components of a Process Navigator process and the corresponding components in Oracle Workflow Builder that define them.

Process Navigator Component	Description	Controlling Oracle Workflow Builder Component(s)
Process	The diagram that appears in the Process Navigator.	Process activity and process diagram
Process description	A description of the displayed process.	Process activity
Step	An icon in the process, which takes you directly to an Oracle Applications form when you double-click on it.	Notification activity
Step description	A description of the selected process step.	Message
Form associated with a step.	The Oracle Applications form that appears when you double click on a step in a Process Navigator process.	Form-type Message attribute

Note: The following procedures do not address most of the functionality of Oracle Workflow Builder, but are tailored to creating processes for the Process Navigator. The Oracle Workflow Builder is a tool used to design workflow processes. Workflow processes can range from routing documents through an approval process to setting up your Oracle Applications. See the Oracle Workflow documentation for more information.

Creating Process Navigator Processes

To create a new process for the Process Navigator, you must first create the necessary components in Oracle Workflow Builder. The components you create make up the process definition, which is then saved to the database or to a flat file. The Process Navigator then reads the process definition from the database to display the process and its information and provide you access to the related Oracle Applications forms.

Creating a New Process Navigator Process

Note: For more information on creating a process, see the *Oracle Workflow Developer's Guide*.

1. Open Oracle Workflow Builder.
2. Create an item type. An item type is a repository that will contain all the components associated with the process you wish to build.
3. Create an Item Attribute of type role, whose internal name is USER_NAME.

Note: Enter a new display name for the message using the format <Verb><Form Title>. If the form title already contains a verb, then

simply use the form title as the display name. If the form title does not contain a verb, then consider using one of the following verbs:

**Define / Assign / Run / Load / Convert / Open / Set /
Generate / Review**

4. Create a message to describe the task that is to be accomplished by a Process Navigator process step.
5. Create a form-type for the message. The seeded processes generally assign these message attributes an internal name of Open Form, but this is not required.
6. Create a notification activity to represent a Process Navigator process step.
7. Create a process activity to represent a Process Navigator Process.

Note: Enter a display name for your process. This name appears in the Process Navigator's process list. The naming convention for the process should be a functional name followed by the word "Process."

Enter a description for your process. The description appears when a user selects a process in the Process Navigator. For Oracle Workflow Builder Release 2.5 and higher, the description is limited to 240 characters.

8. Draw the Process Diagram. Once you create a process activity, you can draw the process diagram that is associated with it. The process diagram is what appears when you display a process in the Process Navigator.

Note: The Performer type of the Notification Activity you include in a process diagram for the Process Navigator must be set to the item attribute USER_NAME.

9. Save your changes. When you save your work to a database, you actually save everything in the current data store that has been modified. When you save your work to a flat file, you actually save everything in the current data store to the file.

Note: It is highly recommended that for new processes created for the Process Navigator that you always save a copy of your workflow process definition as a flat file and check that file into a source control system to maintain a working version of your process definition. Then when you want to update your definition in the database, you can pull up the flat file and save it directly to the database. Avoid using the process definition stored in your database as your source controlled version, as others with access to the database can update the definition.

10. Enable access to your process.

Enable access to your process

Before a process may be accessed in the Navigator you must complete the following two steps. Create a new function for your process in the Form Functions window, and add your process to a responsibility by adding the function you just created, to the responsibilities top menu in the Menus window.

Create a function for your process

Use the following procedure to create a function:

1. As the System Administrator navigate to the Form Functions window (Application->Function).
2. Enter a Function Name for your process using the format:
`<app>_<processname>`
Where <app> can be any application short name and <processname> is the internal name you entered when you created your process activity.
3. Enter a User Function Name. The name you enter here appears in the Navigator.
4. Enter "PROCESS" as your function type.
5. In the tabbed region 'Form' use the following format to enter a value in the Parameters field:
`<itemtype>:<processname>`
6. Save your work. No other fields are required to create your process function.

Add your function to a menu

In order for a user to access a process in the Navigator, the process must be added to a menu referenced by the user's responsibility. To determine the menu referenced by a particular responsibility use the Responsibilities window (Security->Responsibility->Define).

1. As the System Administrator navigate to the Menus window (Application->Menu).
2. Use the Find window to access the desired menu.
3. In a new row use the LOV to select the function you created for your process in the Functions field. You may optionally enter a description for the function. DO NOT enter any other fields. The Sequence field is automatically populated and the Navigator Prompt and Submenu fields must remain empty.
4. Save your work.

Access the Seeded Processes from the Database

To access the seed processes from the database, you need to first install Oracle Applications production Release 11*i* and you need to install Oracle Workflow Builder Release 2.5 or greater on your client PC.

To access the seeded processes, use the following procedure:

1. Run the Oracle Workflow Builder from you client.
2. Select Open from the File menu.
3. Choose Database.
4. For User, enter the FNDNAM of your database
5. For Password, enter the FNDNAM password of your database
6. For Connect, enter the alias for your database which should be entered in your tnsnames.ora file under the following directory on your client:

Local drive (i.e. "C"):orant\network\admin

Note: If you are using Windows 95, then the "orant" should be replaced with "orawin" in the directory structure above.

7. In the Show Item Types window, select the item type(s) associated with the seeded processes you wish to view. To select more than one item type, hold down your control key as you select the item types. Choose Show, and then choose OK.

Find the Form Function Name

Use the following procedure to find the form function name:

1. Log into Oracle Applications and navigate to the form of interest.
2. Choose About Oracle Applications... from the Help menu. Scroll down to Form Information and make note of the form name.
3. Now log into Oracle Applications using the Implementation System Administration responsibility and navigate to /Application/Form. Within the Form window, query for the form name you just made a note of in the Form field.
4. Make note of the value in the User Form Name field once your query completes.
5. Close the Form window and navigate to /Application/Function. Within the Function window, query for the User Form Name value that you just made a note of in the Form field.
6. The value that is returned in the Function field is the form function name that you need to associate a Process Navigator process step to a form.

Administering Internationalization

Overview

This chapter describes some of the features of internationalization support in Oracle Applications. Topics covered in this chapter include language values used in user sessions, behavior of date formats in NLS implementations, and multilingual external documents. In addition, Oracle Application windows for Languages, Natural Languages, and Territories are described.

Language Values for User Sessions

Language Values for User Sessions using AppsLocalLogin.jsp

This section describes how the language is determined for a user's session and other interactions with the system.

Login Page Language

The initial login page language is determined from one of the following sources:

- a language value passed on the AppsLocalLogin.jsp URL if the language is a licensed Applications language
- the language used in an earlier login session if the language is still a licensed Oracle Applications language
- the browser language if the language is a licensed Oracle Applications language
- the Oracle Applications base language if none of the above apply

The user can change the initial login page language selection by choosing one of the other language name icons on the login page. The set of language name icons on the login page represent the set of supported or active language in the Applications installation. If the user selects an alternative language, the login page is refreshed in that alternative language.

Login Page Language and Runtime Session Language

Users must ensure that the language used for the login page is the language they want to use for their Applications runtime session. The runtime session will, by default, start in the language used in the login page. The ICX:Language profile value is not used to determine the runtime session language. Instead the language of the login page controls the initial runtime session language value. Users can still change the runtime session language after logging in, if they wish, from the Preferences screen.

ICX:Language Profile Option

The ICX:Language profile option is used for the following:

- To determine a default language to use for offline/remote communications with other users on the system. For example, it is used to determine the language to use for an e-mail notification to be sent to a user on the system and which would be read offline from the system.
- Default language to use for other Oracle Applications login methods.

The ICX:Language profile is normally not set at user level for a given user when that user initially starts using Oracle Applications. The language chosen on the login page and therefore the runtime session value is also not saved to the ICX:Language profile value for the user regardless of whether a value already exists for the profile at user level or not. The user can either specifically set a value for the ICX:Language profile at user level after logging in, or continue to inherit the value from the higher profile value levels (with a value always existing for the ICX:Language profile at site level).

Preferences Page Language Support

The current values for the runtime session language as well as the saved ICX:Language profile value for the user are displayed on the Preferences page.

The following updates are allowed:

- Change only the runtime session language
- Change only the saved ICX:Language profile value for the user
- Change both the runtime session and the ICX:Language profile values to either the same values or different values

Language Value for Logging in to Oracle Applications from a Login Server or Central Portal

This section describes language value behavior when logging into the Applications from remote or non-Oracle Applications based login systems such as the Login Server or from a central portal application.

For Oracle Applications, the language used in the remote Login Server/central portal session cannot be relied on to determine the runtime session language for the Oracle Applications session. That language may not be an Oracle Applications-supported active language, and it may not be the preferred language of the user for the runtime Oracle Applications session. Therefore the ICX:Language profile value for the user determines the Oracle Applications runtime session for that user.

Once the Applications runtime session is initiated, the user can use the Preferences page to change the runtime session language for the session. The user can also choose to change his or her saved ICX:Language profile value.

Language Values for Oracle Workflow Notifications

Oracle Workflow e-mail notifications use the user-level language set in the Preferences page and also stored in the ICX:Language profile option.

Behavior of Date Formats in NLS Implementations

The storage space for month name abbreviations in Release 11i is limited to 3 bytes. For some language and character set combinations, the month name abbreviation requires more than 3 bytes. For this reason, when a language is used in which any month name abbreviation exceeds 3 bytes in the current character set, all month name abbreviations for that language are automatically replaced by numeric representations which conform to the 3-byte space limit.

The languages affected in a UTF8 implementation are:

Canadian French, Czech, German, Greek, Hungarian, Polish, Russian, Simplified Chinese, Traditional Chinese, Slovak, Thai, and Turkish.

The languages affected in their local character sets are:

Simplified Chinese, Traditional Chinese, and Thai.

Multilingual External Documents

Oracle Applications ship with a set of external documents, or those documents directed toward your customers and trading partners, for which we model the data multilingually. Any document for which the data model is multilingual can be submitted, through a single request, to run in one language or in any subset of the installed languages. Your Italian customer, for example, can receive invoices printed in Italian, while your Korean customer receives packing slips printed in Korean.

Oracle Shipping

- Bill of Lading
- Commercial Invoice
- Pack Slip

Oracle Order Management

- Price List
- Sales Order Acknowledgment

Oracle Receivables

- Dunning Letter Print
- Print Statements
- Transaction Print

Oracle Purchasing

- Printed Change Order Report (Landscape)
- Printed Change Order Report (Portrait)
- Printed Purchase Order Report (Landscape)
- Printed Purchase Order Report (Portrait)
- Printed RFQ Report (Landscape)

- Printed RFQ Report (Portrait)
- Dispatch Purchase Order

Oracle Sourcing

- Negotiation PDF

Oracle Payables

- Invalid PO Supplier Notice
- Prepayment Remittance Notice
- Print Invoice Notice
- Supplier Open Balance Letter

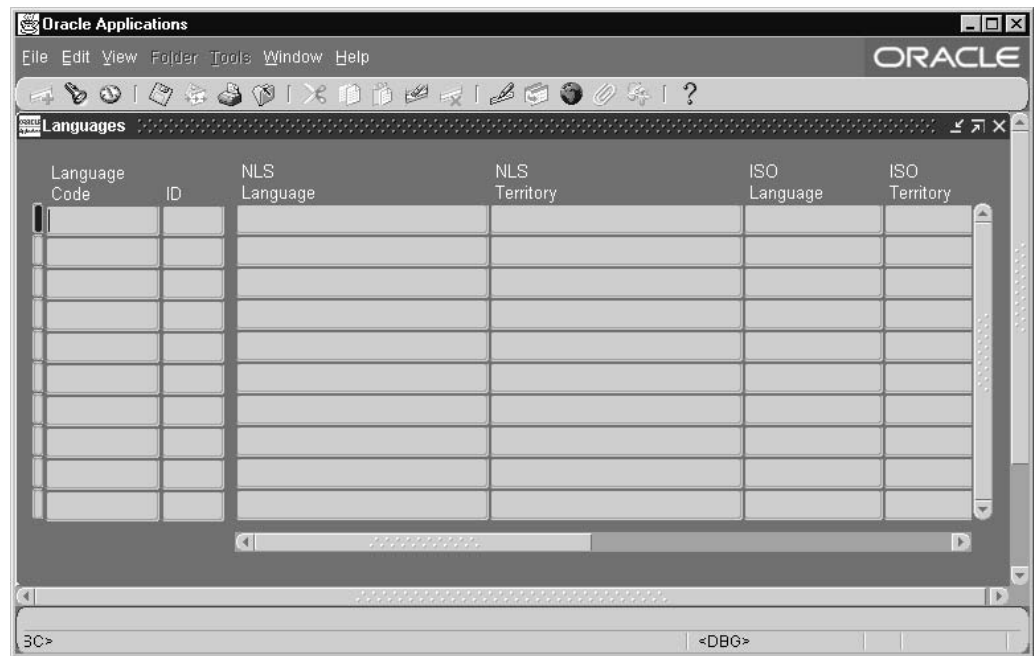
Oracle Human Resources

- Full Person Details
- Full Applicant Details
- Full Assignment Details
- Full Work Details

Oracle Payroll

- Check Writer
- Deposit Advice
- Third Party Checks

Languages Window



Use the Languages window to review and modify information about the languages available for use in Oracle Applications.

Languages Block

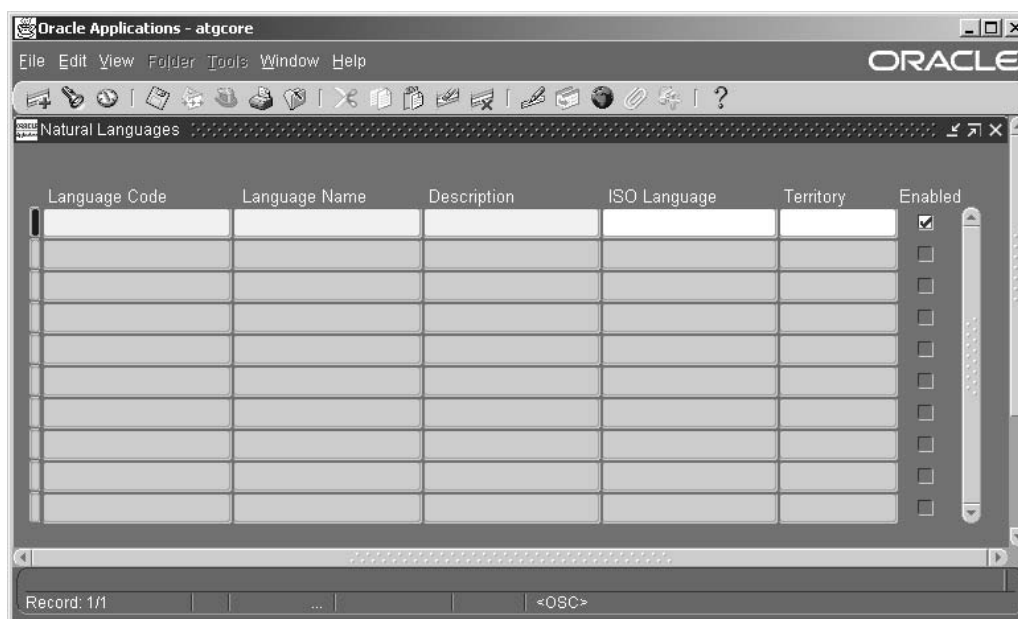
Each record includes the language code, such as 'EN' for English, the territory code where the dialect is spoken, such as 'US' for U.S.A., the short name for the dialect, such as 'usaeng', and the full name of the dialect, such as 'American English'. Each record also includes the internal language code and territory code, the ISO (International Standards Organization) language code and territory code, the code set for the dialect, and a status indicator for the dialect.

The columns `Locale Date Language` and `UTF8 Date Language` are used in date rendering. For some languages the length in bytes of the month short name is longer than the prepared buffer in a UTF8 database; for these languages, the `UTF8 Date Language` is used as the date language in UTF8 environments. In databases using other character sets, `Local Date Language` is used.

Normally you would not want to update the seeded data that comes with your products, but you may wish to modify the way the Language Description is represented in the Translations window.

You can update the description of the Language to change the field name displayed in the Translations window.

Natural Languages Window



Use the Natural Languages window to review information about the languages available for use in Oracle Applications.

The Natural Languages table allows you to associate the name of a language with another entity, such as a person or company.

You can add new languages in this window. Prefix the language code for new languages with an 'x'.

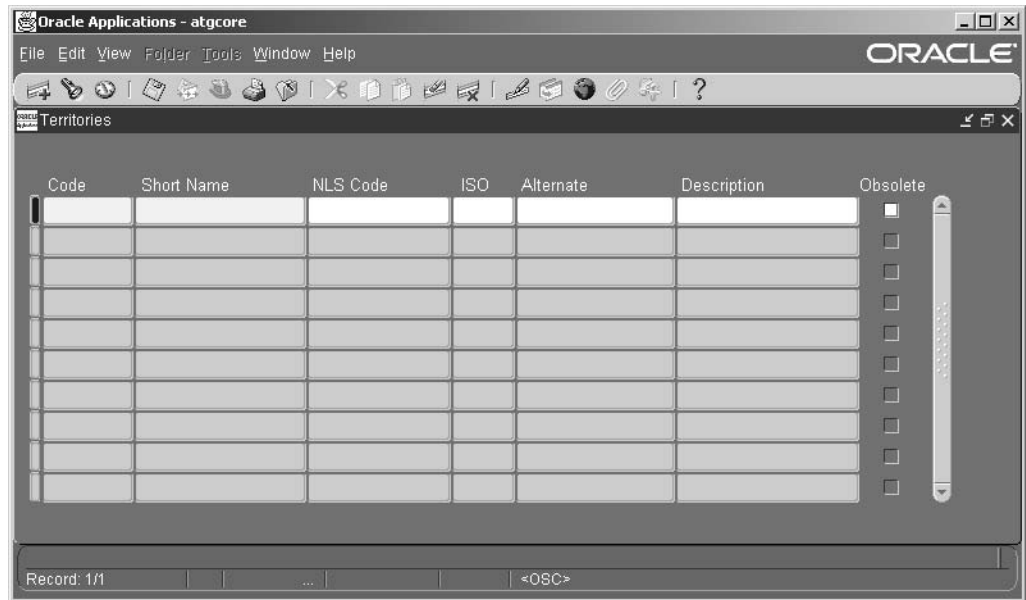
You can update the status (enabled/disabled) of seeded languages.

You cannot delete saved records.

Natural Languages Block

Each record includes the Language Code, Language Name, ISO Language, and Territory for each language.

Territories Window



Use the Territories window to review and modify information for the country values used in Oracle Applications.

Territories Block

Each record includes the two-letter uppercase territory Code such as "US", the Short Name for the territory such as "United States", the NLS Code, the ISO numeric entity code, an Alternate territory code, and a longer description (Description), such as "United States of America".

Normally you would not want to update the seeded data that comes with your products, but you may wish to modify the way the country is represented in List of Values through out your applications.

You can update the description of the Territory to change the territory value displayed in List of Values used in Oracle Application products.

Oracle9i Applications Server with Oracle E-Business Suite

Oracle9i Application Server and Oracle Applications

Oracle9i Application Server (Oracle9iAS) offers the industry's fastest, most complete and integrated J2EE-certified application server. Oracle9iAS has revolutionized the application server market by being the first to integrate all the technology required to develop and deploy E-Business portals, transactional applications, and Web services into a single product. Oracle9iAS provides the most productive development environment for developers to create Internet Applications including J2EE Applications, Web Services, Enterprise Portals, Wireless and Business Intelligence Applications. Its open and integration-ready architecture and standards compliance ensures that your Web applications can integrate with your IT environment, including legacy systems, the applications of your suppliers and partners, and Oracle and non-Oracle databases.

Oracle9iAS provides the most reliable platform to deploy Internet Applications including the fastest J2EE and Web Services environment, High Availability and Clustering Support, and complete, centralized Management and Security of all Oracle9iAS components.

For information on installing Oracle9iAS with Oracle Applications, see *OracleMetaLink* Note 146468.1. For related documentation, see the section Oracle9i Applications Server (9iAS) with Oracle E-Business Suite Related Documentation, page A-2.

Oracle Applications with Oracle9iAS Portal

Oracle9i Application Server enables you to rapidly build and deploy personalized portals using Oracle9iAS Portal. With its intuitive Web interface, workflow, and self-service publishing features, Oracle9iAS Portal allows you to integrate Web-based resources such as applications, Web pages, business intelligence reports, and syndicated content feeds within standardized information components called portlets. You can build a personalized portal to deliver all of your business information and applications to any device with Oracle9iAS Portal.

For information on configuring Oracle Portal for integration with Oracle Applications, see *OracleMetaLink* Note 146469.1.

Implementing Single Sign-On for Oracle Applications 11i with Login Server Authentication Using Oracle Internet Directory

Oracle Applications 11i now supports the use of Single Sign-On functionality via Oracle Portal, Oracle Login Server, and Oracle Internet Directory. Single Sign-On functionality allows users to access Oracle Applications 11i and other applications and services from Oracle Portal through a single user ID, without having to log into each application separately.

For information on this functionality, please refer to *OracleMetaLink* Note 150832.1.

Oracle Application Server with Oracle E-Business Suite Documentation Roadmap

This section lists documentation that may be useful when installing or upgrading Oracle Application Server with Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i environments.

The most current version of this section is published in Note 207159.1 on *OracleMetalink*. It is recommended that you obtain the latest version before proceeding with your installation.

The following documentation is available from *OracleMetalink*.

Integrating Oracle Application Server 10g with Oracle E-Business Suite

Installing Oracle Application Server 10g with Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i (Note 233436.1)

- Main document for installing technology stack infrastructure required to integrate a standalone Oracle Application Server 10g instance with one or more Release 11i instances
- Covers the use of Single Sign-On 9.0.4, Oracle Internet Directory 9.0.4, and Portal 9.0.4 with Release 11i
- After completion of installation steps in this note, continue with *OracleMetaLink* Note 261914.1.

Integrating Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i with Oracle Internet Directory and Oracle Single Sign-On (Note 261914.1)

- After completing the installation steps in *OracleMetaLink* Note 233436.1, continue with this documentation to configure the synchronization of user information between Oracle Internet Directory and Release 11i
- Covers various Identity Management scenarios for Release 11i, including basic Oracle Internet Directory use, and integration with third-party access management software and third-party LDAP directories

Installing and Upgrading 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2 with Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i

Installing Oracle9i Application Server with Oracle Applications 11i (Note 146468.1)

- Main document for installing and upgrading existing Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i environments to 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2
- Covers upgrade scenarios for all Release 11i environments

- This document is a prerequisite to enable Portal and Single Sign-on functionality for Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i

Oracle9i Application Server (9iAS) with Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i Frequently Asked Questions (Note 186981.1)

- Answers to Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) about Oracle9i Application Server and how it works with Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i
- Includes sections on 9iAS Installation, 9iAS Configuration, Discoverer, Portal, Oracle Internet Directory and Single Sign-On, and other issues

Oracle9i Application Server (9iAS) with Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i Troubleshooting (Note 216208.1)

- Includes sections on 9iAS Installation, 9iAS Configuration, Discoverer, Portal, Oracle Internet Directory and Single Sign-On, and other issues
- Reviews common issues, troubleshooting tips, and platform-specific issues for Sun Solaris, HP HP-UX, IBM AIX, and Linux

Advanced Configurations and Topologies for Enterprise Deployments of E-Business Suite 11i (Note 217368.1)

- Describes special procedures required to configure HTTP Layer Load-balancing via hardware-based load-balancers, DNS Layer load-balancing, JServ Layer load-balancing, and multiple Forms and Web servers in Release 11i environments upgraded to 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2
- Also includes guidelines for application tier server node scalability and sizing

Upgrading to JDK 1.3 with Oracle Applications 11i (Note 130091.1)

- Describes process for upgrading existing Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i environments to the latest Java Development Kit 1.3 release
- Required as part of the prerequisites for Installing Oracle9i Application Server with Oracle Applications 11i (Note 146468.1)

Upgrading to JDK 1.3 with Oracle Applications 11i Concurrent Processing Node (Note 202128.1)

- Describes process for upgrading existing Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i Concurrent Processing server nodes to the latest Java Development Kit 1.3 release
- Optional - may be applied after Upgrading to JDK 1.3 with Oracle Applications 11i (Note 130091.1)

Upgrading Oracle HTTP Server in Applications 11i (Note 161779.1)

- Oracle HTTP Server is upgraded to OHS 1.0.2.2 when upgrading existing Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i environments to 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2
- Customers who wish to upgrade to the latest version of Oracle HTTP Server without upgrading to 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2 may optionally use this document
- Describes upgrade to Oracle HTTP Server 1.0.2.1s, which includes Apache 1.3.12 with additional Oracle mods

- Customers who have already upgraded to 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2 following Installing Oracle9i Application Server with Oracle Applications 11i (Note 146468.1) must not use this note

HTTP Server Patches Certified to be used with E-Business Suite 11i (Note 254618.1)

- List of all rollup patches for Oracle HTTP Server certified for Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i environments
- Also lists the latest application server security and AutoConfig template patches certified for Release 11i

Debugging 9iAS Installations and Upgrades

Using AutoConfig to Manage System Configurations with Oracle Applications 11i (Note 165195.1)

- AutoConfig is installed during the migration of an existing Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i environment to 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2
- Describes AutoConfig concepts and systems administration guidelines for configuration management
- AutoConfig is mandatory for managing environments after they have been migrated to 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2

Running orainst in Motif Mode Causes Error: User Interface Failure (Note 170931.1)

Installation of 9iAS 1.x Fails to Install Discoverer on UNIX (Note 165516.1)

How To Manually Install Discoverer 3i or 4i With 9iAS on a UNIX Platform (Note 131662.1)

- Discussions of DISPLAY-related issues for UNIX platforms when running the Oracle Universal Installer
- Descriptions of issue background, debugging, and recovery tips

Enabling Portal and Single Sign-On functionality

Configuring Oracle Applications with Oracle Portal (Note 146469.1)

- Main document for installing and upgrading existing Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i environments to Portal 3i
- May optionally only be used after Installing Oracle9i Application Server with Oracle Applications 11i (Note 146468.1)
- This document is a prerequisite to enable Portal and Single Sign-on functionality for Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i

Oracle Portal Diagnostics Agent (Note 169490.1)

- Describes installation of a utility for debugging Portal installations
- Optional but recommended after Configuring Oracle Applications with Oracle Portal (Note 146469.1)

- Oracle Support may request reports from this tool before responding to Portal-related Technical Assistance Requests (TARs)

Configuring and Troubleshooting the Self Service Framework with Oracle Applications (Note 139863.1)

- Instructions and debugging tips for implementing the Oracle Applications Self Service Framework within an existing Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11*i* environment
- Required as part of the prerequisites for Configuring Oracle Applications with Oracle Portal (Note 146469.1)

Implementing Oracle Applications Synchronization with LDAP (Note 150832.1)

- Main document for implementing integration between Oracle Internet Directory (OID) and Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11*i*
- Supports unidirectional synchronization of user information from OID 3.0.1 or higher to FND_USER
- May optionally be used after Configuring Oracle Applications with Oracle Portal (Note 146469.1)

Oracle9iAS Single Sign-On Integration with Third-Party Single Sign-On Products (Note 176526.1)

- White paper describing fundamental concepts for integration of 9iAS Single Sign-On with third-party SSO providers
- Contains descriptions of technical APIs and a case study with sample code for integrating with Netegrity SiteMinder

Enabling Oracle Discoverer functionality

Using Discoverer 10g with Oracle Applications 11i (Note 257798.1)

- Main document for installing and integrating a standalone Oracle Discoverer 10g instance with Release 11*i*
- May be used after Installing Oracle Application Server 10g with Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11*i* (Note 233436.1)
- This document is a prerequisite to enable Oracle Discoverer 10g functionality for Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11*i*

Oracle Discoverer 4i with Oracle Applications 11i (Note 139516.1)

- Main document for installing and upgrading existing Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11*i* environments to Discoverer 4i
- Covers upgrade scenarios from Discoverer 3i and 4i for Business Intelligence System 11*i* and 1.2 installations
- May be used after Installing Oracle9i Application Server with Oracle Applications 11*i* (Note 146468.1)
- This document is a prerequisite to enable Discoverer functionality for Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11*i*

Oracle 9iAS 1.0.2.2 Discoverer: Best Practices for Scalability and Performance (Note 175287.1)

- Tips for optimizing Oracle Discoverer scalability and performance in high-volume environments
- Contains discussions about Oracle Discoverer system architectures, tips for structuring End-User Layers, optimizing workbooks, and much more
- May be used after Discoverer 4i with Oracle Applications 11i (Note 139516.1)

Oracle Discoverer Plus 4i Firewall Configuration (Note 183658.1)

Oracle Discoverer 4i Plus Firewall and SSL Tips (Note 159200.1)

- Tips for implementing Discoverer 4i with firewalls using Secure Socket Layer protocols
- May be used after Discoverer 4i with Oracle Applications 11i (Note 139516.1)

Related Technology Stack Areas

Upgrading Developer 6i with Oracle Applications 11i (Note 125767.1)

- Describes procedures for upgrading Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i environments to the latest certified Developer6i patchset

Upgrading Oracle JInitiator with Oracle Applications 11i (Note 124606.1)

- Describes procedures for upgrading Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i environments to the latest release of JInitiator
- Includes support for JDK 1.1 and JDK 1.3

Using Forms Listener Servlet with Oracle Applications 11i (Note 201340.1)

- Describes optional installation and implementation of Forms Listener Servlet support for Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i environments
- Does not require migration to 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2

Configuring an X Display Server for Applications on Unix Platforms (Note 181244.1)

- Procedures for implementing X Display Servers for Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i environments
- Includes discussion of Xvfb, VNC, and troubleshooting guidelines

Using UTF8 Character Set with Applications Release 11i (Note 134375.1)

- Describes process for supporting UTF-8 multilingual Unicode character sets in Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i environments
- Does not require migration to 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2

Other Documentation

Oracle Application Server Release Documentation (Oracle Technology Network)

- Master Oracle Application Server documentation library, including generic and platform-specific documentation
- Core documentation for Oracle HTTP Server, Portal, Discoverer, Single Sign-On, Oracle Internet Directory, Workflow, and other Application Server components
- **Important:** Generic installation and tuning-related documents in this library are not applicable to Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11*i* environments.
 - Oracle9i Application Server must be installed in Release 11*i* environments using Oracle*MetaLink* Notes 146468.1 , 146469.1 , and 139516.1 (see above)
 - Standalone Oracle Application Server 10g environments may optionally be integrated with Release 11*i* environments using Oracle*Metalink* Notes 233436.1 , 261914.1 , and 257798.1 (see above)
 - 9iAS tuning in Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11*i* environments must be performed via AutoConfig's Context Editor (Note 165195.1)

Using Oracle Discoverer 4i with Oracle Applications 11i

Overview

Oracle Discoverer 4i, a key component of Oracle9i Application Server's (Oracle9iAS) integrated business intelligence solution, is an intuitive ad hoc query, reporting, analysis, and Web publishing tool that allows business users at all levels of the organization to gain immediate access to information from data marts, data warehouses, and online transaction processing (OLTP) systems. Discoverer 4i enables report builders and analysts to create, modify, and execute ad hoc queries and reports. Casual users can view and navigate through predefined reports and graphs through business views that hide the complexity of the underlying data structures being reported upon.

Discoverer 4i is tightly integrated with Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i. Release 11i users can use Discoverer to analyze data from selected business areas in Financials, Operations, Human Resources, Purchasing, Process Manufacturing, Activity Based Management, and more.

This document describes how to install Discoverer 4i into an existing Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i environment. Installation of Discoverer 4i into an Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i environment consists of:

- Installation of Discoverer 4i with Oracle9i Application Server 1.0.2.2.2 on an application tier server node.
- Installation of Discoverer 4i Administration Edition on a Windows-based PC that will be used to maintain Discoverer.
- Creation of the Discoverer 4i End User Layer (EUL) on a database tier server node.
- Import of the Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i Discoverer content into the Discoverer 4i End User Layer.

For current Discoverer users, this document also describes how to upgrade an existing Discoverer End User Layer from Discoverer 3i to Discoverer 4i. There are several reasons to upgrade from Discoverer 3i to Discoverer 4i:

- More powerful analytic functions.
- Improved performance and scalability.
- New features such as charting.
- Capability to patch the End User Layer without having to drop and recreate it.

Caution: The procedures described in the following sections have significant effects on Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i environments and should be executed only by skilled Oracle E-Business Suite database or systems administrators. Users are strongly advised to make backups of their environments before executing any of the procedures noted, and to test their environments before executing these procedures in production environments. Users must log off the system while these changes are being applied.

Availability of Translations

Discoverer 4i content for Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i includes workbooks and the End User Layer for both regular Applications modules as well as Business Intelligence System (BIS) products such as Financials Intelligence and Purchasing Intelligence. This content is available only in US English, and there are no translations planned for other languages.

Obtain the Latest Documentation

The following instructions are current as of publication. For the most up-to-date information refer to *OracleMetaLink*, specifically Note 139516.1, entitled "Using Discoverer 4i with Oracle Applications 11i."

For a summary of installation and configuration documentation for Oracle9i Application Server and its associated components, see Note 207159.1 on *OracleMetaLink*, entitled "Oracle9i Application Server (9iAS) with Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i Documentation".

Typographical Conventions and Important Directory Locations

The following typographical conventions are used in this document:

Convention	Meaning
\	In examples of commands that you type online, a backward slash at the end of a line signifies that you must type the entire command on one line. <i>Do not type the backslash.</i>
monospace text	Monospace text represents command line text. Type this text exactly as shown.
< > or []	Text enclosed in angled or square brackets represents a variable. Substitute an appropriate value for the variable text. Do not type the brackets.
Directory paths	<p>Directory paths in this document are relative to the top level installation directory for the Oracle E-Business Suite.</p> <p>For example, if you installed the Oracle E-Business Suite under a directory named /my/appsinstall and are pointing to an Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i database named mytestdb, then <dbname>ora/iAS/Apache in this document will mean the fully qualified path: /my/appsinstall/mytestdbora/iAS/Apache</p>

Supported Architectures

Discoverer 4i is certified and supported with Oracle E-Business Suite 11i for two different architectures:

- In the ORACLE_HOME of an existing Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i application-tier server node.
- In a separate ORACLE_HOME on an existing application tier server node or on a stand-alone server, accessing an Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i database.

Release Versions

The following components must be used on the optional **standalone instance**:

- Oracle9i Application Server Release 1 Enterprise Edition, Release 1.0.2.2.2
- Discoverer 4i, Release 4.1.48.06

The following components must be used on the **Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i instance**:

- Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i, Release 11.5.1 to 11.5.9
- Oracle9i Application Server Release 1 Enterprise Edition, Release 1.0.2.2.2

Preinstallation Tasks

Reading the Discoverer 4i Configuration Guide

Chapter 2 of the *Oracle Discoverer 4i Configuration Guide for Oracle 9i Application Server* explains how to run, maintain, and support Oracle9iAS Discoverer. At minimum, review this chapter before continuing further.

Checking the Configuration of the Microsoft Windows PC

The Discoverer Administration Edition runs on a Windows PC, and is required to manage the Discoverer 4i End User Layer on the database-tier server node. The minimum memory requirements for the Windows PC running Discoverer Administration Edition are as follows:

- Physical RAM: 256 megabytes
- Page file size: 256 megabytes
- Total Virtual RAM: 512 megabytes

Obtaining the Oracle Internet Developer Suite 1.0.2.4 for Microsoft Windows

You need to obtain Discoverer Administration Edition, which is delivered as part of Internet Developer Suite 1.0.2.4 for Microsoft Windows. The CD-ROM is also included in Oracle E-Business Suite CD Packs for Release 11.5.7 and later. If you do not already have the Discoverer CD-ROM, order the CD Pack for the **Internet Developer Suite (1.0.2.4.1) for Microsoft Windows** from the Oracle Store.

Obtaining and Installing the MKS Toolkit for Developers for Microsoft Windows

Prebuilt Discoverer content for Oracle E-Business Release 11i, including business areas and workbooks, must be installed using the Windows-based Discoverer Administration Edition. This content is delivered in a series of Discoverer **.eex** loader files that must be loaded in a particular sequence using the **adupdeul.sh** shell script. Manual installation of these loader files is not certified. The **adupdeul.sh** shell script used to install the **.eex** files requires a UNIX-compatible shell interpreter and support for Perl scripts on the Windows PC where Discoverer Administration Edition is installed.

Oracle does not include a shell interpreter with Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i or Oracle9i Application Server. MKS Toolkit (<http://www.mkssoftware.com>), a third-party set of utilities that includes several UNIX shell interpreters and Perl, is recommended. MKS Toolkit for System Administrators, MKS Toolkit for Developers, or any other MKS Toolkit suites that include UNIX shell interpreters and Perl are sufficient to support installation of Discoverer 4i content for Release 11i.

You are strongly advised to use the certified and recommended MKS shell. Unexpected behavior may result from using uncertified third-party tools. Other third-party shell interpreters for Windows may also work, but have not been tested by Oracle. Cygwin (<http://www.cygwin.com>) has been tested and is NOT compatible with AD utilities due to **awk** issues. Microsoft Services for UNIX has been tested and is NOT compatible with the **adupdeul.sh** shell script.

Install MKS Toolkit on the same Windows PC where you intend to install Discoverer Administration Edition. Consult the MKS Toolkit documentation for complete installation instructions for this tool.

Preserving Discoverer 3i Customizations (Optional)

Important: Skip this step if you are installing Discoverer 4i for the first time.

If you are upgrading from Discoverer 3i to Discoverer 4i, you may wish to preserve your existing custom workbooks and business areas. Follow the instructions in this section if you have custom Discoverer 3i content that you wish to preserve and migrate to your new Discoverer 4i installation. Custom business areas built in Discoverer 3.1 may be exported to the new Discoverer 4i End User Layer if:

- They do not reference any Oracle delivered content.
- They use only Display Names which do not conflict with the Oracle delivered content, for example, by using a custom prefix.

To preserve existing Discoverer 3i customizations:

Exporting Custom Discoverer 3i Business Areas

1. Log in to the Discoverer Administration Edition 3.1 on the Discoverer Administration NT machine as the EUL schema owner:

`D:\orant\DISCVR31\DIS31ADM.EXE /CONNECT \ <3iSchema>/<password>@<db>`
2. Open your custom Discoverer 3i Business Area that you wish to save using the **File > Open** dialog.
3. Select **File > Export**.
4. Name the file <filename>.eex so that it is recognized as a Discoverer 3i custom Business Area. For example, **customGeneralLedgerBA3i.eex**.
5. Repeat this procedure for all of the custom Discoverer 3i business areas to be saved.

Saving Custom Discoverer 3i Workbooks

1. Log in to the Discoverer User Edition 3.1 on the Discoverer Administration NT machine as the Applications user who owns the workbook:

`D:\orant\DISCVR31\DIS31USR.EXE /APPS_USER /CONNECT <APPS \ User>: <APPS Responsibility>/<password>@<db>`
2. Open the custom Discoverer 3i workbook that you wish to save, using the **File > Open** dialog.
3. Select **File > Save**
4. Name the file <filename>.dis so that it is recognized as 3i custom workbook. For example, **customBillingsAnalysis3i.dis**.
5. Repeat this procedure for all of the custom Discoverer 3i workbooks to be saved.

Dropping the Existing Discoverer 3i End User Layer

1. Make a backup of your existing Discoverer 3i End User Layer by exporting the contents of the schema:

`% exp <3iSchema>/<password>@<db>`

2. Save the resulting **.dmp** export file in case you need to restore your Discoverer 3i End User Layer at a later date.
3. Log on to SQL*Plus to drop the existing Discoverer 3i End User Layer.

```
% sqlplus system/<password>@<db>
SQL> drop user <3iSchema> cascade;
```

Installation Tasks

Installing Oracle9i Application Server 1.0.2.2.2

Oracle 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2 includes Discoverer Server 4.1.37, Discoverer Plus 4.1.37, and Discoverer Viewer 4.1.37. Since that release, new versions of Discoverer 4i have been certified with Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i. This section lists the steps required to install Oracle 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2 and upgrade it to the latest Discoverer 4i release.

If your environment was created with the **Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11.5.10 Rapid Install**:

- Oracle9i Application Server 1.0.2.2.2 has been installed in your application tier server node.
- Discoverer Server 4.1.48, Discoverer Plus 4.1.48, and Discoverer Viewer 4.1.48 were installed as part of the 11.5.10 Rapid Install.
- Proceed to the next task.

If your environment was created with the **Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11.5.9 Rapid Install**:

- Oracle9i Application Server 1.0.2.2.2 has been installed in your application tier server node.
- Discoverer Server 4.1.46, Discoverer Plus 4.1.46, and Discoverer Viewer 4.1.46 were installed as part of the 11.5.9 Rapid Install
- Oracle recommends that you upgrade to the latest certified Discoverer 4i release.

If your environment was created with the **Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11.5.7 or 11.5.8 Rapid Install**:

- Oracle9i Application Server 1.0.2.2.2 has been installed in your application tier server node.
- Discoverer Server 4.1.41, Discoverer Plus 4.1.41, and Discoverer Viewer 4.1.41 have been installed as part of the 11.5.7 or 11.5.8 Rapid Install.
- Upgrade to the latest certified Discoverer 4i release.

If your environment was created with the **Rapid Install for Oracle E-Business Suite Releases 11.5.1 to 11.5.5**:

- You may install Discoverer 4i on your existing application tier server node.
To do so, you must migrate your application tier server node to Oracle9i Application Server 1.0.2.2.2.
- To migrate your existing application tier server node to 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2, follow the instructions in *OracleMetaLink* Note 146468.1.

- After you have completed the migration to 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2, your Discoverer 4i components need to be upgraded to the latest Discoverer 4i release.

If you wish to install **Discoverer 4i on a standalone server, or in multiple ORACLE_HOMEs on a single server** accessing an Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i database:

- You may install Oracle9i Application Server 1.0.2.2.2 Enterprise Edition on the standalone server by following the instructions in the *Oracle9i Application Server Installation Guide*.
- You must manually apply any necessary configuration settings, since AutoConfig is only supported in application tier server nodes.
- Customers wishing to install Discoverer 4i separately in multiple ORACLE_HOMEs may follow instructions in Oracle*MetaLink* Note 218111.1. Due to limitations in Registry and Services functionality on Windows platforms, Oracle*MetaLink* Note 2188111.1 applies only to UNIX-based installations.
- After you have installed 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2 on your standalone server or separate ORACLE_HOME, upgrade to the latest certified Discoverer 4i release.

If you **already have Discoverer 4i installed on a standalone server** accessing an Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i database and **wish to eliminate your standalone server**:

- You may eliminate your standalone server and install Discoverer 4i on your existing application tier server node.
- To upgrade your existing application tier server node to 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2, follow the instructions in Oracle*MetaLink* Note 146468.1.
- After you have completed the upgrade to 9iAS 1.0.2.2.2, upgrade to the latest Discoverer 4i release.

If you **already have Discoverer 4i installed on a standalone server** accessing an Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i database and **wish to leave it as a standalone server**:

- You may leave it as a standalone server.
- Upgrade to the latest certified Discoverer 4i release.

Applying the Latest Discoverer Plus and Viewer Patches

This step upgrades your existing environment to the latest certified Discoverer Plus and Viewer releases certified with Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i.

1. Download the appropriate platform-specific patch for your Discoverer Server node from Oracle*MetaLink*. See the following table for the latest certified patches for each operating system platform. For information about previous certified versions, refer to **Certify** on Oracle*MetaLink*. The minimum required version for E-Business Suite 11i is Discoverer 4.1.46. Oracle recommends that you upgrade to the latest certified version, Discoverer 4.1.48.06.

Operating System Platform

Discoverer 4i Plus/ Viewer	Sun Solaris (SPARC)	Microsoft Windows	HP HP/UX 11.0	IBM AIX	Linux
4.1.48.06 Production	3201614	3201610	3206022*	3207866**	3205678***

Platform-Specific Notes

- * Hewlett-Packard HP/UX 11.0

The first step of the readme to this patch instructs you to apply patch 1913940. Please skip this step. You don't need to apply patch 1913940 because this is already included in your Oracle9i Application Server 1.0.2.2.2 installation.

- ** IBM AIX

There is a known issue on IBM AIX. Bug 3216566. One-off patch 3216566 is available through Oracle Support.

- *** Linux

The first step of the readme to this patch instructs you to apply patch 1949194. Please skip this step. You don't need to apply patch 1949194 because this is already included in your Oracle9i Application Server 1.0.2.2.2 installation.

- Hewlett-Packard Tru64

Discoverer is not available for Tru64 platforms. You can use a Discoverer server installation on Windows. In this case you can either point the launcher profiles to the Windows PC where you install Discoverer, or you can install and configure Discoverer HTTP components on Tru64 and only use the Discoverer server component on Windows. The following patchset contains the necessary configuration:

2023515 README DISCOVERER PLUS AND VIEWER EDITION SUPPORT
ON COMPAQ TRU64

2. If you are patching Discoverer on UNIX, verify the variables in the following table are set correctly, manually editing the settings if needed.

Filename	Required Variable Setting
<8.0.6_ORACLE_HOME>/orainst/reg.tmp	HTTPDIR=<iAS_HOME>/Apache/ Apache/htdocs
<8.0.6_ORACLE_HOME>/orainst/varfile. tmp	HTTPDIR=<iAS_HOME>/Apache/ Apache/htdocs
<8.0.6_ORACLE_HOME>/orainst/varfile. tmp	discwb4=<8.0.6_ORACLE_HOME>/ discwb4

3. Follow the installation instructions provided in the patch readme to install the patch on your Discoverer Server.
4. Install additional Discoverer patches (Optional)

Discoverer 4.1.46.08 will not allow connecting to E-Business Suite 11i databases with Authentication mode set to Secure. Attempts to logon will result in error "Failed to connect to database - Unable to connect to Oracle Applications database".

Connections to E-Business Suite 11i databases with Authentication mode set to Secure will be supported with the next Discoverer patchset. If you need support for Authentication mode Secure before patch 4.1.49 becomes available, you may install the following one-off patches listed in the table below.

Operating System Platform

Discoverer 4i Plus/ Viewer	Sun Solaris (SPARC)	Microsoft Windows	HP HP/UX 11.0	IBM AIX	Linux
4.1.48.08 one-off patch	3451645	3451636	3454031	3472339	3453703
Security one-off patch	3633146	3648310	3625256	3625248	3703747

Download the appropriate platform-specific patches for your Discoverer Server node from Oracle Support and follow the installation instructions provided in the patch readme to install the patches on your Discoverer Server.

Reapplying Configuration Settings

The Discoverer patch applied in the previous step overwrites configuration settings in the following files:

- <iAS_HOME>/Apache/Apache/htdocs/discwb4/scripts/htmlvars.js
- <iAS_HOME>/Apache/Apache/htdocs/disco4iv/html/disco4iv.xml
- <ORACLE_806_HOME>/discwb4/discwb.sh

Choose one of the following two procedures to reapply your configuration settings based on whether you are using the AutoConfig infrastructure:

- If you are running Discoverer 4i on your application tier server node, go to "Reapplying Configuration Settings Using AutoConfig".
- If you are not using AutoConfig, go to "Reapplying Configuration Settings Manually".

Reapplying Configuration Settings Using AutoConfig

This section describes the procedure to configure your concurrent processing node if you have enabled AutoConfig in your environment. Your environment has been enabled for AutoConfig if you migrated your environment to Oracle9i Application Server 1.0.2.2.2 following Oracle *MetaLink* Note 146468.1 titled "Installing Oracle9i Application Server with Oracle Applications 11i." Environments created with the 11.5.7 Rapid Install and later releases are AutoConfig-enabled.

If you are not sure whether your environment is AutoConfig enabled, or you wish to migrate to AutoConfig, see MetaLink Note 165195.1 titled "Using AutoConfig to Manage System Configurations with Oracle Applications 11i".

Once you have enabled AutoConfig in your environment, proceed with the following steps to configure your application tier server node:

1. Update the Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i file system with the FND template files by applying patch 3416234.

2. Run the context editor:

```
<COMMON_TOP>/util/editcontext/editcontext
```

Specify variable disco_ver_comma, display name "Disco Version Comma" as comma separated version number of the Discoverer patch you have installed in the previous step. For example, specify "4,1,46,8". The Context Editor will update the variable in the Applications Context File <APPL_TOP>/admin/<database SID>.xml.

3. Check correctness of other Discoverer related context variables in the Applications Context File: Discoverer JVM Processes, Discoverer Servlet Port Range, Discoverer EUL prefix, FND_TOP, JInitiator CLSID, JInitiator version (commas), JInitiator version (dots).

4. Run AutoConfig to generate all configuration files for the APPL_TOP and the ORACLE_HOMEs in its supporting technology stack:

```
<COMMON_TOP>/admin/scripts/<CONTEXT_NAME>/adautocfg.sh
```

5. Continue to the next procedure

Reapplying Configuration Settings Manually

1. If are are not using AutoConfig, and you have installed Discoverer 4i in a separate ORACLE_HOME following OracleMetaLink Note 218111.1 , you must manually check and reapply all configuration settings as documented in that note.
2. Additionally, if you are not using AutoConfig, you need to manually check and reapply the configuration settings overwritten by the Discoverer 4i patches for the following files:

- <iAS_HOME>/Apache/Apache/htdocs/discwb4/scripts/htmlvars.js
- <ORACLE_806_HOME>/discwb4/discwb.sh

3. Restore the original JInitiator configuration settings in <iAS_HOME>/Apache/Apache/htdocs/discwb4/scripts/htmlvars.js

The Discoverer patch saved your old configuration in file **htmlvars.js.save**. Manually reapply your original configuration settings to the following entries in the new file **htmlvars.js**.

```
var ORAWEBDISCO_JINITSETUP = "ar ORAWEBDISCO_JINITSETUP = "<JInitiator executable>";
var ORAWEBDISCO_JINITVERSION = "<period separated version of JInitiator>";
var ORAWEBDISCO_JINITVERSIONIE = "<comma separated version of JInitiator>";
var ORAWEBDISCO_CLASSID = "<object id of the specified version of JInitiator>";
```

For more information on JInitiator please refer to OracleMetaLink Note 124606.1, titled "Upgrading Oracle JInitiator with Oracle Applications 11i".

4. Restore the original FND_TOP path setting in <ORACLE_806_HOME>/discwb4/discwb.sh

Ensure that the location of your **.dbc** file is correct; for details, see the step "Verify Location of Database Connection File". By default, Discoverer will attempt to find the **.dbc** file in the **\$FND_TOP/secure** directory. If you changed the environment variable **FND_TOP** in **discwb.sh**, you must manually check and reapply the correct setting in **<ORACLE_806_HOME>/discwb4/discwb.sh**:

FND_TOP=<absolute path to FND_TOP directory>

Installing Internet Developer Suite 1.0.2.4.1

Install the Discoverer 4i Administration Edition on the Windows PC that will be used to administer Discoverer.

Applying Discoverer Administration Edition Patches

Oracle9iAS Discoverer Plus and Oracle9iAS Discoverer Viewer will only be able to connect to an End User Layer that has been either upgraded or created with Discoverer Administration Edition Version of the same patch level. This step upgrades Discoverer Administration Edition to the latest certified Discoverer release.

1. Download patch 3201601, "Discoverer Version 4.1.48 Admin Desktop Production Patch on Win NT/95/2K" from *OracleMetaLink*. Follow the installation instructions provided in the patch readme file to install the patch on the Windows PC that will be used to administer Discoverer.
2. After successful installation of the latest certified Discoverer Administration Edition patch on the Windows PC, upgrade any existing Discoverer 4i End User Layers. Skip this step if you are implementing Discoverer 4i for the first time and hence do not yet have any Discoverer 4i End User Layer. To upgrade, start Discoverer Administration Edition and connect to the existing End User Layer as the EUL schema owner:

D:\orant\DISCVR4\DIS4ADM.EXE /CONNECT <4iSchema>/<password>@<db>

Discoverer Administration Edition will automatically detect whether an End User Layer upgrade is required. If an upgrade is required, you will be prompted to make a backup of the EUL tables. Upon confirmation that the backup has been made, the End User Layer upgrade is performed.

3. Apply additional Discoverer patches (optional)

Discoverer 4.1.46.08 will not allow connecting to E-Business Suite 11i databases with Authentication mode set to Secure. Attempts to logon will result in error "Failed to connect to database - Unable to connect to Oracle Applications database".

Connections to E-Business Suite 11i databases with Authentication mode set to Secure will be supported with the next Discoverer patchset. If you need support for Authentication mode Secure before patch 4.1.49 becomes available, you may install the following one-off patches.

- Patch 3451630, "Discoverer Patch Version 4.1.48.08.00 Admin Desktop Oneoff Patch"
- Patch 3622870, "APPS: Fix for Secure Connection Bug 3559523 on Admin/Desktop"

Download the patches from Oracle Support and follow the installation instructions provided in the patch readme file to install the patches on your Discoverer Administration Server.

Setting Windows Registry Settings

Important: This procedure contains information about modifying the Microsoft Windows registry. Before you modify the Windows registry, back it up and make sure that you understand how to restore it if a problem occurs. For information about how to back up, restore, and edit the registry, see the following article number in the Microsoft Knowledge Base (<http://support.microsoft.com/>):

Q256986 Description of the Microsoft Windows Registry

On the Windows PC running Discoverer Administration Edition:

1. Back up your current Microsoft Windows Registry
2. Open the Windows Registry editor and create or update the following registry keys:

Registry Key	Data Type	Value
HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Oracle\Discoverer4\ Database\EnableTriggers	REG_DWORD	1
HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Oracle\Discoverer4\ Database\Default PreserveDisplay PropertyForRefresh	REG_DWORD	1

Specifying the Connect Dialog for Oracle Applications Users

If you use the Discoverer login page for direct login using Oracle Applications User/Password authentication, you must set up the Connect dialog to display the Applications User check box.

1. Open the file `<ORACLE_806_HOME>/discwb4/util/pref.txt` in a text editor.
2. Set the **DefaultUserTypeIsApps** preference to "1".
3. Set the **ShowUserTypeChoice** preference to "1".
4. Save the updated `pref.txt` file.
5. On UNIX, run the script `<ORACLE_806_HOME>/discwb4/util/applypreferences.sh`
6. Stop and restart the **OracleDiscoverer4i** service to refresh the environment with the updated preferences.

For details about other options that may be set for direct login, please refer to Appendix A of the *Oracle Discoverer 4i Configuration Guide for Oracle 9i Application Server*.

Note: Users may enter their user ID and Applications responsibility in the Connect dialog, using the format:

UserID:<Responsibility>

If you append a colon (:) immediately after the user in the Discoverer Connect dialog without specifying a responsibility after the colon, Discoverer will always try to establish a connection as Oracle

Applications user and pop up a list of valid Applications responsibilities for that Applications user.

Creating a New Discoverer 4i End User Layer

We recommend that you create a new tablespace to store database objects for Discoverer in your Oracle Applications database.

1. Execute this step on your database tier with your environment pointing to your database ORACLE_HOME. Source the file [DB_ORACLE_HOME]/<dbname>.env to set the environment correctly.
2. Start SQL*Plus and create a tablespace named 'DISCOVERER' with an initial size of 200 megabytes, using the absolute path to the subdirectory where your datafiles are located:

```
% sqlplus /NOLOG
SQL> connect sys/<sys_password> as sysdba
SQL> create tablespace DISCOVERER datafile \
      '[DB_ORACLE_HOME]/dbf/discoverer01.dbf' size 200M reuse \
      extent management local uniform size 128K;
SQL> / Statement Processed
```

3. Exit SQL*Plus:

```
SQL> quit
```
4. Execute this step on the Microsoft Windows PC where Discoverer Administration Edition is installed. Create the new Discoverer 4i End User Layer on the database tier by using the following command:

```
D:\orant\DISCVR4\DIS4ADM.EXE
/CREATE_EUL
/APPS_MODE
/CONNECT          system/<password>@<db>
/USER             <EUL_User_Prefix>_US
/PASSWORD         <password>
/DEFAULT_TABLESPACE <default tablespace>
/TEMPORARY_TABLESPACE <temp tablespace>
/SET_EUL_LANGUAGE US
/APPS_GRANT_DETAILS <FNDNAM>/<FNDNAM password>
/SHOW_PROGRESS
```

This command should be entered on a single command line -- it is shown above on separate lines with extra spaces for ease of reference only. Note that the Discoverer 4i content for the Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i is available in English only, so you must use language code **US** for the /USER and /SET_EUL_LANGUAGE parameters.

For example:

```
D:\orant\DISCVR4\DIS4ADM.EXE /CREATE_EUL /APPS_MODE /CONNECT \ sy
stem/manager@cus115 /USER EUL4_US /PASSWORD EUL4PW \ /DEFAULT_TABL
ESPACE discoverer /TEMPORARY_TABLESPACE temp \ SET_EUL_LANGUAGE US
/APPS_GRANT_DETAILS apps/apps /SHOW_PROGRESS
```

Postinstallation Tasks

Verifying ICX Profiles for Discoverer

The AutoConfig tool for Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i environments automatically configures Discoverer 4i profile options to generate Discoverer URLs automatically. System administrators may wish to check that the following profile options have been set correctly if troubleshooting is required.

1. Log into Oracle Applications Release 11i with the System Administrator responsibility.
2. Navigate to the **Profile > System** form.
3. Query the **%DISCOVERER%** profile options.
4. Verify the following ICX profiles in Oracle Applications:

Profile	Description	Value
ICX_DISCOVERER_RELEASE	ICX: Discoverer Release 1 digit number specifying the Discoverer release	4
ICX_DISCOVERER_LAUNCHER	ICX: Discoverer Launcher URL that points to the Discoverer Server Launch page	http://<HTTP Server>:<Port>/ discwb4/html/ discolaunch.htm ?Connect=[APPS_SECURE]
ICX_DISCOVERER_VIEWER_LAUNCHER	ICX: Discoverer Viewer Launcher URL that points to the Discoverer Viewer Servlet	http://<HTTP Server>:<Port>/ discoverer4i/viewer/ ?Connect=[APPS_SECURE]
ICX_DISCOVERER_USE_VIEWER	ICX: Discoverer Use Viewer Specify whether Discoverer Viewer should be launched instead of Discoverer Plus (default).	Y or N
ICX_DEFAULT_EUL	ICX: Discoverer End User Layer Schema Prefix This is the EULprefix. This EULprefix in combination with the Language code make up the EUL owner at runtime.	EUL

Profile	Description	Value
ICX_DISCOVERER_EUL_LANGUAGE	<p>ICX: Discoverer End User Layer Language Override</p> <p>Since the EUL content is currently available in US English only, it is possible to override the user's general language preference for the Discoverer End User Layer using this profile option. The specified EUL language will be used regardless of the individual user's language preferences. This profile is available with the fix for bug 2348329, included with ICX patch 2630750.</p> <p>This profile does not affect the NLS Language parameters passed to Discoverer. The Discoverer User Interface will still appear according to the users ICX_LANGUAGE and ICX_TERRITORY profiles. Note, the User Interface language will only change for valid combinations of ICX_LANGUAGE and ICX_TERRITORY.</p>	US
ICX_DISCOVERER_PARAMETERS	<p>ICX: Discoverer Parameters</p> <p>This profile may be used to optionally pass additional URL parameters to Discoverer. See <i>Oracle MetaLink</i> Note 186120.1.</p>	

Note: You may switch the ICX_DEFAULT_EUL profile at responsibility level if you are planning to implement multiple EULs.

For example you might implement two EULs:

- EUL4_US for OLTP
- EUL4EDW_US for Embedded Data Warehouse

Then you can set ICX_DEFAULT_EUL to "EUL4EDW" for Embedded Data Warehouse responsibilities like "Financials Intelligence - Enterprise Data Warehouse". Those responsibilities will then use the Embedded Data Warehouse End User Layer.

If you implement multiple EULs, please apply ICX patch 2154949 or later to make sure Discoverer Viewer always connects to the correct End User Layer as specified in the ICX_DEFAULT_EUL profile option.

Verifying the Location of Database Connection File

Discoverer 4i supports Single Sign-On functionality with Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i. To support Single Sign-On, Discoverer needs access to the Database Connection (.dbc) file for the database you wish to connect to. A .dbc file is a text file which stores all the information required to connect to a particular database.

This file resides in directory `$FND_TOP/secure`. The naming convention for the .dbc file is `<database host name>_<two_task>.dbc`.

The name is derived from:

```
select lower(host_name) || '_' || lower(instance_name) from v$instance;
```

By default, Discoverer will attempt to find the .dbc file in the `$FND_TOP/secure` directory.

1. Make sure `$FND_TOP` is set correctly for the user who starts the Discoverer service.
2. On Solaris you can change the variable `FND_TOP` in the script `<8.0.6OracleHome>/discwb4/discwb.sh`.
3. On Windows NT, make sure the `FND_TOP` variable is set as a Windows System Variable.

Setting Applications Users to be Locally Managed in Oracle E-Business Suite 11i (Conditional)

You must perform this step if both of the following conditions apply:

- You wish to implement Single Sign-On for Release 11i with Login Server Authentication using Oracle Internet Directory following the steps in *Oracle MetaLink* Note 150832.1
- You wish to allow Discoverer users to logon using the Discoverer login page and access Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i Discoverer content

After implementing Login Server Authentication using Oracle Internet Directory, the Discoverer login page for direct login using Oracle Applications User/Password will only work for users whose passwords are maintained in the Oracle E-Business Suite 11i **FND_USER** user directory. The Discoverer login page will not work for users exclusively maintained in Oracle Internet Directory because passwords are not propagated from Oracle Internet Directory to Oracle E-Business Suite 11i **FND_USER** user directory.

Attempts to logon in such case using the Discoverer login page will result in "Error Authentication Failed. (Failed to connect to database - Unable to connect to Oracle Applications database: invalid username/password.)"

Integrated single-sign-on links to Discoverer from within E-Business Suite Release 11i pages will continue to work for all users, before and after Oracle Internet Directory migration.

1. Log in to Release 11i with the System Administrator responsibility
2. Navigate to the **Profile > System** form
3. For each Discoverer user account that will be permitted to use the Discoverer login page, set the **Applications SSO Login Type** to **LOCAL**.

Applying Necessary Oracle Applications Interoperability Patches Using AutoPatch

If your environment is at Oracle Applications Release 11.5.7 or higher, you can skip this step. The 11.5.7 Maintenance Pack and higher includes all necessary interoperability patches and prerequisite patches described in this step.

1. Check **max_extents** for default rollback segments

The import and the refresh processes for the entire Applications 11i End User Layer -- the complete set of **.eex** files -- are large database transactions. Check that the **default rollback segment** where the Discoverer End User Layer is to be installed is large enough to support rolling back a 70 MB transaction at minimum:

1. Log on to SQL*Plus:

```
% sqlplus system/<password>@<db>
```

2. Issue the following SQL command:

```
SQL> select SEGMENT_NAME, TABLESPACE_NAME, BYTES, BLOCKS, EXTENTS  
       \  
       from DBA_SEGMENTS where SEGMENT_TYPE = 'ROLLBACK';
```

3. If the rollback segment for the tablespace where you plan to install the Discoverer End User Layer is less than 70 MB, you must either alter it or create a new rollback segment. Procedures for accomplishing this will vary depending upon your database configuration; see the *Administrator's Guide* for your Oracle database for more details.

2. Apply the Discoverer 4i baseline patch 1834171 using AutoPatch

The Discoverer 4i baseline patch contains a series of Discoverer loader files (**.eex** files) that deliver the latest Discoverer content for Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i. These loader files are staged in this step, and imported to the Discoverer End User Layer on the database tier in a procedure that is described later in this document.

1. Download the Discoverer 4i baseline patch 1834171 from *OracleMetaLink*.
2. Check the readme file for patch 1834171 for any necessary prerequisite patches to be applied.
3. Download and apply the required prerequisite patches using AutoPatch.
4. Follow the instructions in the readme file for patch 1834171 to apply patch 1834171

After you have applied the patches successfully, you will find the shell script **adupdeul.sh** in your **\$AU_TOP/discover/** directory and all Discoverer 4i **.eex** files in your **\$AU_TOP/discover/US** directory.

Note: Note The file **biseul.eex** which contained the entire Discoverer 3i export is obsolete with migration to Discoverer 4i. The collection of Discoverer 4i **.eex** files in patch 1834171 supersedes the file **biseul.eex**. Do not attempt to manually import **biseul.eex** into the new Discoverer 4i EUL.

Regenerating Your Business Views

Most of the Discoverer folders delivered as part of Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i Discoverer content are based on Business Views. Business Views hide the complexity

of the underlying Release 11i data model from non-technical users. Before you import or refresh .eex files, you must regenerate all Business Views. This will enable the Discoverer import or refresh process to pull in translated prompts for the Key and Descriptive Flexfields of your Business Views into your End User Layer. Make sure that every flexfield structure has at least one valid segment, and that all flexfields are frozen and compiled.

1. Apply Business View Generator patch 2921686 using AutoPatch.
 1. Download the Business View Generator patch 2921686 from Oracle Metalink
 2. Follow the instructions in the readme to apply the patch
2. Regenerate your Business Views by running the "Generate Business Views by Application" concurrent program using the Business View Setup responsibility. For details, refer to the *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*.
3. After regeneration of the Business Views has been completed, check the Business View Generator output file. It should not contain any errors.
4. Recompile all objects in the APPS schema using **adadmin**.
5. Ensure the BIS views exist and all BIS views are valid by issuing the following command in SQL*Plus:

```
% sqlplus apps/<password>@<db>
SQL> select object_name from user_objects
      where object_type = 'VIEW' and
      status = 'INVALID' and
      ( object_name like '%FV_%' or object_name like '%FG_%' or
        object_name like '%BV_%' or object_name like '%BG_%' );
```

If necessary, recompile those objects so that all views are valid. The Discoverer refresh process may stop if a select statement from a invalid BIS View causes the following error:

```
ORA-04063: view "APPS.<View Name>"
```

Note: These errors must be resolved before you can successfully proceed with the next steps, including import and refresh of the Discoverer End User Layer. Discoverer Administration Edition will drop End User Layer objects with dependencies on invalid Applications objects during the refresh process.

Setting Up Applications User/Responsibility for EUL Administration: SYSADMIN/System Administrator

The Release 11i System Administrator account must be granted permission to update and alter Discoverer 4i content. These permissions are granted using the Discoverer Administration Edition on the Windows PC.

1. Log in to the Discoverer Administration Edition 4.1 as EUL schema owner:


```
D:\orant\DISCVR4\DIS4ADM.EXE /CONNECT <4ischema>/<password>@<db>
```
2. Grant the EUL Administration privileges to SYSADMIN/System Administrator
 1. Start the Privileges dialog at **Tools > Privileges**. From the Privileges tab, select the Applications user **SYSADMIN** from the pull-down menu
 2. In the Privilege window, select the checkboxes for:
 - Administration

- Format Business Area
 - Create/Edit Business Area
 - Create Summaries
 - Set Privilege
 - Manage Schedule Workbook
3. Click the Apply button.
 4. Repeat the same grant for the Oracle Applications responsibility **System Administrator**.

For all further EUL Administration activities, you must use the Oracle Applications User/Responsibility SYSADMIN/System Administrator. This Applications user must import and own the Workbooks and Business Areas of all future Discoverer 4i patches and share them as applicable with other Applications users/responsibilities.

3. Make sure the user **SYSADMIN** has full security access to all Business Areas.

This step is not necessary for the first import into a new EUL, because the EUL does not contain any Business Areas at that point. However, for all subsequent future imports, ensure that the user SYSADMIN has full access to all Business Areas.

1. Start the Security dialog at **Tools > Security**. From the **Users > Business Area** tab, select the Applications user **SYSADMIN** from the pull-down menu
2. Move all available Business Areas to the list of Selected Business Areas. Select the **Allow Administration** check box for all Business Areas.
3. Click the Apply button

Mapping the Windows PC to \$AU_TOP/discover

From the Windows PC where Discoverer Administration Edition is installed, either map a drive to the **\$AU_TOP/discover/** directory, or copy the entire directory **\$AU_TOP/discover/** to the Windows PC. This will include the import shell script **\$AU_TOP/discover/adupdeul.sh** and all language-specific subdirectories containing the set of .eex files.

If you are unable to map UNIX drives to your Windows PC, you can alternately zip and FTP the entire **\$AU_TOP/discover** directory. In this case, make sure that you include the directory structure and preserve it when you unzip the file on the Windows PC.

For example, on UNIX:

```
% cd $AU_TOP
zip -r ~/discover.zip discover
```

The **-r** option ensures that the subdirectory structure is included.

For example, on Windows:

```
ftp <your UNIX machine> bin
get ~/discover.zip
```

Use WinZip or an equivalent Windows-based zip utility to extract the zip file into a directory (for example, **D:\au_top**). Ensure that you have the option "**Use folder names**" selected. Then you can start the import process using **adupdeul.sh** in the **D:\au_top\discover** directory.

Importing Discoverer 4i Content for Release 11i Using adupdeul.sh mode=complete

In this step, you will use Discoverer Administration Edition on the Windows PC to import the Discoverer 4i loader files (.eex files) into the Discoverer End User Layer (created in Step 4).

1. Start MKS Toolkit on the Windows PC and navigate to the **.../discover/** directory where **adupdeul.sh** is located.
2. Start the import process of the Discoverer 4i loader files (.eex files) using the shell script **adupdeul.sh**.

Syntax for the adupdeul script:

```
% sh adupdeul.sh
connect=<APPS admin user>/<password>@<two_task>
resp=<APPS administrator responsibility>
gwyuid=<APPS GWYUID>
fndnam=<APPS FNDNAM>
secgroup=<secgroup>
topdir=<topdir>
language=<US>
eulprefix=<eulprefix>
[iashome=<iashome>]
[exedir=<exedir>]
[eultype=<eultype>]
[mode=<mode>]
[driver=<driver>]
[filelist=<filelist>]
[logfile=<logfile>]
[parfile=<parfile>]
```

Parameter descriptions are as follows:

secgroup	APPS responsibility security group
topdir	Top level directory where Discoverer files are available
iashome	Oracle Application Server 10g Business Intelligence node Oracle Home directory Required on UNIX platforms
exedir	Directory where Discoverer executables are located Required on Windows platforms
eulprefix	EUL schema prefix; for example, use eulprefix=US for schema EUL_US
eultype	OLTP - default, for standard Applications 11i Discoverer content EDW - for Enterprise Data Warehouse Discoverer content Use eultype=OLTP to import the Discoverer 10g content for Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i
mode	COMPLETE - import all Discoverer content DRIVER - default, import specific subset of files FILELIST - import specific subset of files

For the initial full import of the Discoverer 10g baseline files delivered by patch 1834171 , use **mode=complete**. This mode will upload all .eex files (*.eex) from the **.../discover/** directory into the Discoverer End User Layer.

driver	Specifies a comma-separated list of driver files to be loaded. This parameter is required if mode=DRIVER
filelist	Specifies the filename of a file containing a list of files to be loaded. This parameter is required if mode=FILELIST
logfile	Log file where the adupdeul.sh script logs the result of the import process. The default file name is adupdeul.log .
parfile	File name of a command-line parameter file containing entries of the form PARAMETER=VALUE . Parameters specified at the command line take precedence over those specified in the parameter file.

Note: All parameters must be specified on a single command line or in a parameter file. Name-value pairs must not contain spaces. For example, **PARAMETER=VALUE** is acceptable. **PARAMETER = VALUE** will generate errors.

Example

1. Map or copy the directory **\$AU_TOP/discover** as **/user1/au_top/discover**
`cd /user1/au_top/discover` (where **adupdeul.sh** is located)
2. Start the full import of all .eex files in **topdir/US**, where **topdir** is specified as a parameter

```
sh adupdeul.sh \
  connect=sysadmin/sysadmin-password@db \
  resp="System Administrator" \
  gwyuid=APPLSYSPUB/PUB \
  fndnam=APPS \
  secgroup="Standard" \
  topdir=/user1/au_top/discover \
  language=US \
  eulprefix=EUL \
  eultype=OLTP \
  mode=complete \
  iashome=/oracle/ias/bi \
  logfile=import_complete_eul_us_cust115.log
```

(The above example is displayed on multiple lines for clarity; do not type the backslash.)

3. Performance of the import process greatly depends on available resources (e.g. available virtual and physical memory) on your Windows PC where Discoverer

Administration Edition is installed, and on network latency between the Windows PC and the database. Depending on these factors, the import process may take less than one hour or up to several hours to complete for the entire set of Discoverer 4i baseline .eex files. To minimize overhead from network latency during the import process, it is strongly recommended that Discoverer Administration Edition be installed on a PC that is close to the database server and has a fast network connection.

4. Check the logfile after import. This should be a clean import logfile. You should be able to see that the import utility exited with status 0 and the logfile contains the message "Import completed successfully".
5. As Release 11i products continually update and improve support for Discoverer in subsequent releases, it will be necessary to install additional Discoverer 4i loader files after this initial installation. Please refer to the section on additional Discoverer 4i patches for details on importing subsequent patches using mode=driver.

You may see the following message in a future import log when installing patches to your existing Discoverer End User Layer:

<topdir>\<language>\<file>.eex: The import process did not import or modify any data

You can safely ignore this message. It provides information that <file>.eex is an empty obsolete file and does not modify any data during import.

Refreshing the Discoverer 4i End User Layer

After the Discoverer 4i content for Release 11i has been imported into the Discoverer End User Layer on the database tier, the End User Layer must be refreshed against the Release 11i data model. This ensures that all references between business areas, folders, workbooks, business views, flexfields, and Release 11i database objects are valid.

1. Log in to Discoverer Administration Edition 4.1 as the Oracle Applications user that was granted full administration privileges and security:

```
D:\orant\DISCVR4\DIS4ADM.EXE /CONNECT "SYSADMIN:System Administrator/<password>@<db>" /EUL <EULprefix>_US
```

Note: For the refresh process you must use the Applications User/Responsibility to log on rather than the EUL database schema owner. The EUL database schema owner doesn't have the necessary grants for the APPS schema and the refresh process would drop Discoverer folders.

2. Use the **Help > About Discoverer...** dialog to make sure you are connected to the correct End User Layer (<EULprefix>_<Lang>). You can change the EUL in the dialog **Tools > Options > Default EUL**.
3. Open all Business Areas.
4. Select all Business Areas. Use **Shift** or **Ctrl** keys in combination with the mouse to perform a multiple select.
5. Use **File > Refresh** to start the Refresh Wizard. Make sure the option "On-line dictionary" is checked, then click the **Finish** button.
6. The refresh process will start with "Analyzing differences..." and will show a list of refresh actions. Most of these are new flexfield items that will be added to the

existing folders in the End User Layer. Start the refresh process by clicking **OK** for this dialog.

7. During refresh the Discoverer Administration will show a progress window stating **"Refreshing EUL objects..."**

For all Business Areas expect several hours for the refresh process to complete, depending on your flexfield structure. When the refresh process completes, Discoverer Administration Edition closes the progress window. Your End User Layer is now refreshed. Flexfield columns have been pulled in to the folders using the flexfield prompts in the language of the EUL as Item Display Names.

Granting EUL User Privileges for Oracle Applications Responsibilities

1. On the Windows PC, log in to the Discoverer Administration Edition 4.1 as the End User Layer schema owner:

```
D:\orant\DISCVR4\DIS4ADM.EXE /CONNECT \ <4ischema>/<password>@<db>
```

2. Grant End User Layer User Privileges

Open the Privileges dialog by going to **Tools > Privileges**. Select the **User Edition** check box and all privilege boxes under **User Edition**. Grant those privileges to the following Oracle Applications responsibilities:

- ABM Intelligence
- Corporate Contracts Manager
- Corporate Contracts User
- Contracts Intelligence EUL Administrator
- Contracts Intelligence Workbook Administrator
- Financials Intelligence
- Human Resources Intelligence
- iStore Administrator
- Marketing Intelligence
- Operations Intelligence
- Organization Manager
- Process Manufacturing Intelligence (SSWA)
- Project Manufacturing Manager
- Project Manager
- Project Super User
- Public Sector Budgeting Super User
- Purchasing Intelligence
- Resource Manager
- Staffing Manager
- Supply Chain Intelligence - Advanced Planning

Granting Access to Responsibilities, Users, and Workbooks

Individual Discoverer users may be granted access to specific Discoverer workbooks and Release 11i responsibilities, which in turn provide access to Discoverer business areas. Discoverer Administration Edition is used to associate business area access with Release 11i responsibilities, and to identify workbook access privileges for responsibilities and users.

The procedures described in this step may be used as guidelines for planning your Discoverer reporting security. Your Discoverer reporting strategy may be defined to reflect your corporate data security strategy, policies, and business requirements. Discoverer security is flexible and highly granular, and you may wish to provide broader access for specific individuals who need to be able to see data across organizational boundaries.

For example, you may wish for some Financial analysts to have access to all Financials Intelligence business areas, such as Accounts Payables and Accounts Receivables. To do this, grant access to all of the Financials Intelligence business areas to the Financials Intelligence responsibility. The Financials Intelligence responsibility may then be granted to the individual Financial analysts who should have access to those areas.

Note: If you have upgraded to the Oracle Applications 11.5.8 Maintenance Pack or a later Maintenance Pack release, you can skip this step. The 11.5.8 Maintenance Pack and later Maintenance Pack releases already include all necessary security grants and workbook sharing for the pre-seeded Oracle Applications responsibilities. If you wish to grant security access for Business Areas to Oracle Application users and responsibilities in addition to the grants that are provided with the 11.5.8 Maintenance Pack and later, you may choose to follow the procedures listed in this step.

Granting Security and Privileges Using Discoverer Administration Edition

For information about delivered Business Areas with Oracle E-Business Intelligence Suite, refer to the *Oracle Business Intelligence System Implementation Guide*. You must grant security access to the Oracle Applications responsibilities you would like to use for each Business Area.

1. Log in to the Discoverer Administration Edition 4.1 as the Applications User who was granted full Administration Privileges and Security:

`D:\orant\DISCVR4\DIS4ADM.EXE /CONNECT "SYSADMIN:System Administrator/<password>@<db>" /EUL <EULprefix>_<Lang>`
2. Use the **Help > About Discoverer...** dialog to make sure you are connected to the correct End User Layer (<EULprefix>_<Lang> -- compare the import options used above). You can change the EUL in the dialog **Tools > Options > Default EUL**.
3. At **Tools > Privileges**, check the **User Edition** privileges for all Applications users/responsibilities who should be allowed to open workbooks.
4. At **Tools > Security**, grant Business Area access to Applications users/responsibilities who should be allowed to query the various Business Areas.

For example, grant the following Business Area access to the following Oracle Applications responsibilities, as shown in the table:

Oracle Applications Responsibility	Business Area
ABM Intelligence	ABM Activities ABM Cost Objects ABM Departments ABM Materials
Engineering Intelligence	Bills Of Material & Engineering Items
Financials Intelligence	Accounts Payables
Financials Intelligence - Vision Operations (USA)	Accounts Receivables Billing Analysis Cash Management Fixed Assets General Ledger General Ledger BIS Global Accounting Engine Projects Project Analysis Receipt Analysis Treasury Analysis
Human Resources Intelligence	Human Resources Lookups for Human Resources Training Administration
Marketing Intelligence	Marketing Online Marketing Online - Reports
Operations Intelligence	Cost Management Inventory Inventory Value Added Margin Analysis MRP Analysis for Planning Planning Quality Quality Data Collection Analysis Revenue Analysis Work in Process Business Intelligence Work in Process Business Views
Process Manufacturing Intelligence (SSWA)	Process Manufacturing
Project Manufacturing Manager	Project Manufacturing

Oracle Applications Responsibility	Business Area
Public Sector Budgeting Super User	Public Sector Budgeting - Core Public Sector Budgeting - Functional
Purchasing Intelligence	Purchasing
Supply Chain Intelligence	Advanced Pricing Order Management Shipping

Sharing Workbooks Using Discoverer Plus Edition

You must grant shared workbook access to the Oracle Applications responsibilities to be used for workbook analysis.

1. Log in to the Discoverer User Edition 4.1 as the Applications Administration user who earlier imported the .eex files.

```
D:\orant\DISCVR4\DIS4USR.EXE /APPS_USER /CONNECT \ "SYSADMIN:System Administrator/<password>@<db>" /EUL <EULprefix>_<Lang>
```

2. Use the **Help > About Discoverer...** dialog to make sure you are connected to the correct End User Layer (<EUL prefix>_<Lang>). You can change the EUL at **Tools > Options > EUL**.
3. In the **File > Manage Workbooks... > Sharing...** dialog, share the workbooks to the Applications Users/Responsibilities who should be allowed to open the various workbooks.

For example, you might share the workbooks with Oracle Applications responsibilities as shown in the following table:

Oracle Applications Responsibility	Workbook
ABM Intelligence	ABM: Activity Cost and Rate Data ABM: Cost Object Cost and Transaction Data ABM: Department Financial and Statistical Data ABM: Export Templates ABM: Material Cost and Transaction Data
Financials Intelligence	Billing Analysis
Financials Intelligence - Vision Operations (USA) (the Vision responsibility is only available with the Vision demonstration database)	Cash Flow Analysis GL Analysis Limit Utilization Analysis Net Position Analysis Project Cost Analysis Project Margin Analysis Project Revenue Analysis Receipts Analysis

Oracle Applications Responsibility	Workbook
Human Resources Intelligence	Application Analysis Delegate Chargeback Analysis Event Ranking Analysis Event Resource Analysis External Student Training Success Rates Analysis HR Setup Analysis Internal Student Training Success Rates Analysis Job and Position Analysis Person/ Assignment History Analysis Recruitment Efficiency Analysis Recruitment Time Analysis Salary Change Analysis Salary Survey Analysis Skills Analysis Terminated Application Analysis Training Cost and Revenue Analysis Training Course Ranking by Amount Analysis Training Success Rates Analysis US Compliance Analysis Workforce Budget Analysis Workforce Composition Analysis Workforce Turnover Analysis
Operations Intelligence	Inventory Analysis MRP Forecast Analysis Product Margin Analysis Product Revenue Analysis Product Quality Analysis Quality Global Results Analysis Quality Non Conformance Analysis Resource Utilization Analysis
Process Manufacturing Intelligence (SSWA)	OPM Cost Analysis OPM Lot Genealogy Analysis OPM Margin Analysis OPM Product Analysis OPM Production Analysis
Purchasing Intelligence	Contract Savings

Testing Discoverer Responsibilities and Workbooks

1. Log in to Oracle E-Business Suite Release 11i with a user ID that has been granted one of the responsibilities defined above.
2. Open the Release 11i workbooks assigned to that responsibility and verify that they can retrieve and display data.
3. Repeat for each responsibility that has been defined.

Importing Saved Discoverer 3i Customizations (Optional)

If you have preserved any Discoverer 3i custom content in Step 1 you can import those into the new Discoverer 4i End User Layer.

Importing Custom Discoverer 3i Business Areas

1. Log in to the Discoverer Administration Edition 4.1 as an Applications User who was granted full Administration Privileges and Security:

`D:\orant\DISCVR4\DIS4ADM.EXE /CONNECT "SYSADMIN:System Administrator/<password>@<db>" /EUL <EULprefix>_<Lang>`
2. Use the **Help - About Discoverer...** dialog to make sure you are connected to the correct End User Layer (<EULprefix>_<Lang>). You can change the EUL at **Tools > Options > Default EUL**.
3. Select **File > Import**.

In the **Import Wizard**, identify the .eex files created earlier, such as **customGeneralLedgerBA3i.eex**.
4. In the next dialog, **Import Wizard Step 2**, choose the option "**Do not import the matching object.**" This ensures that custom entities from your Discoverer 3i business areas with names that duplicate items shipped by Oracle will not be imported.

Loading Custom Discoverer 3i Workbooks

1. Log in to the Discoverer Desktop Edition 4.1 as the Oracle Applications user who will own the workbook:

`D:\orant\DISCVR4\DIS4USR.EXE /APPS_USER /CONNECT "SYSADMIN:System Administrator/<password>@<db>" /EUL <EULprefix>_<Lang>`
2. Use the **Help > About Discoverer...** dialog to make sure you are connected to the correct End User Layer (<EUL prefix>_<Lang>). You can change the EUL at **Tools > Options > EUL**.
3. Use the **File > Open** dialog to open the custom workbooks saved earlier, for example: **customBillingsAnalysis3i.dis**.
4. Select **File > Save**.
5. Save the custom workbooks to the database. To differentiate your custom workbooks from the workbooks supplied by Oracle, use a custom prefix for the custom workbook identifier. For example, **CUSTOM_**.
6. Update the identifier for each custom workbook in the dialog **File > Manage Workbooks > Properties...** > **Update the Identifier** field.

You have now completed your Discoverer 4i implementation and your Discoverer content for Oracle E-Business Suite 11i products is ready for use.

Installing Additional Discoverer End User Layer Patches

After you have successfully installed or migrated to a Discoverer 4i End User Layer by following the above steps, you may need to install and import additional Discoverer End User Layer patches at a later date. This section explains the how to use **adupdeul.sh** for installing Discoverer 4i patches to the End User Layer.

Essentially the steps are the same as described above for the interoperability patch, with the key difference that you import only the **.eex** files that are included in the later Discoverer content patch. Check the readme of the Discoverer content patch for any necessary required prerequisite patches to be applied. Apply the required prerequisite patches before applying the patch to the Discoverer End User Layer.

You may need to regenerate some or all of the BIS Views for the product updated by the additional content patch. After importing the content patch, you may need to refresh the Business Areas for the product affected by the additional patch.

Note: When importing all of the Discoverer content for Release 11i *for the first time*, the **adupdeul.sh** script was run with the command line parameter **mode=complete**.

When importing an individual content patch for an existing Discoverer 4i End User Layer, run the **adupdeul.sh** script with the command line parameter **mode=driver**.

An example of importing **.eex** files from hypothetical patch "1234567":

1. Map or copy the directory **\$AU_TOP/discover** on Windows as **D:\au_top\discover**
2. Start MKS Toolkit and **cd D:/au_top/discover** (where **adupdeul.sh** is located)
3. Start the import for just the **.eex** files for the Discoverer patch (see below for syntax)
4. Check the log file after import. This should be a clean import log file. Verify that the import utility exited with status **0** and the log file contains the message "**Import completed successfully**".
5. Refresh the Business Areas for the product affected by the patch.

Use the following syntax for the **adupdeul.sh** script:

```
sh adupdeul.sh
  connect      = sysadmin/sysadmin-password@db
  resp         = "System Administrator"
  gwyuid       = APPLSYSPUB/PUB
  fndnam       = APPS
  secgroup     = "Standard"
  topdir       = D:/au_top/discover
  language     = US
  eulprefix    = EUL
  eultype      = OLTP
  mode         = driver
  driver       = c1234567.drv
  exedir       = D:/orant/discvr4
  logfile      = import_c1234567_eul4_us_cust115.log
```

Optionally you can use a text editor to create a parameter file in the same directory where **adupdeul.sh** is located. In the parameter file, you can save parameters that are likely to stay the same for most matches.

An example of importing **.eex** files from hypothetical patch "1234567" using a parameter file:

1. Specify parameter values in a parameter file, for example **oltpeul4.lst**:

```
resp="System Administrator"
gwyuid=APPLSYSPUB/PUB
fndnam=APPS
secgroup="Standard"
topdir=D:/au_top/discover
eulprefix=EUL4
eultype=OLTP
exedir=D:/orant/discvr4
```

2. Start the import of the **.eex** files in patch 1234567 with the parameter file **oltpeul4.lst**:

```
sh adupdeul.sh
    connect      = sysadmin/sysadmin-password@db
    language     = US
    mode         = driver
    driver       = c1234567.drv
    parfile      = oltpeul4.lst
    logfile      = import_c1234567_eul4_us_cust115.log
```

Generic Loader

The Generic Loader (FNDLOAD) is a concurrent program that can move Oracle Applications data between database and text file representations. The loader reads a configuration file to determine what data to access. For information on specific configuration files consult the *Open Interfaces Guide* for your product group. The following sections describe the operation of the Generic Loader.

Warning: Use only the loader files provided by Oracle Applications. If you use files not provided by Oracle Applications or modify the provided scripts you risk corrupting your database. Oracle does not support the use of custom loader files or modified Oracle Applications loader files.

Overview

The Generic Loader can download data from an application entity into a portable, editable text file. This file can then be uploaded into any other database to copy the data. Conversion between database store and file format is specified by a configuration file that is read by the loader.

The Generic Loader downloads data from a database according to a configuration (.lct) file, and converts the data into a data file (.ldt file). The Generic Loader can then upload this data to another database using a configuration file.

The loader operates in one of two modes: download or upload. In the download mode, data is downloaded from the database to a text file; in the upload mode, data is uploaded from a text file to the database.

Data structures supported by the loader include master-detail relationships and foreign key reference relationships.

In both downloading and uploading, the structure of the data involved is described by a configuration file. The configuration file describes the structure of the data and also the access methods to use to copy the data into or out of the database. The same configuration file may be used for both uploading and downloading.

When downloading, the Generic Loader creates a second file, called the data file, that contains the structured data selected for downloading. The data file has a standard syntax for representing the data that has been downloaded. When uploading, the Generic Loader reads a data file to get the data that it is to upload. In most cases, the data file was produced by a previous download, but may have come from another source. The data file cannot be interpreted without the corresponding configuration file available.

Download database information to a text file

The text file is human-readable and portable, and can be examined and modified with any editor. Generally, a "developer key" is used to identify records written out to text files. For example, the PROFILE_OPTION_NAME, not the PROFILE_OPTION_ID, is used to identify records in the Profiles configuration file.

Upload (merge) the information in a text file to the database

In uploading, if a row exists, but has different attributes, the row is updated. If a row does not exist, a new row is inserted.

Depending on the configuration file, a row that exists in the database but not in the text file may or may not be deleted when the text file is uploaded. Refer to the configuration file to determine how such rows are handled.

These download and upload capabilities allow profile value information that is defined in one database to be easily propagated to other databases. This is useful for delivering Oracle Applications seed data to customers, as well as for copying customer profile definitions from a primary site to other sites.

The text file version of profile value data is also useful for bulk editing operations, which can be accomplished more efficiently with a text editor than with a form.

Preservation of data

FNDLOAD uses the OWNER and LAST_UPDATE_DATE attributes to determine whether to overwrite pre-existing data. The rules applied are:

1. If the entity being uploaded is not present in the database, a new entity is always inserted.
2. Entities uploaded from a file with OWNER=SEED never overwrite entities with OWNER=CUSTOM in the database.
3. Entities with OWNER=CUSTOM uploaded from a file always update entities with OWNER=SEED in the database.
4. If the owner of the entity is the same in the file and database, the entity is updated only if the LAST_UPDATE_DATE in the file is later than the LAST_UPDATE_DATE in the database.

FNDLOAD Executable

The Generic Loader is a concurrent program named FNDLOAD. The concurrent executable takes the following parameters:

```
FNDLOAD apps/pwd 0 Y mode configfile datafile entity [ param ...  
]
```

where

<apps/pwd>

The APPS schema and password in the form username/password[@connect_string]. If connect_string is omitted, it is taken in a platform-specific manner from the environment using the name TWO_TASK.

< 0 Y >

Concurrent program flags

mode	UPLOAD or DOWNLOAD. UPLOAD causes the datafile to be uploaded to the database. DOWNLOAD causes the loader to fetch rows and write them to the datafile.
<configfile>	The configuration file to use (usually with a suffix of .lct, but not enforced or supplied by the loader).
<datafile>	The data file to write (usually with a suffix of .ldt, but not enforced or supplied by the loader). If the data file already exists, it will be overwritten.
<entity>	The entity(ies) to upload or download. When uploading, you should always upload all entities, so specify a "-" to upload all entities.
< [param] >	Zero or more additional parameters are used to provide bind values in the access SQL (both UPLOAD and DOWNLOAD). Each parameter is in the form NAME=VALUE. NAME should not conflict with an attribute name for the entities being loaded.

File Specifications

The configuration file and data file parameters are specified in one of two ways:

@<application_short_name>:[<dir>/.../]file.ext

For example,

```
@fnd/11i/loader/fndapp.lct
@po:install/data/poreq.ldt
```

Alternatively, the parameters can be specified as such:

```
<native path>
For example,
mydata.ldt
c:\loader\config\cfg102.lct
```

Examples

An example of downloading is:

```
FNDLOAD apps/apps@devdb 0 Y
      DOWNLOAD testcfg.lct out.ldt FND_APPLICATION_TL APPSNAME=FND
```

This command does the following:

- connects to apps/apps@devd
- downloads data using the configuration file testcfg.lct
- writes data to data file out.ldt
- downloads the FND_APPLICATION_TL entity with APPSNAME parameter defined as value 'FND'

An example of uploading is:

```
FNDLOAD apps/apps@custdb 0 Y
        UPLOAD fndapp.lct fnd1234.ldt -
```

This command does the following:

- connects to apps/apps@custdb
- uploads data using the configuration file in fndapp.lct from data file in fnd1234.ldt
- The contents of the entire data file is uploaded.

Configuration File

Operation of the Generic Loader is controlled by the specified configuration file. The configuration file contains the following:

- DEFINE block
- DOWNLOAD block
- UPLOAD block

The contents of the configuration file specify the structure of the data and the access methods to use to move the data between the data file and a database.

DEFINE Block

The DEFINE block specifies the structure of the datafile records. The define block format is identical to that already generated by existing Oracle Application Object Library loaders. The structure of this section is

```
DEFINE <entity> KEY <key_attribute_name> <datatype> ...
    (BASE|TRANS|CTX) <attribute_name> <datatype> ...
    [DEFINE <child_entity> ...]
END <entity>
```

Example

```
DEFINE FND_LOOKUP_TYPE
    KEY VIEW_APPSNAME VARCHAR2(50)
    KEY LOOKUP_TYPE VARCHAR2(30)
    BASE OWNER VARCHAR2(6)
    TRANS MEANING VARCHAR2(80)
    TRANS DESCRIPTION VARCHAR2(240)
    DEFINE FND_LOOKUP_VALUE
        KEY LOOKUP_CODE VARCHAR2(30)
        BASE END_DATE_ACTIVE VARCHAR2(10)
        BASE OWNER VARCHAR2(6)
        TRANS MEANING VARCHAR2(80)
        TRANS DESCRIPTION VARCHAR2(240)
        CTX TAG VARCHAR2(30)
    END FND_LOOKUP_VALUE
END FND_LOOKUP_TYPE
```

```
VIEW_APPSNAME
```

One or more KEY attributes defines the primary key of each entity. BASE and CTX attributes are those that do not require translation. TRANS attributes do. Note that BASE and CTX attributes are treated identically. That is, CTX is just a synonym for BASE. The CTX attribute type is provided merely to allow users to optionally differentiate between

BASE attributes. For example, translators may wish to simplify their .ldt files by stripping out the BASE attributes. However, they may also want to keep some BASE attributes for context. By denoting some attributes as BASE and some as CTX, they can control which attributes to remove.

Data types can be standard Oracle scalar types, except that only VARCHAR2 is currently supported. An attribute can also be defined as a foreign key reference to another entity in your configuration file

The foreign key entity must be a "top-level" entity and its download statement must include filter parameters in its WHERE clause for each of its key attributes. Also, the parameter names must match the key attribute names exactly.

Note that entity definitions can be nested to indicate master-detail relationships. Nested entity definitions inherit the key attributes of their parent entities and should not redefine them.

DOWNLOAD Statement

The DOWNLOAD statement is a SQL statement that selects rows to download. The statement can join to other tables to resolve sequence generated ID numbers into developer keys where possible. The DOWNLOAD statement may also contain bind values of the form ':NAME' which are substituted with parameter values from the command line. DOWNLOAD statements have the form

```
DOWNLOAD <entity> "select <attribute expressions> from ..."
```

Example

```
DOWNLOAD FND_LOOKUP_TYPE
"select VA.APPLICATION_SHORT_NAME VIEW_APPSNAME,
LT.LOOKUP_TYPE,
OA.APPLICATION_SHORT_NAME,
LT.CUSTOMIZATION_LEVEL,
decode(LT.LAST_UPDATED_BY, 1, 'SEED', 'CUSTOM') OWNER,
LT.MEANING,
LT.DESCRPTION
from   FND_LOOKUP_TYPES_VL LT,
FND_APPLICATION VA,
FND_APPLICATION OA,
FND_SECURITY_GROUPS SG
where  VA.APPLICATION_ID = LT.VIEW_APPLICATION_ID
and    OA.APPLICATION_ID = LT.APPLICATION_ID
and    (:VIEW_APPSNAME is null or
(:VIEW_APPSNAME is not null
and VA.APPLICATION_SHORT_NAME like :VIEW_APPSNAME))
and    (:LOOKUP_TYPE is null or
(LOOKUP_TYPE is not null and LT.LOOKUP_TYPE like :LOOKUP_TYP
E))
and    SG.SECURITY_GROUP_ID = LT.SECURITY_GROUP_ID
and    ((:SECURITY_GROUP is null and SG.SECURITY_GROUP_KEY = 'S
TANDARD') or
(:SECURITY_GROUP is not null
and SG.SECURITY_GROUP_KEY = :SECURITY_GROUP))
order by 1, 2 "
```

Download statements for child entities may reference any key attribute of the parent entity, or any command line parameter.

UPLOAD Statement

The UPLOAD statement is a SQL statement or PL/SQL anonymous block which accepts file data and applies it to the database. The statement is executed once for each record read from the data file. Bind values in the statement are satisfied by attributes from the file data or command line parameters.

Example

```
UPLOAD FND_LOOKUP_TYPE
BEGIN
" begin
  if (:UPLOAD_MODE = 'NLS') then
    fnd_lookup_types_pkg.TRANSLATE_ROW(
x_lookup_type => :LOOKUP_TYPE,
x_security_group => :SECURITY_GROUP,
x_view_application => :VIEW_APPSNAME,
x_owner => :OWNER,
x_meaning => :MEANING,
x_description => :DESCRIPTION);
  else
    fnd_lookup_types_pkg.LOAD_ROW(
x_lookup_type => :LOOKUP_TYPE,
x_security_group => :SECURITY_GROUP,
x_view_application => :VIEW_APPSNAME,
x_owner => :OWNER,
x_meaning => :MEANING,
x_description => :DESCRIPTION);
  end if;
end; "
```

As in the DOWNLOAD, the UPLOAD statement for child entities may reference any attributes from the parent record.

Example

```
UPLOAD FND_LOOKUP_VALUE
" begin
if (:UPLOAD_MODE = 'NLS') then
  fnd_lookup_values_pkg.TRANSLATE_ROW(
    x_lookup_type => :LOOKUP_TYPE,
    x_lookup_code => :LOOKUP_CODE,
    x_security_group => :SECURITY_GROUP,
    x_view_application => :VIEW_APPSNAME,
    x_owner => :OWNER,
    x_meaning => :MEANING,
    x_description => :DESCRIPTION);
else
  fnd_lookup_values_pkg.LOAD_ROW(
    x_lookup_type => :LOOKUP_TYPE,
    x_lookup_code => :LOOKUP_CODE,
    x_security_group => :SECURITY_GROUP,
    x_view_application => :VIEW_APPSNAME,
    x_owner => :OWNER,
    x_meaning => :MEANING,
    x_description => :DESCRIPTION,
    x_tag => :TAG);
end if;
end;"
```

Data File

A data file is a portable text file. The data file created from a download using the above configuration file would include:

```

# -- Begin Entity Definitions --

DEFINE FND_LOOKUP_TYPE
  KEY    VIEW_APPSNAME VARCHAR2(50)
  KEY    LOOKUP_TYPE VARCHAR2(30)
  BASE   OWNER VARCHAR2(6)
  TRANS  MEANING VARCHAR2(80)
  TRANS  DESCRIPTION VARCHAR2(240)
  DEFINE FND_LOOKUP_VALUE
    KEY    LOOKUP_CODE VARCHAR2(30)
    BASE   END_DATE_ACTIVE VARCHAR2(10)
    BASE   OWNER VARCHAR2(6)
    TRANS  MEANING VARCHAR2(80)
    TRANS  DESCRIPTION VARCHAR2(240)
    BASE   TAG VARCHAR2(30)
  END FND_LOOKUP_VALUE
END FND_LOOKUP_TYPE

# -- End Entity Definitions --

BEGIN FND_LOOKUP_TYPE "FND" "YES_NO"
  OWNER = "SEED"
  MEANING = "Yes or No"

  BEGIN FND_LOOKUP_VALUE Y
    OWNER = "SEED"
    MEANING = "Yes"
  END FND_LOOKUP_VALUE

  BEGIN FND_LOOKUP_VALUE N
    OWNER = "SEED"
    MEANING = "No"
  END FND_LOOKUP_VALUE
END FND_LOOKUP_TYPE

```

Oracle Application Object Library Configuration Files

Oracle Application Object Library provides several configuration files for the Generic Loader that you can use with your setup data.

These configuration files operate on the following data:

- Concurrent program definitions
- Request groups
- Lookup types and lookup values
- Profile options and profile option values
- Flexfields setup data
- Attachments definitions
- Messages
- Security information

Concurrent Program Configuration File

The concurrent program configuration file `afcpprog.lct` downloads and uploads concurrent program definitions. It takes as parameters program name and application name.

The following table lists the entities, sub-entities (if any), and download parameters for this configuration file.

Entity	Sub-entities, if any	Download Parameters
PROGRAM	INCOMPATIBILITY	CONCURRENT_PROGRAM_NAME APPLICATION_SHORT_NAME
EXECUTABLE		EXECUTABLE_NAME

The entity definition is:

```

DEFINE PROGRAM
KEY    CONCURRENT_PROGRAM_NAME  VARCHAR2(30)
KEY    APPLICATION               VARCHAR2(50)
CTX    OWNER                    VARCHAR2(7)
TRANS  USER_CONCURRENT_PROGRAM_NAME  VARCHAR2(240)
BASE   EXEC_APPLICATION          VARCHAR2(50)
BASE   EXECUTABLE_NAME          VARCHAR2(30)
BASE   EXECUTION_METHOD_CODE    VARCHAR2(1)
BASE   ARGUMENT_METHOD_CODE     VARCHAR2(1)
BASE   QUEUE_CONTROL_FLAG       VARCHAR2(1)
BASE   QUEUE_METHOD_CODE        VARCHAR2(1)
BASE   REQUEST_SET_FLAG         VARCHAR2(1)
BASE   ENABLED_FLAG             VARCHAR2(1)
BASE   PRINT_FLAG               VARCHAR2(1)
BASE   RUN_ALONE_FLAG           VARCHAR2(1)
BASE   SRS_FLAG                 VARCHAR2(1)
TRANS  DESCRIPTION              VARCHAR2(240)
BASE   CLASS_APPLICATION        VARCHAR2(50)
BASE   CONCURRENT_CLASS_NAME    VARCHAR2(30)
BASE   EXECUTION_OPTIONS        VARCHAR2(250)
BASE   SAVE_OUTPUT_FLAG        VARCHAR2(1)
BASE   REQUIRED_STYLE            VARCHAR2(1)
BASE   OUTPUT_PRINT_STYLE       VARCHAR2(30)
BASE   PRINTER_NAME             VARCHAR2(30)
BASE   MINIMUM_WIDTH            VARCHAR2(50)
BASE   MINIMUM_LENGTH           VARCHAR2(50)
BASE   REQUEST_PRIORITY         VARCHAR2(50)
BASE   ATTRIBUTE_CATEGORY       VARCHAR2(30)
BASE   ATTRIBUTE1               VARCHAR2(150)
BASE   ATTRIBUTE2               VARCHAR2(150)
BASE   ATTRIBUTE3               VARCHAR2(150)
BASE   ATTRIBUTE4               VARCHAR2(150)
BASE   ATTRIBUTE5               VARCHAR2(150)
BASE   ATTRIBUTE6               VARCHAR2(150)
BASE   ATTRIBUTE7               VARCHAR2(150)
BASE   ATTRIBUTE8               VARCHAR2(150)
BASE   ATTRIBUTE9               VARCHAR2(150)
BASE   ATTRIBUTE10              VARCHAR2(150)
BASE   ATTRIBUTE11              VARCHAR2(150)
BASE   ATTRIBUTE12              VARCHAR2(150)
BASE   ATTRIBUTE13              VARCHAR2(150)
BASE   ATTRIBUTE14              VARCHAR2(150)
BASE   ATTRIBUTE15              VARCHAR2(150)
BASE   OUTPUT_FILE_TYPE         VARCHAR2(4)
BASE   RESTART                  VARCHAR2(1)
BASE   NLS_COMPLIANT            VARCHAR2(1)
BASE   CD_PARAMETER             VARCHAR2(240)
BASE   INCREMENT_PROC           VARCHAR2(61)
BASE   MLS_EXECUTABLE_APPLICATION  VARCHAR2(50)
BASE   MLS_EXECUTABLE_NAME       VARCHAR2(50)
BASE   ENABLE_TIME_STATISTICS    VARCHAR2(1)
BASE   SECURITY_GROUP_NAME       NUMBER
BASE   RESOURCE_CONSUMER_GROUP   VARCHAR2(30)
BASE   ROLLBACK_SEGMENT         VARCHAR2(30)
BASE   OPTIMIZER_MODE           VARCHAR2(30)

END PROGRAM

```


Request Groups Configuration File

Use the file afcpreqg.lct for loading request group data.

The following table lists the entities, sub-entities (if any), and download parameters for this configuration file.

Entity	Sub-entities, if any	Download Parameters
REQUEST_GROUP	REQUEST_GROUP_UNIT	REQUEST_GROUP_NAME APPLICATION_SHORT_NAME

The entity definition is:

```
DEFINE REQUEST_GROUP
  KEY   REQUEST_GROUP_NAME   VARCHAR2(30)
  KEY   APPLICATION_SHORT_NAME VARCHAR2(50)
  CTX   OWNER                VARCHAR2(7)
  TRANS DESCRIPTION          VARCHAR2(800)
  BASE  REQUEST_GROUP_CODE   VARCHAR2(30)
END REQUEST_GROUP
```

Lookups Configuration File

Use the file aflvmlu.lct for loading Lookup types and Lookups values.

The following table lists the entities, sub-entities (if any), and download parameters for this configuration file.

Entity	Sub-entities, if any	Download Parameters
FND_LOOKUP_TYPE	FND_LOOKUP_VALUE	VIEW_APPSNAME LOOKUP_TYPE SECURITY_GROUP

The entity definition is:

```

DEFINE FND_LOOKUP_TYPE
KEY    VIEW_APPSNAME      VARCHAR2(50)
KEY    LOOKUP_TYPE        VARCHAR2(30)
CTX    APPLICATION_SHORT_NAME  VARCHAR2(50)
BASE    CUSTOMIZATION_LEVEL  VARCHAR2(1)
CTX    OWNER              VARCHAR2(6)
TRANS  MEANING            VARCHAR2(80)
TRANS  DESCRIPTION        VARCHAR2(240)

DEFINE FND_LOOKUP_VALUE
KEY    LOOKUP_CODE        VARCHAR2(30)
BASE    ENABLED_FLAG      VARCHAR2(1)
BASE    START_DATE_ACTIVE  VARCHAR2(10)
BASE    END_DATE_ACTIVE   VARCHAR2(10)
BASE    TERRITORY_CODE    VARCHAR2(2)
BASE    TAG                VARCHAR2(30)
BASE    ATTRIBUTE_CATEGORY VARCHAR2(30)
BASE    ATTRIBUTE1        VARCHAR2(150)
BASE    ATTRIBUTE2        VARCHAR2(150)
BASE    ATTRIBUTE3        VARCHAR2(150)
BASE    ATTRIBUTE4        VARCHAR2(150)
BASE    ATTRIBUTE5        VARCHAR2(150)
BASE    ATTRIBUTE6        VARCHAR2(150)
BASE    ATTRIBUTE7        VARCHAR2(150)
BASE    ATTRIBUTE8        VARCHAR2(150)
BASE    ATTRIBUTE9        VARCHAR2(150)
BASE    ATTRIBUTE10       VARCHAR2(150)
BASE    ATTRIBUTE11       VARCHAR2(150)
BASE    ATTRIBUTE12       VARCHAR2(150)
BASE    ATTRIBUTE13       VARCHAR2(150)
BASE    ATTRIBUTE14       VARCHAR2(150)
BASE    ATTRIBUTE15       VARCHAR2(150)
CTX    OWNER              VARCHAR2(6)
TRANS  MEANING            VARCHAR2(80)
TRANS  DESCRIPTION        VARCHAR2(240)
END FND_LOOKUP_VALUE
END FND_LOOKUP_TYPE

```

Profile Options and Profile Values Configuration File

Use the file afscprof.lct for loading profile options and profile values.

The following table lists the entities, sub-entities (if any), and download parameters for this configuration file.

Entity	Sub-entities, if any	Download Parameters
PROFILE	FND_PROFILE_ OPTION_ VALUES	PROFILE_NAME APPLICAT ION_SHORT_NAME

The entity definition is:

```

DEFINE PROFILE
  KEY   PROFILE_NAME      VARCHAR2(80)
  CTX   OWNER              VARCHAR2(7)
  CTX   APPLICATION_SHORT_NAME  VARCHAR2(50)
  TRANS USER_PROFILE_OPTION_NAME  VARCHAR2(240)
  TRANS DESCRIPTION        VARCHAR2(240)
  BASE  USER_CHANGEABLE_FLAG  VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE  USER_VISIBLE_FLAG     VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE  READ_ALLOWED_FLAG     VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE  WRITE_ALLOWED_FLAG    VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE  SITE_ENABLED_FLAG     VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE  SITE_UPDATE_ALLOWED_FLAG  VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE  APP_ENABLED_FLAG      VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE  APP_UPDATE_ALLOWED_FLAG  VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE  RESP_ENABLED_FLAG     VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE  RESP_UPDATE_ALLOWED_FLAG  VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE  USER_ENABLED_FLAG     VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE  USER_UPDATE_ALLOWED_FLAG  VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE  START_DATE_ACTIVE     VARCHAR2(11)
  BASE  END_DATE_ACTIVE       VARCHAR2(11)
  BASE  SQL_VALIDATION        VARCHAR2(2000)

  DEFINE FND_PROFILE_OPTION_VALUES
    KEY   LEVEL            VARCHAR2(50)
    KEY   LEVEL_VALUE      VARCHAR2(100)
    KEY   LEVEL_VALUE_APP  VARCHAR2(50)
    CTX   OWNER              VARCHAR2(7)
    BASE  PROFILE_OPTION_VALUE  VARCHAR2(240)
  END FND_PROFILE_OPTION_VALUES
END PROFILE

```

Flexfields Setup Data Configuration File

Use the file affload.lct for loading flexfields data.

Warning: Do not modify the data files you download using the flexfields configuration file. You risk corrupting your flexfields data. Oracle Applications does not support any changes you make to the data files.

The configuration file includes the following entities:

- Value sets
- Descriptive flexfields
- Key flexfields

Flexfield Value Sets

The entity VALUE_SET includes the following table details of table validated value sets, and user exit details of special/pair validated value sets. It includes the values, the normalized value hierarchy, value qualifier values, security rules, security rule lines, security rule usage details, rollup groups, or value hierarchies for the value set.

The key for this entity is FLEX_VALUE_SET_NAME.

Example

```
>FNDLOAD apps/apps 0 Y DOWNLOAD @FND:admin/import/afffload.lct out.1dt \
VALUE_SET FLEX_VALUE_SET_NAME="Loader_Test"

>FNDLOAD apps/apps 0 Y UPLOAD @FND:admin/import/afffload.lct out.1dt -
```

Descriptive Flexfields

The entity DESC_FLEX includes context column, attribute columns, context, and segment details. This entity references the VALUE_SET for the value set used by a given SEGMENT.

The key is composed of APPLICATION_SHORT_NAME and DESCRIPTIVE_FLEXFIELD_NAME.

Example

```
>FNDLOAD apps/apps 0 Y DOWNLOAD @FND:admin/import/afffload.lct out.1dt \
DESC_FLEX APPLICATION_SHORT_NAME="FND" DESCRIPTIVE_FLEXFIELD_NAME="FND_FLEX_TEST"

>FNDLOAD apps/apps 0 Y UPLOAD @FND:admin/import/afffload.lct out.1dt -
```

Key Flexfields

The entity KEY_FLEX includes the unique ID column, structure column, segment columns, flexfield qualifier, segment qualifier, structure, Account Generator workflow process, shorthand alias, cross-validation rule, cross-validation rule line, segment, flexfield qualifier assignment, and segment qualifier assignment details.

References VALUE_SET for the value set used by the given segment.

The key is composed of APPLICATION_SHORT_NAME and ID_FLEX_CODE.

Example

```
>FNDLOAD apps/apps 0 Y DOWNLOAD @FND:admin/import/afffload.lct out.1dt \
KEY_FLEX APPLICATION_SHORT_NAME="SQLGL" ID_FLEX_CODE="GL#"

>FNDLOAD apps/apps 0 Y UPLOAD @FND:admin/import/afffload.lct out.1dt -
```

Attachments Setup Data Configuration File

Use the file afattach.lct for loading attachments setup data.

The following table lists the entities, sub-entities (if any), and download parameters for this configuration file.

Entity	Sub-entities, if any	Download Parameters
FND_ATTACHMENT_FUNCTIONS	FND_ATTACHMENT_BLOCKS FND_ATTACHMENT_BLOCK_ENTITIES FND_DOC_CATEGORY_USAGES	APPLICATION_SHORT_NAME FUNCTION_NAME FUNCTION_TYPE

The entity definitions are:

```

DEFINE FND_ATTACHMENT_FUNCTIONS
  KEY   FUNCTION_NAME   VARCHAR2(30)
  KEY   FUNCTION_TYPE   VARCHAR2(1)
  KEY   APP_SHORT_NAME   VARCHAR2(50)
  CTX   OWNER            VARCHAR2(7)
  BASE   SESSION_CONTEXT_FIELD VARCHAR2(61)
  BASE   ENABLED_FLAG     VARCHAR2(1)

DEFINE FND_ATTACHMENT_BLOCKS
  KEY   BLOCK_NAME      VARCHAR2(30)
  CTX   OWNER            VARCHAR2(7)
  BASE   QUERY_FLAG      VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE   SECURITY_TYPE    VARCHAR2(50)
  BASE   ORG_CONTEXT_FIELD VARCHAR2(61)
  BASE   SET_OF_BOOKS_CONTEXT_FIELD VARCHAR2(61)
  BASE   BUSINESS_UNIT_CONTEXT_FIELD VARCHAR2(61)
  BASE   CONTEXT1_FIELD   VARCHAR2(61)
  BASE   CONTEXT2_FIELD   VARCHAR2(61)
  BASE   CONTEXT3_FIELD   VARCHAR2(61)

  DEFINE FND_ATTACHMENT_BLK_ENTITIES
    KEY   BLK_ENTITY REFERENCES
FND_DOCUMENT_ENTITIES
  BASE   DISPLAY_METHOD      VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE   INCLUDE_IN_INDICATOR_FLAG VARCHAR2(1)
  CTX   OWNER                VARCHAR2(7)
  BASE   PK1_FIELD           VARCHAR2(61)
  BASE   PK2_FIELD           VARCHAR2(61)
  BASE   PK3_FIELD           VARCHAR2(61)
  BASE   PK4_FIELD           VARCHAR2(61)
  BASE   PK5_FIELD           VARCHAR2(61)
  BASE   SQL_STATEMENT        VARCHAR2(2000)
  BASE   INDICATOR_IN_VIEW_FLAG VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE   QUERY_PERMISSION_TYPE VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE   INSERT_PERMISSION_TYPE VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE   UPDATE_PERMISSION_TYPE VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE   DELETE_PERMISSION_TYPE VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE   CONDITION_FIELD      VARCHAR2(61)
  BASE   CONDITION_OPERATOR VARCHAR2(50)
  BASE   CONDITION_VALUE1     VARCHAR2(100)
  BASE   CONDITION_VALUE2     VARCHAR2(100)
  END FND_ATTACHMENT_BLK_ENTITIES
END FND_ATTACHMENT_BLOCKS

DEFINE FND_DOC_CATEGORY_USAGES
  KEY CATEGORY_USAGE REFERENCES
FND_DOCUMENT_CATEGORIES

```

```

        BASE ENABLED_FLAG VARCHAR2(1)
        CTX OWNER VARCHAR2(7)
    END FND_DOC_CATEGORY_USAGES
END FND_ATTACHMENT_FUNCTIONS

DEFINE FND_DOCUMENT_ENTITIES
    KEY DATA_OBJECT_CODE VARCHAR2(30)
    BASE APP_SHORT_NAME VARCHAR2(50)
    BASE TABLE_NAME VARCHAR2(30)
    BASE ENTITY_NAME VARCHAR2(40)
    CTX OWNER VARCHAR2(7)
    BASE PK1_COLUMN VARCHAR2(30)
    BASE PK2_COLUMN VARCHAR2(30)
    BASE PK3_COLUMN VARCHAR2(30)
    BASE PK4_COLUMN VARCHAR2(30)
    BASE PK5_COLUMN VARCHAR2(30)
    TRANS USER_ENTITY_NAME VARCHAR2(240)
    TRANS USER_ENTITY_PROMPT VARCHAR2(40)
END FND_DOCUMENT_ENTITIES

DEFINE FND_DOCUMENT_CATEGORIES
    KEY CATEGORY_NAME VARCHAR2(30)
    BASE APP_SHORT_NAME VARCHAR2(50)
    CTX OWNER VARCHAR2(7)
    BASE START_DATE_ACTIVE VARCHAR2(11)
    BASE END_DATE_ACTIVE VARCHAR2(11)
    BASE ATTRIBUTE_CATEGORY VARCHAR2(30)
    BASE ATTRIBUTE1 VARCHAR2(150)
    BASE ATTRIBUTE2 VARCHAR2(150)
    BASE ATTRIBUTE3 VARCHAR2(150)
    BASE ATTRIBUTE4 VARCHAR2(150)
    BASE ATTRIBUTE5 VARCHAR2(150)
    BASE ATTRIBUTE6 VARCHAR2(150)
    BASE ATTRIBUTE7 VARCHAR2(150)
    BASE ATTRIBUTE8 VARCHAR2(150)
    BASE ATTRIBUTE9 VARCHAR2(150)
    BASE ATTRIBUTE10 VARCHAR2(150)
    BASE ATTRIBUTE11 VARCHAR2(150)
    BASE ATTRIBUTE12 VARCHAR2(150)
    BASE ATTRIBUTE13 VARCHAR2(150)
    BASE ATTRIBUTE14 VARCHAR2(150)
    BASE ATTRIBUTE15 VARCHAR2(150)
    BASE DEFAULT_DATATYPE_ID VARCHAR2(50)
    BASE APP_SOURCE_VERSION VARCHAR2(255)
    TRANS USER_NAME VARCHAR2(255)
END FND_DOCUMENT_CATEGORIES

DEFINE FND_DOCUMENT_DATATYPES
    KEY DATATYPE_ID VARCHAR2(50)
    KEY NAME VARCHAR2(30)
    CTX OWNER VARCHAR2(7)
    BASE START_DATE_ACTIVE VARCHAR2(11)
    BASE END_DATE_ACTIVE VARCHAR2(11)
    TRANS USER_NAME VARCHAR2(30)
END FND_DOCUMENT_DATATYPES

```

Messages Configuration File

Use the file afmdmsg.lct for uploading and downloading messages in a database.

Use the Generic Loader and afmdmsg.lct for transferring messages between databases only. Use the Message Dictionary Generator for moving messages into binary runtime files and readable text files. See: Message Dictionary Generator, page C-18.

The following table lists the entities, sub-entities (if any), and download parameters for this configuration file.

Entity	Sub-entities, if any	Download Parameters
FND_NEW_MESSAGES		APPLICATION_SHORT_NAME MESSAGE_NAME

The entity definition is:

Note: to change the language you are downloading, set the environment variable NLS_LANG before running the loader.

```
DEFINE FND_NEW_MESSAGES
  KEY  APPLICATION_SHORT_NAME  VARCHAR2(50)
  KEY  MESSAGE_NAME           VARCHAR2(30)
  CTX  OWNER                   VARCHAR2(7)
  CTX  MESSAGE_NUMBER         VARCHAR2(50)
  TRANS MESSAGE_TEXT           VARCHAR2(2000)
  CTX  DESCRIPTION            VARCHAR2(240)
  CTX  TYPE                   VARCHAR2(30)
  CTX  MAX_LENGTH              NUMBER
END FND_NEW_MESSAGES
```

Security Information Configuration File

Use the file afsload.lct for downloading and uploading forms, functions, menus, and menu entries.

The following table lists the entities, sub-entities (if any), and download parameters for this configuration file.

Entity	Sub-entities, if any	Download Parameters
FORM		FORM_APP_SHORT_NAME, FORM_NAME
FUNCTION		FUNC_APP_SHORT_NAME FUNCTION_NAME
MENU	ENTRY	MENU
ENTRY		[None]

The entity definition is:

```

DEFINE FORM
  KEY   APPLICATION_SHORT_NAME VARCHAR2(50)
  KEY   FORM_NAME VARCHAR2(30)
  TRANS USER_FORM_NAME VARCHAR2(80)
  TRANS DESCRIPTION VARCHAR2(240)
  CTX   OWNER VARCHAR2(7)
END FORM

DEFINE FUNCTION
  KEY   FUNCTION_NAME VARCHAR2(30)
  BASE  FORM REFERENCES FORM
  BASE  TYPE VARCHAR2(30)
  BASE  PARAMETERS VARCHAR2(2000)
  BASE  WEB_HOST_NAME VARCHAR2(80)
  BASE  WEB_AGENT_NAME VARCHAR2(80)
  BASE  WEB_HTML_CALL VARCHAR2(240)
  BASE  WEB_ENCRYPT_PARAMETERS VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE  WEB_SECURED VARCHAR2(1)
  BASE  WEB_ICON VARCHAR2(30)
  TRANS USER_FUNCTION_NAME VARCHAR2(80)
  TRANS DESCRIPTION VARCHAR2(240)
  CTX   OWNER VARCHAR2(7)
END FUNCTION

DEFINE MENU
  KEY   MENU_NAME VARCHAR2(30)
  TRANS USER_MENU_NAME VARCHAR2(80)
  TRANS DESCRIPTION VARCHAR2(240)
  CTX   OWNER VARCHAR2(7)

DEFINE ENTRY
  TRANS PROMPT VARCHAR2(60)
  TRANS DESCRIPTION VARCHAR2(240)
  CTX   SUBMENU REFERENCES MENU
  CTX   FUNCTION REFERENCES FUNCTION
  CTX   OWNER VARCHAR2(7)
END ENTRY
END MENU

```

Message Dictionary Generator

The Message Dictionary Generator (FNDMDGEN) is a concurrent program that generates binary runtime files from the database for Oracle Applications Message Dictionary messages. The following sections describe the operation of the Message Dictionary Generator.

For more information on using the Message Dictionary and creating messages, see the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

Note: Use the Generic Loader and corresponding configuration file for uploading and downloading message text files into a database.

Message Repositories

Message information is stored in two different repositories, each of which has its own format and serves a specific need. Following is a description for each of the message repositories, including the message attributes they store.

Database

The FND_NEW_MESSAGES table in the database stores all Oracle Applications messages for all languages. Database messages are directly used only by the stored procedure Message Dictionary API. Database message data can be edited using the Messages form.

Database Attributes are: APPLICATION, LANGUAGE, NAME, NUMBER, TEXT, DESCRIPTION

Runtime

A runtime binary file stores the messages for a single application and a single language. The file is optimized for rapid lookup of individual messages by message NAME.

A runtime file is located in:

`<APPL_TOP>/ $APPLMSG/ <LANGUAGE> .msb`

where <APPL_TOP> is the application basepath, APPLMSG is an environment variable whose usual value is "mesg", and <LANGUAGE> is the NLS language code (for example: 'US', or 'F'). A typical message file would be \$FND_TOP/mesg/US.msb.

Runtime Attributes are: NAME, NUMBER, TEXT

Usage

The help that you get when you invoke the Message Dictionary Generator without any program arguments (i.e., FNDMDGEN dbuser/dbpassword 0 Y) is:

```
FNDMDGEN <Oracle ID/password> 0 Y <language codename> [application  
n shortname] [mode] [filename] \
```

where mode is:

DB_TO_RUNTIME From Database to Runtime file (.msb)

Note: In Release 11i the mode DB_TO_RUNTIME only is supported, unlike in previous releases.

Wildcards

Either <language codename> or [application shortname] can be wildcarded by passing the value "ALL". The following describes how wildcards are used:

From DB Messages come from the FND_NEW_MESSAGES table. Wildcards match all the messages in the database.

To RUNTIME In the case of wildcards, separate runtime files are created for each combination of language and application.

Generic File Manager Access Utility (FNDGFM)

The Generic File Manager (GFM) is a set of PL/SQL procedures that leverages Oracle HTTP Server functionality to provide generic upload and download capabilities of unstructured data between a client (usually a web browser) and a database.

FNDGFM is an access utility that allows the upload of files from the local file system to the GFM database file system. It supports simple uploads of single files as well as bulk uploads of many files. FNDGFM also offers a download option that provides a convenient and quick means of retrieving the contents of large objects (LOBs) if the file identifier is known.

To delete files loaded to the database run the Purge Obsolete Generic File Manager Data concurrent program.

Usage

FNDGFM is located in the \$FND_TOP/bin directory. Putting this directory on your path will allow you to invoke FNDGFM easily.

Upload files to the GFM

To upload files using FNDGFM use the following syntax:

FNDGFM <logon> [**param**] <filenames>

where

<logon>

Specifies a standard Oracle logon string of the form username/password. To specify a particular database, append an @ sign and the database SID (@database).

[param]

Includes the following parameters (in any order) as appropriate:

PROGRAM_NAME=<name> specifies the name of the program on whose behalf the LOB is to be maintained.

PROGRAM_TAG=<name> specifies the program tag, which is a string used by the GFM client program to further categorize the LOB.

LANGUAGE=<language_code> specifies the language of the file.

PLS_CALLBACK=<plsql procedure> specifies the procedure to execute once for each uploaded file. The procedure must accept file_id as its only parameter. FNDGFM will call the specified procedure after each uploaded file, passing in the new file identifier, for example: PLS_CALLBACK=mypackage.myprocedure.

CONTENT_TYPE=<mime_type> specifies the default mime type to use for uploaded files not qualified by a content map.

CONTENT_MAP=<contentmapfile> specifies a text file that maps filename suffixes onto content types. The text file consists of lines of the form <suffix>=<mime_type> where suffix is any string matched against the end of

the filename. For example: ".txt = text/plain", ".html = text/html", and ".ps = application/postscript".

<filenames>

Specifies the files to upload. Any number of files may be uploaded.

Download files from the GFM

To download a file using the FNDGFU utility, use the following syntax:

```
FNDGFU <logon> DOWNLOAD=<fileid> [LINE_BREAKS=<mode>] [filename]
```

where

<logon>

Specifies a standard Oracle logon string of the form username/password. To specify a particular database, append an @ sign and the database SID (@database).

<fileid>

Specifies the identifier of the large object (LOB) to download.

<mode>

Specifies how to treat line breaks for a text document. This parameter is ignored for nontext content. The following values are valid:

LF - Line breaks will be represented using "/n" in the downloaded output. This is the default mode if the LINE_BREAK parameter is omitted.

CRLF - Line breaks will be left in the canonical format.

[filename]

Specifies the file into which to download. If omitted, downloaded contents are streamed to the standard output.

Example of FNDGFU Upload

The FNDGFU utility can be used to upload new or changed help files. Use the following arguments to upload help files:

```
FNDGFU <apps/pwd> 0 Y PROGRAM_NAME=FND_HELP PROGRAM_TAG=<application>:<custom_level> CONTENT_TYPE=<mime_type> LANGUAGE=<language_code> <filenames>
```

where

<apps/pwd>

is the APPS schema username/password. To specify a particular database, append an @ sign and the database SID (@database).

<application>

is the Application short name.

<custom_level>

is the files' customization level. Use the number 100 or above for customized help files. To replace previously uploaded files, use the same customization level when uploading the new files. To override previously uploaded files without deleting them from the database, use a higher customization level.

<mime_type>

is the files' MIME type.

<language_code>

is the files' language code.

<filenames> is a space-separated list of files to upload, or a filename glob in the current directory.

Enter all arguments on a single command line. They may appear on separate lines here and in the examples that follow depending on the display medium.

Example 1

```
FNDGFU apps/apps@devdb 0 Y PROGRAM_NAME=FND_HELP  
PROGRAM_TAG=GL:100 CONTENT_TYPE=text/html LANGUAGE=US file1.htm  
file2.htm
```

- connects to apps/apps@devdb
- identifies uploaded files as part of Oracle General Ledger (GL) help
- identifies the uploaded files' customization level as 100
- identifies their MIME type as text/html
- identifies their language as US English (US)
- uploads the two specified .htm files in the current directory (in UNIX)

Example 2

```
FNDGFU apps/apps@custdb 0 Y PROGRAM_NAME=FND_HELP  
PROGRAM_TAG=FND:100 CONTENT_TYPE=image/gif *.gif
```

- connects to apps/apps@custdb
- identifies uploaded files as part of Application Object Library (FND) help
- identifies the uploaded files' customization level as 100
- identifies their MIME type as image/gif
- does not identify their language, which defaults to userenv('LANG')
- uploads all .gif files in the current directory (in UNIX)

Purging Generic File Manager Data

To purge uploaded files from the Generic File Manager, run the concurrent program, Purge Obsolete Generic File Manager Data.

This concurrent program should also be used to periodically expunge expired data. It is recommended that you schedule this program to run every day or so, using the default parameter values.

Purge Obsolete Generic File Manager Data

To purge uploaded files from the Generic File Manager, run the concurrent program, Purge Obsolete Generic File Manager Data.

This concurrent program should also be used to periodically delete obsolete data. It is recommended that you schedule this program to run every day or so, using the default parameter values.

Program Parameters

Expired

Enter "Y" if you want to purge expired data only. Enter "N" if you want the purge to include all data. The default is "Y."

Program Name

Enter the program name(s) to process. Leave blank to process all programs.

Program Tag

Enter the program tag(s) to process. Leave blank to process all program tags.

Index

A

- AdminAppServer utility, 2-32
- Administer Folders, 12-15
- Administering Oracle Applications security, 2-37
- Apache
 - Jserv engine, 2-30
- Apache , 2-14
- Application
 - registering, 12-12
- Application basepath, 12-12
- Application environment variable, 12-13
- Application Object Library AOL/J Setup Test Suite, 2-41
- Application Server Security, 2-37
- Application Server Trust Level, 2-40
- applsys
 - ORACLE ID, 12-8
- APPS accounts
 - password, 12-8
- Assign default folders, 12-15

B

- BACKUP_SCHEMA_STATS procedure (CBO), 13-8
- BACKUP_TABLE_STATS (CBO), 13-7

C

- CHECK_HISTOGRAM_COLS procedure (CBO), 13-20
- Common UNIX Printing System (CUPS), 10-23
- CONCSUB, 7-31
- Concurrent managers, 9-1
 - activating a manager, 8-29
 - activating and other control states, 8-40
 - assigning work shifts, 8-49
 - controlling, 8-29, 9-5
 - defining, 8-1
 - defining combined specialization rules, 8-52
 - defining work shifts, 8-51
 - disabling a work shift, 8-3
 - Internal concurrent manager, 8-31
 - operating system process ID number, 8-44
 - Oracle process ID number, 8-44
 - PMON cycle, 8-30

- program libraries, 8-1
- reporting on work shifts, 8-13
- restarting a manager, 8-29
- role of application name in combined rules, 8-53
- role of application name when defining, 8-47
- sleep time, 8-49
- specializing - Define Managers form, 8-50
- Specializing managers, 8-1
- specializing managers, 8-14
- Standard manager, 8-2
- time-based queues, 8-6
- viewing actual number of processes, 8-40
- viewing manager control processes, 8-43
- viewing manager request queue, 8-45
- viewing number of running requests, 8-40
- viewing status of, 8-39
- viewing target number of processes, 8-40
- work shifts, 8-3
- work shifts and target processes, 8-5
- work shifts hours, 8-3
- work shifts overlap, 8-4
- work shifts overlap - same priority, 8-4
- work shifts past midnight, 8-3
- Concurrent processing
 - programs, 7-51
 - viewing incompatible tasks, 7-51
- Concurrent programs
 - behavior of program parameters, 7-39
 - behavior of report set parameters, 7-39
 - changing responsibility to see changed effects, 7-39
 - CONCSUB, 7-31
 - copying and modifying, 7-35
 - custom, 7-26
 - database session control, 7-56
 - defining, 7-63
 - defining incompatibility rules, 7-19
 - disabling, 7-51
 - displaying parameters - programs vs. report sets, 7-39
 - enforcement of incompatibility rules, 7-22
 - example - modifying program parameters, 7-43
 - execution method, 7-48
 - grouping as a request type, 8-55
 - grouping as request types, 8-28

- incompatible, 7-51
- modifying incompatible programs list, 7-38
- modifying parameters, 7-38
- multiple language support, 7-48
- not displaying parameters, 7-39
- parameter sequence, 7-58
- program libraries, 8-1
- report set incompatibilities, 7-12
- reporting on enabled programs, 7-45
- reporting on incompatible programs, 7-45
- reporting on program definitions, 7-45
- role of application name in request types, 8-55
- run alone programs, 7-19
- running alone, 7-51
- setting default values, 7-39
- spawned vs. immediate, 8-1
- subroutines, 7-48
- viewing, 7-51
- warnings about modifying, 7-35
- Concurrent request type, 8-28
- Concurrent requests
 - request types, 8-55
 - role of application name in request types, 8-55
 - submitting using CONCSUB, 7-31
 - time taken to run, 8-12
 - viewing output, 8-56
 - viewing request parameters, 7-39
- Configuring Oracle Applications, 2-1
- Conflict domains
 - defining, 12-11
 - explained, 7-21
- Consumer groups
 - Resource consumer groups, 12-4
- Context-sensitive help
 - link syntax, 11-7
- Controlling access to reports or programs
 - Report Groups, 7-1
- CREATE_STAT_TABLE Procedure (CBO), 13-7
- Custom concurrent programs, 7-26
- Custom help
 - context-sensitive links, 11-7
 - global environment, 11-15
 - Help Builder, 11-9
 - help navigation trees, 11-8
 - updating the search index, 11-7
- Custom help files
 - linking help files, 11-5
- Custom reports
 - context-sensitive help, 11-7

D

- Data Groups
 - Application Object Library requirement, 7-62
 - copying, 7-25
 - defining, 7-61
 - explained, 7-23
 - purposes of, 7-24

- using, 7-23
- using with custom applications, 7-24
- using with multiple Set of Books, 7-24
- Database Resource Manager, 12-4
- DBC files, 2-5
- Default folders, 12-15
- Default parameters
 - Shared parameters, 7-9
- Developer tools, 16-1
- DISABLE_SCHEMA_MONITORING procedure (CBO), 13-10
- Discoverer 4i, B-1
- Document sequences
 - active sequence definitions, 15-5
 - application, 15-4
 - assigning sequences to document definitions, 15-4
 - auditability, 15-1
 - automatic document numbering - initial value, 15-2
 - automatic numbering, 15-7
 - automatic vs manual, 15-6
 - category, 15-4
 - category application, 15-9
 - category code, 15-9
 - category identifies database table, 15-8
 - defining a sequence, 15-1
 - defining document categories, 15-8
 - defining documents to be numbered, 15-4
 - differences - document numbering vs. entry, 15-6
 - disabling a sequence assignment, 15-11
 - document categories explained, 15-3
 - document definition, 15-10
 - Document Flexfield, 15-4
 - enabling segments in the document flexfield, 15-11
 - end date - document definition, 15-11
 - end date - document flexfield, 15-11
 - examples - document categories, 15-3
 - examples - sequence definitions, 15-2
 - initial value of sequence, 15-7
 - manual numbering, 15-7
 - message displayed by document, 15-7
 - method in document flexfield, 15-4
 - segments and the document flexfield, 15-11
 - sequence names, 15-7
 - sequence start date, 15-7
 - sequence type, 15-7
 - sequences and audit records, 15-7
 - sequences explained, 15-1
 - set of books in document flexfield, 15-4
 - start date - document definition, 15-11
 - start date - document flexfield, 15-11
 - type of document numbering, 15-7
 - type of sequence numbering, 15-2

E

ENABLE_SCHEMA_MONITORING procedure (CBO), 13-10
Environment variable, 12-12
External documents, 18-3

F

FND_STATS package, 13-6
FNDCPASS utility, 12-5
FNDGFU, C-20
FNDLOAD, C-1
Folder Administration, 12-15
Folder Set, 12-15
Form
 passing arguments to, 7-16
Forms
 Administer Concurrent Managers, 8-39
 Applications, 12-12
 Concurrent Conflicts Domains, 12-11
 Concurrent Request Types, 8-55
 Define Combined Specialization Rules, 8-52
 Define Concurrent Manager, 8-46
 Define Data Group, 7-61
 Define Print Style, 10-41
 Define Printer Driver, 10-43
 Define Printer Types, 10-38
 Define Report Group, 7-46
 Define Work Shifts, 8-51
 Languages, 18-5
 Natural Languages, 18-6
 Register Nodes, 8-57
 Register ORACLE IDs, 12-8
 Register Printers, 10-40
 Territories, 18-7
Forms Personalization, 16-1

G

GATHER_ALL_COLUMN_STATS procedure (CBO), 13-18
GATHER_COLUMN_STATS procedure (CBO), 13-16
GATHER_INDEX_STATS procedure (CBO), 13-13
GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS procedure (CBO), 13-10
GATHER_TABLE_STATS procedure (CBO), 13-14
Generic File Manager, C-20
Generic Loader, C-1
 Oracle Application Object Library
 configuration files, C-8

H

Help system
 customizing Oracle Applications help, 11-1
 Help System Utility, 11-1
 File Name to Help Target Report, 11-5

Help Target to File Name Report, 11-4
Uploading help files, 11-4
HTTP Server, 2-3

I

ICX:Language profile option, 18-2
Incompatible programs
 Concurrent programs, 7-19
Internal concurrent manager
 CONCSUB - hiding password, 8-34
 CONCSUB - using to shut down, 8-33
 CONCSUB command, 8-31
 control states, 8-30
 enforces incompatibility rules, 7-22
 explained, 8-2
 internal monitors, 8-37
 operating system control, 8-31
 parallel concurrent processing, 8-37
 PMON cycle, 8-30
 shut down from operating system, 8-33
 starting from operating system, 8-31
STARTMGR command, 8-31

J

Java Servlet Setup, 2-8

L

Languages, 18-1
Launching Oracle Applications Forms, 2-10
LDAP integration, A-2
Load balancing, 14-5
Loaders, C-1
Local Login Mask profile Option, 2-13
Log files
 parallel processing on multiple nodes, 8-37
Logical databases
 define for custom applications, 12-3
 explained, 12-3
 program incompatibility rules, 12-3
 Standard logical database method, 12-3
Login page
 configuration, 2-11

M

Message Dictionary Generator, C-18
MIME types
 for viewing reports, 8-56
MLS function, 7-48
Multi-language function (MLS function), 7-51
Multilingual external documents, 18-3

N

Network bandwidth
 testing, 12-14

- Network latency
 - testing, 12-14
- Network Test window, 12-14
- Node
 - explained, 8-57
- Nodes
 - explained, 8-35
 - manager's target node, 8-38
 - primary and secondary, 8-36

O

- Oracle Application Server, A-1
 - related technology stack areas, A-6
- Oracle Application Server 10g
 - integration with Oracle E-Business Suite, A-2
- Oracle Applications Framework, 2-42
- Oracle Applications Manager, 6-1
 - creating managers, 8-7
 - Setup, 6-1
 - Site Map, 6-5
- Oracle Discoverer, A-5
 - preserving Oracle Discoverer 3i customizations, B-5
- Oracle Discoverer 4i, B-1
- Oracle E-Business Suite Home Page
 - personalizing, 2-14
- Oracle HTTP Server, 2-14
- ORACLE ID
 - appls - password warning, 12-8
 - explained, 12-1
 - Oracle username, 12-8
 - registering, 12-1
 - requirement for database access, 12-1
- Oracle Internet Directory, A-2
- Oracle Portal, A-1
- Oracle Reports
 - bitmapped, 7-51
- Oracle9i Application Server, A-1
- Oracle9iAS, A-4
 - debugging, A-4

P

- Parallel concurrent processing
 - explained, 8-35
 - Internal manager, 8-37
 - introduced, 8-35
 - log files and multiple nodes, 8-37
 - managing, 8-37
 - operating environments, 8-35
 - proprietary queuing systems, 8-37
- Password
 - FNDCPASS utility, 12-5
- Pasta
 - add a new printer type, 10-11
 - basic setup for printers, 10-8
 - configuration file setup

- defining configuration files for different printers, 10-9
 - setting margins, 10-11
 - using a different configuration file as the default, 10-10
- defining the configuration file, 10-9
- executable, 10-8
- modifying a printer type to use Pasta, 10-10
- pasta.cfg file, 10-9
- setting margins, 10-11
- Pasta Universal Printer, 10-9
- PMON cycle
 - concurrent managers, 8-30
- Print options
 - for reports, 7-8
- Printer setup
 - printer types
 - modify an existing printer type to use Pasta, 10-11
- Printer support
 - arguments, 10-45
 - arguments for print command, 10-29
 - caching of definitions, 10-8
 - Command driver method, 10-28
 - concurrent managers - restarting, 10-8
 - concurrent program print definitions, 10-32
 - custom print programs - location, 10-28
 - drivers, styles, printer types and platforms, 10-3
 - end user settings, 10-35
 - fast-track printer setup with Pasta, 10-8
 - header pages, 10-42
 - initialization, 10-45
 - initialization string, 10-30
 - initialization string - editing, 10-27
 - introduction to printing, 10-1
 - page break problems, 10-26
 - platform, 10-44
 - postscript printing, 10-36
 - predefined types, styles, drivers, 10-26
 - print command & arguments - example, 10-29
 - print style assignments, 10-34
 - print styles - columns, 10-42
 - print styles - defining, 10-41
 - print styles - explained, 10-3
 - print styles - introduction, 10-2
 - print styles - predefined, 10-41
 - print styles - rows, 10-42
 - printer / style assignments, 10-32
 - printer assignments, 10-33
 - printer driver method, 10-27
 - printer drivers - assigning, 10-38
 - printer drivers - defining, 10-43
 - printer drivers - explained, 10-3
 - printer drivers - introduction, 10-2
 - printer drivers - predefined for printers, 10-43
 - printer drivers - predefined for styles, 10-43

- printer drivers - when to define new drivers, 10-43
- printer types
 - modifying a printer type to use Pasta, 10-10
- printer types - defining, 10-38
- printer types - introduction, 10-2
- printers - operating system name, 10-40
- printers - registering, 10-40
- Program driver method, 10-28
- Program driver method - example, 10-28
- program name, 10-45
- reset, 10-45
- reset string, 10-30
- reset string - editing, 10-27
- sequence of printing events, 10-4
- setting up - forms used, 10-7
- setting up printers, 10-7
- setting up printers using Pasta, 10-8
- shell scripts, 10-28
- spool file, 10-30
- SRW driver, 10-44
- SRW driver - customizing, 10-31
- SRW drivers - how used, 10-32
- SRW drivers - location, 10-31
- standard input, 10-29
- Subroutine driver method, 10-28
- System Administrator privileges, 10-35
- verifying printer drivers, 10-26
- PrintForms, 10-21
- Printing, 9-9
- Process Navigator
 - overview, 17-1
- Profile Options
 - Configuration, 2-9
- Purge Obsolete Generic File Manager Data
- concurrent program, C-22
- PURGE_STAT_HISTORY procedure (CBO), 13-20

R

- RAC (Real Application Clusters), 14-1
- Rapid Install, 2-1
- Real Application Clusters, 14-5
- Real Application Clusters (RAC), 14-1
- Register
 - application, 12-12
 - concurrent program, 7-51
- Report Groups
 - defining, 7-46
 - example - using a code, 7-18
 - may consist of, 7-15
 - Report Security Groups, 7-15
 - report security groups, report sets, reports, 7-12
 - responsibility-level vs. form-level, 7-15
 - using, 7-15
 - using a code to customize, 7-47
 - using a code with, 7-16
 - vs. report sets, 7-1

- Report parameters
 - sharing in a report set, 7-13
- Report Security Groups
 - Report Groups, 7-15
- Report Sets
 - as concurrent programs, 7-6
 - behavior of program parameters, 7-39
 - defining, 7-2
 - displaying parameters - programs vs. report sets, 7-39
 - example - shared parameters, 7-13
 - incompatibility rules, 7-12
 - owners of, 7-11
 - preventing parameters from being changed, 7-39
 - printing, 7-6
 - querying in Define Concurrent programs form, 7-12
 - report security groups, report sets, reports, 7-12
 - reporting on, 7-19
 - reporting on definitions, 7-14
 - request phase and status, 7-6
 - sharing parameters in a set, 7-13
 - System Administrator privileges, 7-11
 - vs. report groups, 7-1
- Reports
 - Completed Concurrent Requests, 8-12
 - Concurrent Program Details, 7-45
 - Concurrent Programs, 7-45
 - Report Group Responsibilities, 7-19
 - Report Sets, 7-14
 - Work Shift by Manager, 8-13
 - Work Shifts, 8-13
- Request parameters, 7-9
- Request sets
 - print options, 7-8
 - request parameters, 7-9
 - running reports in parallel, 7-7
 - shared parameters, 7-9
- Request type, 8-28
- Resource consumer groups, 12-4
- Responsibilities
 - reporting on reports and report sets, 7-19
- RESTORE_COLUMN_STATS procedure (CBO), 13-9
- RESTORE_SCHEMA_STATS procedure (CBO), 13-8
- RESTORE_TABLE_STATS procedure (CBO), 13-8
- Run Reports form
 - customizing using codes, 7-18
- Run Requests form
 - example - customizing, 7-18

S

- Security
 - server trust level, 2-39
 - server, administering, 2-37

- Server security, 2-37
- Server trust level, 2-39
- Shared parameters
 - behavior of
 - Report Sets, 7-13
 - changing a value, 7-9
 - request sets, 7-9
- Sharing parameters
 - in request sets, 7-9
- Single Sign-On, A-2
- Specializing managers
 - action types, 8-14
 - actions, 8-14
 - defining combined rules, 8-22
 - defining specialization rules, 8-14
 - examples of action types, 8-17
 - examples of combined rules, 8-24
 - examples of rules, 8-19
 - explained, 8-14
 - introduction, 8-14
 - specialization vs. combined rules, 8-27
 - using more than one rule, 8-15
- Standard Report Submission
 - explained, 7-1
- Standard Request Submission
 - print options, 7-8
 - request parameters, 7-9
- Standard Submission form

- customizing, 7-1
 - example - customizing, 7-18
 - explained, 7-1
 - list, 7-16
- System Administrator
 - report set privileges, 7-11

T

- TCF SocketServer, 2-10
- Transaction Managers, 8-2

U

- UTF8, 18-3

V

- VERIFY_STATS procedure (CBO), 13-21
- Viewer Options window, 8-56

W

- Web Listener Virtual Directories, 2-2
- Web Server
 - Profile Options, 2-8
- Web-Enabled PL/SQL Window, 16-3
- Work Directory, 16-2

